LOVELY
PROFESSIONAL
UNIVERSITY

DIFFERENTIAL EQUATIONS

Edited by
Dr. Sachin Kaushal

Printed by
EXCEL BOOKS PRIVATE LIMITED
A-45, Naraina, Phase-I,
New Delhi-110028
for
Lovely Professional University
Phagwara

SYLLABUS

Differential Equations

Objectives: The objective of the course is to know different methods to solve ordinary and partial differential equations and also to solve Integral equation of Fredholm and Voltera type.

Sr. No.	Content
1	Bessel functions, Legendre polynomials, Hermite polynomials, Laguerre polynomials, recurrence relations, generating functions, Rodrigue formula and orthogonality .
2	Existence theorem for solution of the equation dy/dx= f(x,y) [Picard's methods as in Yoshida], general properties of solutions of linear differential equations of order n, total differential equations, simultaneous differential equations, adjoint and self-adjoint equations.
3	Green's function method, Sturm Liouville's boundary value problems, Sturm comparison and separation theorems, orthogonality of solutions.
4	Classification of partial differential equations, Cauchy's problem and characteristics for first order equations, Classification of integrals of the first order partial differential equations.
5	Lagrange's methods for solving partial differential equations, Charpit's method for solving partial differential equations, Jacobi's method for solving partial differential equations, higher order equations with constant coefficients and Monge's method.

CONTENT

Unit 1:	Existence Theorem for the Solution of the Equation dy dx = f(x, y) *Sachin Kaushal, Lovely Professional University*	1
Unit 2:	General Properties of Solutions of Linear Differential Equations of Order n *Sachin Kaushal, Lovely Professional University*	12
Unit 3:	Total Differential Equations, Simultaneous Equations *Sachin Kaushal, Lovely Professional University*	33
Unit 4:	Adjoint and Self-Adjoint Equations *Sachin Kaushal, Lovely Professional University*	58
Unit 5:	Green’s Function Method *Sachin Kaushal, Lovely Professional University*	66
Unit 6:	Sturm–Liouville’s Boundary Value Problems *Richa Nandra, Lovely Professional University*	82
Unit 7:	Sturm Comparison and Separation Theorems *Richa Nandra, Lovely Professional University*	92
Unit 8:	Orthogonality of Solutions *Richa Nandra, Lovely Professional University*	102
Unit 9:	Classification of Partial Differential Equations *Sachin Kaushal, Lovely Professional University*	115
Unit 10:	Cauchy’s Problem and Characteristics for First Order Equations *Sachin Kaushal, Lovely Professional University*	123
Unit 11:	Classifications of Integrals of the First Order Partial Differential Equations *Sachin Kaushal, Lovely Professional University*	133
Unit 12:	Lagrange’s Methods for Solving Partial Differential Equations *Richa Nandra, Lovely Professional University*	144
Unit 13:	Charpit’s Method for Solving Partial Differential Equations *Richa Nandra, Lovely Professional University*	169
Unit 14:	Jacobi’s Method for Solving Partial Differential Equations *Richa Nandra, Lovely Professional University*	186
Unit 15:	Higher Order Equations with Constant Coefficients and Monge’s Method *Sachin Kaushal, Lovely Professional University*	196
Unit 16:	Classifications of Second Order Partial Differential Equations *Sachin Kaushal, Lovely Professional University*	242
Unit 17:	Solution of Laplace Differential Equation *Sachin Kaushal, Lovely Professional University*	251
Unit 18:	Wave and Diffusion Equations by Separation of Variable *Richa Nandra, Lovely Professional University*	273

Unit 1: Existence Theorem for the Solution of the Equation $\frac{dy}{dx} = f(x, y)$

CONTENTS

Objectives

Introduction

1.1 On the solution of a Differential Equation

1.2 Picard's Method

1.3 Remark on Approximate Solutions

1.4 Solutions by Power Series Expansion

1.5 Summary

1.6 Keyword

1.7 Review Questions

1.8 Further Readings

Objectives

After studying this unit, you will be able to:

- Discuss the existence and the uniqueness of the solution of the first order equation.
- Employ Picard's method of finding the solution. The method consists in successive approximation. It also leads to integral equations under certain conditions.
- Learn that the method is not so famous as it involves a lengthy set of solving integrals.

Introduction

The Picard's method of finding the existence of the solution of first order equation is well explained in Yosida's book.

The method is quite general and can be applied to a system of n coupled first order differential equations as well as equations of nth order. The case of nth order differential equation will be taken up in the next unit.

1.1 On the Solution of a Differential Equation

In the previous units we have been studying different types of differential equations and their solutions. Those differential equations chosen were for special purposes of studying certain functions like Bessel function, Legendre polynomials, Hermite polynomials and Laguerre polynomials. We also studied some differential equations which were easily soluble. In this unit we want to study whether a given differential equation has a solution or not. We shall see under what conditions the solution does exist.

An ordinary differential equation involves the dependent variable y, its derivatives $\frac{dy}{dx}, \frac{d^2y}{dx^2}.....\frac{d^ny}{dx^n}$, and independent variable x in the form of a functional relation

Notes

$$\phi\left(x, y, \frac{dy}{dx}, \frac{d^2y}{dx^2} \ldots\ldots \frac{d^ny}{dx^n}\right) = 0 \qquad \ldots(1)$$

The general solution of an nth order differential equation involves n arbitrary constants a_1, a_2, ... a_n. In the following we shall study the existence of an ordinary first order differential equation. The ordinary differential equation of the first order is generally written in the form

$$\phi\left(x, y, \frac{dy}{dx}\right) = 0 \qquad \ldots(2)$$

we shall study the solution of the equation (2) with the initial conditions i.e. at

$$x = x_0, \quad y = y_0 \qquad \ldots(3)$$

We can vary x in a certain range i.e.

$$x_0 - h \leq x \leq x_0 + h \qquad \ldots(4)$$

where h is an increment to x. The above range of x is in a domain D. When x varies in the above range we want to see how y changes from the initial value y_0. Let us assume that y varies in the range

$$y_0 - k \leq y \leq y_0 + k \qquad \ldots(5)$$

So let D be a domain in (x, y) plane given by (4) and (5). Let the set of points in (4) are given by x_0, x_1, ... x_n,... and set of points in (5) are given by y_0, y_1, ... y_n,... . We want to study the existence and uniqueness of the solution of equation (2). There are various forms of (2). We in particular study the equation in the form

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = f(x, y) \qquad \ldots(6)$$

subject to the initial conditions (3).

1.2 Picard's Method

Our purpose is to find a solution of equation (6) subject to the initial condition (3). To formula the problem we have to make the following assumptions concerning $f(x, y)$. The behaviour of $f(x, y)$ will decide the solution of (6).

Assumption 1: The function $f(x, y)$ is real-valued and continuous on a domain D of the (x, y) plane given by

$$x_0 - h \leq x \leq x_0 + \mathrm{h},\ y_0 - k \leq y \leq y_0 + k \qquad \ldots(7)$$

Here h, k are positive numbers.

Assumption 2: $f(x, y)$ satisfies the Lipschitz condition with respect to y in D, that is, there exists a positive constant k such that

$$|f(x, y_1) - f(x, y_2)| \leq k\,|y_1 - y_2| \qquad \ldots(8)$$

for every pair of points (x, y_1), (x, y_2) of D.

If $f(x, y)$ has a continuous partial derivative $\dfrac{\partial t(x, y)}{\partial y}$ then assumption 2 is satisfied. Now since D is a bounded closed domain and $\left|\dfrac{\partial f(x,y)}{\partial y}\right|$ is continuous in D so $\left|\dfrac{\partial f(x,y)}{\partial y}\right|$ is bounded. Put

Notes

$$k = \sup_{(x,y)\varepsilon D} \left|\frac{\partial t(x,y)}{\partial y}\right| \quad ...(9)$$

where k is a limit superior.

Then the mean value theorem implies that (8) holds for $f(x, y)$. By Assumption 1, $f(x, y)$ is continuous on the bounded domain D, therefore $|f(x, y)|$ is bounded on D, that is,

$$\text{SUP}_{(x,y)\varepsilon D} |f(x,y)| = M < \infty \quad ...(10)$$

Set

$$\delta = \text{Min } (h, \text{k/m}) \quad ...(11)$$

Let us define a sequence of functions $\{y_n(x)\}$ for $|x - x_0| \le \delta$,

successively by

$$\left.\begin{aligned} &y_0(x) = y_0 \\ &y_1(x) = y_0 + \int_{x_0}^{x} f(t, y_0)dt \\ &y_2(x) = y_0 + \int_{x_0}^{x} f(t, y_1)dt \\ &\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots \\ &\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots \\ &\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots \\ &y_n(x) = y_0 + \int_{x_0}^{x} f\left(t, y_{n-1}(t)\right)dt \end{aligned}\right\} \quad ...(12)$$

Theorem: That $\{y_n(x)\}$ converges uniformly on the internal $|x - x_0| \le \delta$, and the limit $y(x)$ of the sequence is a solution of (5) which satisfies (3).

Picard's Method of Successive Approximation

The above theorem is proved by Picard's method of successive approximation as follows. We here give this proof as shown by K. Yosida.

Proof: According to (10) and (11), we obtain

$$|y_1(x) - y_0| \le \delta M \leqq \text{k}$$

for $|x - x_0| \to \delta$. Therefore $\int_{x_0}^{x} f(t, y_1(t)dt$ can be defined for $|x - x_0| \le h$, and

$$|y_2(x) - y_0| \leqq \delta M \le K$$

In the same manner, we can define $y_3(x)$,......$y_n(x)$ for $|x - x_0| \leqq \delta$ and obtain

$$|y_k(x) - y_0| \leqq \delta M \leqq K, \text{ for } K = 1, 2, \ldots n$$

using assumption (2), we have

$$|y_{k+1}(x) - y_k(x)| \leqq K \left| \int_{x_0}^{x} |y_k(t) - y_{k-1}(t)| dt \right.$$

for $|x - x_0| \leqq \delta$. Therefore, if we assume that for $k = 1, 2, \ldots\ldots n$

Notes

$$|y_l(x) - y_{l-1}(x)| \leqq \frac{h|K|x - x_0|^{l-1}}{(l-1)!} \text{ for } |x - x_0| \leqq \delta \qquad ...(13)$$

We obtain for $l = n + 1$,

$$|y_{n+1}(x) - y_n(x)| \leqq \frac{k|K|x - x_0|^n}{n!} \text{ for } |x - x_0| \leqq \delta \qquad ...(14)$$

Since (13) holds for $n = 1$ as mentioned above, we see, by mathematical induction, that (14) holds for every n. Thus for $m > n$, we obtain

$$|y_m(x) - y_n(x)| \leqq \left| \sum_{l=n}^{m-1} y_{l+1}(x) - y_l(x) \right| \leqq k \sum_{l=n}^{m-1} \frac{(k\delta)^l}{l!} \qquad ...(15)$$

Since the right hand side of (15) tends to zero as $n \to \infty$, $\{y_n(x)\}$ converges uniformly to a function $y(x)$ on the interval $|x - x_0| \leqq \delta$. As the convergence is uniform, $y(x)$ is continuous and more over, evidently, $y(x_0)$ to y_0. To prove that $y(x)$ is the solution, we know that as the sequence of functions $\{y_n(x)\}$ converges uniformly and $y_n(x)$ is continuous on the interval $|x - x_0| \leqq \delta$, then the lim and integral can be interchanged. Thus

$$\lim_{n \to \infty} \int_{x_0}^{x} y_n(x)dx \to \int_{x_0}^{x} \lim_{n \to \infty} y_n(x)dx$$

Hence we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} y(x) &= \lim_{n \to \infty} y_{n+1}(x) \\ &= y_0 + \lim_{n \to \infty} \int_{x_0}^{x} f(t, y_n(t))dt \\ &= y_0 + \int_{x_0}^{x} [\lim_{n \to \infty} f(t, y_n(t))]dt \\ &= y_0 + \int_{x_0}^{x} f(t, y(t))dt \end{aligned}$$

that is,

$$y(x) = y_0 + \int_{x_0}^{x} f(t, y(t))dt \qquad ...(16)$$

The integrand $f(t, y(t))$ on the right side of (16) is a continuous function, hence $y(x)$ is differentiable with respect to x, and its derivative is equal to $f(x, y(x))$.

Hence the proof.

Integrating from x_0 to x, we see that a solution $y(x)$ of (6) satisfying the initial conditions (3), must satisfy the integral equation (16). The above proof also shows that the integral equation can be solved by the method of successive approximation.

Uniqueness of Solution

In the above treatment we have obtained by the method of successive approximation, a solution $y(x)$ of (6) satisfying the initial condition (3). We have yet to show the uniqueness of the above solution.

Proof:

If the solution $y(x)$ is not unique, let $z(x)$ be another solution of (6), such that $z(x_0) = y_0$. Then

$$z(x) = y_0 + \int_{x_0}^{x} f\left(t, z(t)\right)dt.$$

Notes

By assumption 2, we obtain

$$|y(x) - z(x)| \leqq \int_{x_0}^{x} |y(t) - z(t)dt| \qquad ...(17)$$

Therefore we also obtain for $|x - x_0| \leqq \delta$.

$$|y(x) - z(x)| \leqq KN|x - x_0|$$

where

$$N = \text{SUP}_{|x-x_0|\delta} \; |y(x) - z(x)|.$$

Substituting the above estimate for $|y(t) - z(t)|$ on the right side of (17), we obtain

$$|y(x) - z(x)| \leqq N\,(K|x - x_0)^2|2!$$

for $|\text{x} - x_0| \leqq \delta$. Substituting this estimate for $|y(t) - z(t)|$ once more on the right side of (17), we have

$$|y(x) - z(x)| \leqq N(K|x - x_0|)^3/3! \text{ for } |x - x_0| \leqq \delta.$$

Repeating this substitution, we obtain

$$|y(x) - z(x)| \leqq N(K|x - x_0|)^m/m!,\ m = 1, 2, ... \qquad ...(18)$$

for $|x - x_0| \leqq \delta$. The right side of the above inequality tends to zero as $m \to \infty$. This means that

$$N = \text{SUP}_{|x-x_0| \leqq \delta} \; |y(x) - z(x)|$$

is equal to zero.

Hence $y(x)$ given by (16) is a unique solution.

Example 1: Solve

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = xy \qquad ...(1)$$

with the initial conditions $x = 0.0$, $y(0) = 0.1$

Now $\quad y_0(x) = 0.1$

$$\begin{aligned}
y_1(x) &= 0.1 + \int_0^x x\, y_0(x)dx \\
&= 0.1 + \int_0^x x\,(0.1)dx \\
&= 0.1 + 0.1\,\frac{x^2}{2} = 0.1\left(1 + \frac{x^2}{2}\right) \\
y_2(x) &= 0.1 + \int_0^x x\, y_2(x)dx \\
&= 0.1 + 0.1\int_0^x x\left(1 + \frac{x^2}{2}\right)dx \\
&= 0.1 + 0.1\left(\frac{x^2}{2} + \frac{x^4}{2.4}\right) \\
&= 0.1 + \left(1 + \frac{x^2}{2} + \frac{x^4}{2.4}\right)
\end{aligned}$$

$$y_3(x) = 0.1 + 0.1\int_0^x x\left(1+\frac{x^2}{2}+\frac{x^4}{2.4}\right)dx$$

$$= 0.1 + 0.1\left(\frac{x^2}{2}+\frac{x^4}{2.4}+\frac{x^6}{2.4.6}\right)$$

$$= 0.1\left(1+\frac{x^2}{2}+\frac{x^4}{2.4}+\frac{x^6}{2.4.6}\right)$$

....

....

....

$$y_k(x) = 0.1\left(1+\frac{x^2}{2}+\frac{1}{2^2.1.2}(x^2)^2+......+\frac{(x^2)^k}{2^k k!}\right) \quad ...(2)$$

So the solution of equation (1) is $y(x)$

$$y(x) = \lim_{k\to\infty} y_k(x) = 0.1\left[1+\frac{x^2}{2}+\frac{1}{2^2 2!}(x^2)^2+\frac{1}{2^3 3!}\left(\frac{x^2}{2}\right)^3+......\right] \quad ...(2)$$

The above series is a convergent series

Example 2: Solve the following by Picard's method of integrating by successive approximation

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = z,$$

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = x^3(y+z)$$

where $y = 1$ and $z = \frac{1}{2}$ when $x = 0$

Here $\quad y = 1+\int_0^x z\,dx$ and $z = \frac{1}{2}+\int_0^x x^3(y+z)dx$

The first approximation gives us

$$y = 1+\int_0^x\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)dx = 1+\frac{x}{2},$$

$$z = \frac{1}{2}+\int_0^x x^3\left(1+\frac{1}{2}\right)dx = \frac{1}{2}+\frac{3}{2}.\frac{x^4}{4}$$

Second approximation

$$y = 1+\int_0^x\left(\frac{1}{2}+\frac{3}{8}x^4\right)dx = 1+\frac{x}{2}+\frac{3}{40}x^5$$

$$z = \frac{1}{2}+\int_0^x x^3\left(\frac{3}{2}+\frac{x}{2}+\frac{3}{8}x^4\right)dx = \frac{1}{2}+\frac{3}{8}x^4+\frac{1}{10}x^5+\frac{3}{64}x^8$$

Third approximation

$$y = 1+\int_0^x\left(\frac{1}{2}+\frac{3}{8}x^4+\frac{1}{10}x^5+\frac{3}{64}x^8\right)dx$$

$$= \quad 1+\frac{x}{2}+\frac{3}{40}x^5+\frac{x^6}{60}+\frac{x^9}{192}$$

$$z \quad = \quad \frac{1}{2}+\int_0^x x^3\left(\frac{3}{2}+\frac{x}{2}+\frac{3}{8}x^4+\frac{7}{40}x^5+\frac{3}{64}x^8\right)dx$$

$$= \quad \frac{1}{2}+\frac{3}{8}x^4+\frac{x^5}{10}+\frac{3}{64}x^8+\frac{7}{360}x^9+\frac{x^{12}}{256}$$

and so on. So the series solution of y and z are convergent for $x < 1$.

Self-Assessment

1. Solve the differential equation

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = y$$

under the initial conditions $y = 1$ for $x = 1$ by the method of successive approximations.

2. Solve the differential equation

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = x + y^2$$

under the initial condition $y = 0$ when $x = 0$.

1.3 Remark on Approximate Solutions

On letting $m \to \infty$ in equation (15), we obtain

$$|y(x) - y_n(x)| \leqq K \sum_{k=n}^{\infty} \frac{(K\delta)^k}{\underline{|\delta}} \qquad ...(1)$$

for $|x - x_0| \leqq \delta$. The equation (17) is an estimate of the error of the nth approximate solution $y_n(x)$. The method of successive approximation may be used, in principle. However this method is not always practical because it requires one to repeat the evaluation of indefinite integrals many times.

We shall now consider another method which is sometimes rather useful. Suppose that $g(x, y)$ is a suitable approximation to $f(x, y)$ such that we can find the solution $z(x)$ of the differential equation

$$\frac{dz}{dx} = g(x, y) \qquad ...(2)$$

On the interval $|x - x_0| \leqq \delta$ satisfying the initial condition $z(x_0) = y_0$. We put

$$\text{SUP}_{(x,y)\varepsilon D} |f(x, y) - g(x, y)| \leqq \varepsilon \qquad ...(3)$$

Let $y(x)$ be the unique solution of the differential equation

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = f(x, y) \qquad ...(4)$$

on the interval $|x - x_0| \leqq h$ satisfying the initial condition $y(x_0) = y_0$. Then from (2) it follows that

$$y(x) - z(x) = \int_{x_0}^{x} (f(t, y(t)) - g(t, z(t))dt.$$

Notes

We obtain by assumption 2,

$$|y(x)-z(x)| = \left|\int_{x_0}^{x}\{f(t,z(t)-g(t,z(t)\}dt+\int_{x_0}^{x}\{f(t,y(t)-f(t,z(t)\}dt\right|$$

$$\leqq\left|\int_{x_0}^{x}\{f(t,z(t)-g(t,z(t)\}dt\right|+K\left|\int_{x_0}^{x}|y(t)-z(t)|\,dt\right|$$

$$\leqq \varepsilon|x-x_0|+K|\int_{x_0}^{x}|y|(t)-z(t)dt \qquad ...(5)$$

Therefore setting

$$\text{SUP}_{|x-x_0|\leqq\varepsilon}|y(x)-z(x)|=M',$$

We have

$$|y(x)-z(x)| \leqq \varepsilon\ |x-x_0| + KM'\ |x-x_0|$$

for $|x-x_0| \leqq \delta$. Substituting this estimate for $|y(t)-z(t)|$ on the right hand side of (5), we obtain

$$|y(x)-z(x)|\leqq\frac{M'K^2|x-x_0|^2}{\underline{|2}}+\varepsilon\sum_{m=1}^{2}\frac{K^{m-1}|x-x_0|^m}{m!}$$

for $|x-x_0| \leqq \delta$. Repeating this substitution, we obtain, for each n = 1, 2, 3, ...,

$$|y(x)-z(x)|\leqq\frac{M'K^n|x-x_0|^n}{n!}+\varepsilon\sum_{m=1}^{n}\frac{K^{m-1}|x-x_0|^m}{m!}$$

for $|x-x_0| \leqq \delta$. As $n\to\infty$ the first term on the right hand side converges to zero uniformly on the interval $|x-x_0| \leqq \delta$. The second term is less than

$$\varepsilon K^{-1}\{\exp(K|x-x_0|)-1\}$$

Accordingly, the estimate of the error of the appropriate solution $z(x)$ in the interval $|x-x_0| \leqq \delta$ is given by

$$|y(x)-z(x)| \leqq (\varepsilon K)\ (\exp(K(x-x_0)-1) \qquad ...(6)$$

1.4 Solutions by Power Series Expansion

Consider the differential equation

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = f(x,y) \qquad ...(1)$$

in the case when $f(x, y)$ is a complex valued function of complex variables x and y. We assume that $f(x, y)$ can be expanded in a convergent power series in $(x-x_0)$ and $(y-y_0)$ in a domain D′ of the complex (x, y) space given by

$$|x-x_0| < a',\ |y-y_0| < b'.$$

In other words, $f(x, y)$ is regular function in the domain D'. From this assumption it follows that $\frac{\partial f(x, y)}{dy}$ is also regular in D'. Therefore, for any positive numbers a, b such that $a < a'$ and $b < b'$, both $|f(x, y)|$ and $\frac{\partial f(x, y)}{dy}$ are continuous on the closed domain D given by

$$|x - x_0| \leqq a, \ |y - y_0| \leqq b$$

Thus there exist positive numbers M and K such that

$$\left.\begin{aligned} &\text{SUP}_{(x, y)\varepsilon D} |f(x, y)| = M < \infty \\ &\text{SUP}_{(x, y)\varepsilon D} \left|\frac{\partial f(x, y)}{\partial y}\right| = K < \infty \end{aligned}\right\} \qquad \text{...(2)}$$

Integrating $\frac{\partial f(x, y)}{\partial y}$ along the segment connecting y_1 and y_2, we obtain

$$f(x, y_1) - f(x, y_2) = \int_{y_1}^{y_2} \frac{\partial f(x, y)}{\partial y} dy.$$

Hence the Lipschitz condition

$$|f(x, y_2) - f(x, y_1)| \leqq K|y_2 - y_1| \qquad \text{...(3)}$$

holds on D. Therefore, under the above assumption, we can apply to the equation (1), the method of successive approximations and the domain

$$|x - x_0| \leqq h = \min|a, b/M| \qquad \text{...(4)}$$

as follows, we write

$$y_1(x) = y_0 + \int_{x_0}^{x} f(x, y_0) dt$$

$$y_2(x) = y_0 + \int_{x_0}^{x} f(x, y_1) dt$$

....

....

$$y_n(x) = y_0 + \int_{x_0}^{x} f\{x, y_{n-1}(t)\} dt$$

where the integration means complex integration along a smooth curve connecting x_0 and x in the domain (4). Since $f(x, y_0)$ is regular in the domain $|x - x_0| < h$, the first integral is well-defined, independent of the curves, and hence so is y_1. Taking the first integral along the segment connecting x_0 and x, we obtain,

$$|y, (x) - y_0| \leqq hM \leqq b$$

Hence $f\{x, y_1(x)\}$ is well defined for $|x - x_0| < h$ as a function of x.

Since $y_1(x)$ is given by the integral of the regular function $f(x, y_0)$, $y_1(x)$ is regular in the domain $|x - x_0| < h$. Hence $f\{(f, y_1(x)\}$ is also regular. Therefore the second integral is well defined and hence $y_2(x)$ is well defined and regular. Taking the integral along the segment connecting x_0 and x, we obtain further

$$|y_2(x) - y_0(x)| \leqq hM \leqq b.$$

Notes

In this way we can define $y_3(x)$, $y_4(x)$,...... successively in the domain $|x - x_0| < h$. The functions $f_n(x)$, $n = 1, 2, 3$, ... all regular in the domain $|x - x_0| < h$ and

$$|y_n(x) - y_0| \leqq b.$$

So taking the integral along the segment connecting x_0 and x we can prove that the sequence of regular functions $|y_n(x)|$ converges uniformly in the domain $|x - x_0| < h$ and that the limit function $y(x)$ satisfies

$$y(x_0) = y_0 \text{ and } \frac{dy(x)}{dx} = f(x, y)$$

in the domain $|x - x_0) < h$. As $y(x)$ being the uniform limit of the sequence of regular functions is also regular.

The Method of Undetermined Coefficients

Since in the previous section we have guaranteed the existence of the regular solution $y(a)$, we can calculate this solution by the method of undetermined coefficients as follows. By virtue of its regularity, $y(x)$ can be expanded in a power series

$$y(x) = y_0 + (x - x_0)\left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right)_{x_0} + \frac{(x - x_0)^2}{\underline{|2}} \frac{d^2y}{dx^2} + \ldots.$$

in the domain $|x - x_0| < h$. Substituting this expansion for y on the right hand side of the equation and differentiating we obtain

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = f(x, y)$$

$$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = \frac{\partial f(x,y)}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial f(x,y)}{\partial y}\frac{dy}{dx}$$

....

....

setting in these equations $x = x_0$ and $y = y_0$ we can determine successively the expansion coefficients

$$\left.\frac{dy}{dx}\right|_{x_0}, \left.\frac{d^2y}{dx^2}\right|_{x_0}, \left.\frac{\partial^3 y}{\partial x^3}\right|_{x_0} \ldots\ldots$$

1.5 Summary

- Picard method of finding the conditions under which the solution of the first order differential equation is described.
- The method involves on the successive approximation and proving the uniform convergence of the series. It also reduces to an integral equation.
- The Picard method of successive approximation does not find favour of the method of existence as compared to Cauchy's method of comparison test or other numerical methods like Runge's method.

1.6 Keyword

The method of finding the conditions for the existence of the solution of the ***first order differential equation*** is quite appealing but sometimes cumbersome.

1.7 Review Questions

1. Solve $\frac{dy}{dx} = x - y$.

   when $x = 0$, $y = 1$, by Picard method up to fifth successive approximation

2. Solve $\frac{dy}{dx} = 3x + y^2$

   given $x = 0$, $y = 1$.

   up to third successive approximation.

Answers: Self-Assessment

1. $y = 1 + x + \frac{x^2}{|\underline{2}} + \frac{x^3}{|\underline{3}} + \frac{x^4}{|\underline{4}} + \ldots\ldots$

   $= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{x^n}{|\underline{n}}.$

2. $y = \frac{1}{2}x^2 + \frac{1}{20}x^5 + \frac{1}{160}x^8 + \frac{1}{4400}x^{11}$.

1.8 Further Readings

Books

Yosida, K., Lectures in Differential and Integral Equations

Piaggio, H.T.H., Differential Equations

Unit 2: General Properties of Solutions of Linear Differential Equations of Order *n*

CONTENTS

Objectives

Introduction

2.1 Existence and Uniqueness of the Solution of a System of Differential Equations

2.2 General Properties of Solution of Linear Differential Equations of Order n

2.3 Solution of the Linear Equation with Constant Coefficients

2.4 Particular Integral

2.5 Summary

2.6 Keywords

2.7 Review Questions

2.8 Further Readings

Objectives

After studying this unit, you should be able to:

- Deal with a differential equation of order n, and there are lots of properties to be kept in mind before actually solving any problem.
- Discuss Picard method of existence and uniqueness of the linear differential equation before solving any problem.
- Know some properties of linear differential equation of nth order with constant coefficients and the solutions obtained both for complementary functions (C.F.) and Particular Integral (P.I.)

Introduction

The method of proof of the existence of the solution of nth order differential equation is similar to that of first order one.

Some properties of the differential equations are listed and later used to find the solutions of a class of nth order differential equations.

2.1 Existence and Uniqueness of the Solution of a System of Differential Equations

An nth order linear differential equation involving dependent variable y and independent variable x can be written as

$$a_n \frac{d^n y}{dx^n} + a_{n-1} \frac{d^{n-1} y}{dx^{n-1}} + a_{n-2} \frac{d^{n-2} y}{dx^{n-2}} + \ldots + ay \quad = \quad 0$$

Notes

Assuming that $a_n \neq 0$, we can write the above equation in the form

$$\frac{d^n y}{dx^n} = f\left(x, y, \frac{dy}{dx}, \frac{d^2 y}{dx^2}, \ldots, \frac{d^{n-1} y}{dx^{n-1}}\right) \quad \ldots(1)$$

We are interested in solving the equation (1) under the initial conditions

$$y(x_0) = y_0, \frac{dy}{dx}(x_0) = y_0', \ldots, \frac{d^{n-1}y}{dx^{n-1}}(x_0) = y_0^{n-1} \quad \ldots(2)$$

Let us define

$$\left.\begin{aligned} \frac{dy}{dx} &= y_1 \\ \frac{dy_1}{dx} &= y_2 \\ &\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots \\ &\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots \\ &\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots \\ \frac{dy_{n-2}}{dx} &= y_{n-1} \end{aligned}\right\} \quad (3)$$

$$\frac{dy_{n-1}}{dx} = y_n = f(x, y, y_1, \ldots, y_{n-1})$$

with the initial conditions

$$y(x_0) = y_0, y_1(x_0) = y_0', y_2(x_0) = y_0'' \ldots y_{n-1}(x_0) = y_0^{(n-1)} \quad \ldots(4)$$

We may consider more generally, the system of ordinary differential equations

$$\left.\begin{aligned} \frac{dz_1}{dx} &= f_1(x, z_1, z_2, \ldots z_n) \\ \frac{dz_2}{dx} &= f_2(x, z_1, z_2, \ldots z_n) \\ &\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots \\ &\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots \\ \frac{dz_n}{dx} &= f_n(x, z_1, z_2, \ldots, z_n) \end{aligned}\right\} \quad (5)$$

with the initial conditions

$$z_m(x_0) = y_0^{(m-1)}, m = 1, 2, \ldots, n$$

where $y_0^{(0)} = y_0$. For this problem we shall prove the following theorem 1.

Theorem 1: Let

$$f_1(x, z_1, z_2, \ldots z_n), f_2(x, z_1, z_2, \ldots z_n), \ldots \qquad f_n(x, z_1, z_2, \ldots z_n) \quad \ldots(6)$$

be real valued and continuous on a Domain of the real $(x, z_1, z_2, \ldots, z_n)$ space given by

$$|x - x_0| \leqq a, \left|z_m - y_0^{(m-1)}\right| \leqq b, \quad m = 1, 2, \ldots n \quad \ldots(7)$$

Notes

Assume that Lipschitz condition with respect to $z_1, z_2, \ldots z_n$ is satisfied in D, that is, there exists positive constant k such that for every pair of points $(x, \varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2 \ldots \varepsilon_n), (x, \eta_{1,} \eta_{2,\ldots} \eta_n)$ in D

$$|f_i(x, \varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \ldots \varepsilon_3) - f_i(x, \eta_1, \eta_2, \ldots, \eta_n)| \leqq K \sum_{m=1}^{n} |(\varepsilon_m - \eta_m)|$$

for every i = 1, 2, ..., n. Further let

$$\left.\begin{aligned} h &= \min(a, b/m) \\ M &= \underset{\substack{(x, z_1, \ldots, z_n) \in D \\ i=1,2,3,\ldots m}}{\text{SUP}} |f_i(x, z_1, z_2, z_3, \ldots z_n)| \end{aligned}\right\} \quad \ldots(8)$$

Then there exists one and only one set of solution $z_1(x), z_2(x) \ldots z_n(x)$ of (5) on the interval

$$|x - x_0| \leqq \text{h} \quad \ldots(9)$$

satisfying the initial conditions (6).

This theorem implies the following:

Assume that $f(x, z_1, z_2, \ldots z_n)$ is real valued and continuous on the domain D and satisfies the Lipschitz condition on D, that is for every pair of points $(x, \varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \ldots, \varepsilon\ ), (x, \eta_1, \eta_2, \ldots \eta_n)$ of D,

$$|f(x, \varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \ldots \varepsilon_n) - f(x, \eta_1, \ldots \eta_n)| \leqq K \sum_{m=1}^{n} |\varepsilon_n - \eta_m|.$$

Then there exists one and only one solution $y(x)$ of the equation (1) satisfying the initial conditions (2) on the interval.

$$|x - x_0| \leqq h.$$

where $h = \min(a, b/m)$ and $m = \underset{(x, z_1, z_{2,\ldots zn}) \in D}{\text{SUP}} |f(x, z_1, z_2, \ldots z_n)|$

Proof of the theorem 1

The proof of the theorem 1 is entirely the same as in the case of the first order differential equation in unit 6. The initial value problem for (5) with (6) can be reduced to the system of integral equations.

$$z_m(x) = y_0^{(m-1)} + \int_{x_0}^{x} f_m\left(t, z, (t), z_2(t), \ldots z_n(t) dt\right) \quad (m = 1, 2, \ldots n)$$

and solved by the method of successive approximations. In this case the successive approximation functions are defined by

$$z_{m,1}(x) = y_0^{(m-1)} + \int_{x_0}^{x} f_m(t, y_0, y_0^1, y_0^2, \ldots, y_0^{(n-1)}) dt$$

$$z_{m,2}(x) = y_0^{(m-1)} + \int_{x_0}^{x} f_m(t, z_1, (t), z_1, 1(t), \ldots z_{n,1}(t) dt$$

....

$$z_{m,k}(x) = y_0^{(m-1)} + \int_{x_0}^{x} f_m\left(t, z_{1,k-1}, (t)\ z_{2,k-1}(t), z_{3,k-1}(t) \ldots z_{n,k-1}(t)\right) dt$$

Notes

Then by virtue of the Lipschitz condition, we obtain

$$\sum_{n=1}^{m}\left|z_{m,k}(x)-z_{m,k-1}(x)\right| \leqq K\left|\int_{x_0}^{x}\sum_{m=1}^{n}\left|z_{m,k-1}(t)-z_{m,k-2}(t)\right|dt\right|$$

From this we obtain, for $k > s$

$$\sum_{m=1}^{n}\left|z_{mk}(x)-z_{m,s}(x)\right| \leqq nb\sum_{t=s}^{k-1}\frac{(K|x-x_0|)^t}{\lfloor t} \qquad ...(10)$$

On the interval (9), provided that $z_{m,l}(x)=y_0^{m-l}$. This suffices to prove the theorem.

2.2 General Properties of Solution of Linear Differential Equations of Order *n*

We now discuss some of the properties of the solution of *n*th order linear differential equations. For this purpose write down the differential equation in the form

$$\frac{d^n}{dx^n}y+p_1(x)\frac{d^{n-1}y}{dx^{n-1}}+...+p_ny = p_ny=q(x) \qquad ...(1)$$

The equation (1) is said to homogeneous if $q(x) = 0$, otherwise it is called inhomogeneous. We assume that the coefficients $p_1, p_2, ...p_n, q(x)$ are all continuous on a domain D. We state that

(1) If $y_1(x)$ and $y_2(x)$ are any two non-zero solutions of equation (1) then $y_1(x) + y_2(x)$ is also a solution.

(2) In fact if $y_1(x)$, $y_2(x)$, $y_3(x)...y_n(x)$ are solutions of equation (1) then any linear combination

$$y = \sum_{i=1}^{m} c_i y_i \qquad ...(2)$$

of these solutions with arbitrary coefficients $c_1, c_2, ..., c_m$ is also a solution of (1). This fact is called the *principle of superposition*.

(3) Let $y_1(x)$, $y_2,...y_{n+1}$ be an arbitrary set of $n + 1$ solutions of equation (1), then there exist $n + 1$ numbers $c_1, c_2, ..., c_{n+1}$ not all zero such that

$$\sum_{i=1}^{n+1} c_i y_i(x) = 0 \qquad ...(3)$$

that means that the set of $n + 1$ functions $y_1, y, ...y_{n+1}$ is a dependent set.

Thus if we have a set of n independent functions $y_1, ... y_n$ then the most general solution of equation (1) is written as

$$y = \sum_{i=1}^{n} c_i y_i \qquad ...(4)$$

So a set of n solutions of $y_1(x)$, $y_2(x),...y_n(x)$, which are linearly independent is called a *fundamental system of the solutions* of equation (1) (or general solution)

Notes

(4) ***Relations between the solution and the coefficients***

Let $y_1(x)$, $y_2(x)$,...$y_n(x)$ be a fundamental system of the solutions of (1). If every $y_i(x)$ (i = 1, 2, ... n) satisfies another equation

$$\frac{d^n y}{dx^n} + r_1 \frac{d^{n-1} y_i}{dx^{n-1}} + ... + r_n y_i \quad = \quad 0$$

With continuous coefficients $r_i(x)$, i = 1, 2, ... n in the domain D then we have

$$r_i(x) \quad \equiv \quad p_i(x), \qquad i = 1, 2, ...n.$$

This fact may be stated as follows:

The coefficients of a linear differential equation of the nth order are determined uniquely by an arbitrary chosen fundamental system of the solutions, provided the coefficient of $\frac{d^n y}{dx^n}$ is identically one.

Let us write equation (1) as

$$y^n + p_i y^{n-1} + p_2 y^{n-2} + ...p_n y \quad = \quad 0 \qquad ...(5)$$

with conditions

$$y(x_0) \quad = \quad \eta, y'(x_0) = \eta', ...y''(x_0) = \eta^n, ...y^n(x_0) = \eta^n \qquad ...(6)$$

(5) ***Wronskian. Liouville's formula***

We shall enter into the details of the relations between the solutions and the coefficients mentioned above. We denote by $W(y, y_1, y_2, ...y_n)$ the determinant

$$\begin{vmatrix} y & y_1 & y_2 & \cdots & y_n \\ y' & y_1' & y_2' & \cdots & y_n' \\ y'' & y_1'' & y_2'' & \cdots & y_n'' \\ y^{(n)} & y_1^{(n)} & y_2^{(n)} & \cdots & y_n^{(n)} \end{vmatrix}$$

which is called the Wronskian of the $n + 1$ functions $y, y_1, y_2, ..., y_n$. We consider the linear differential equation

$$W(y, y_1(x), y_2(x), ..., y_n(x)) \quad = \quad 0 \qquad ...(i)$$

where y is unknown and $y_1(x), y_2(x), ..., y_n(x)$ is a fundamental system of the solutions of (5). Since

$$W(y_i(x), y_1(x), y_2(x), ..., y_n(x)) \quad = \quad 0 \qquad (i = 1, 2, ..., n)$$

every $y_i(x)$ satisfies the equation (i). Furthermore, as will be shown shortly, the coefficient

$$(-1)^n W(y_1(x), y_2(x), ..., y_n(x)) \qquad ...(ii)$$

of $y^{(n)}$ in (i) does not vanish at any point in the domain D. Therefore, we obtain the following identity

$$y^{(n)} + p_1(x) y^{(n-1)} + ... + p_{n-1}(x) y' + p_n(x) y \quad = \quad \frac{(-1)^n W(y, y_1(x), y_2(x), ..., y_n(x))}{W(y_1(x), y_2(x), ..., y_n(x))} \qquad ...(iii)$$

This gives the relations between the solutions and the coefficients.

Notes

Now we shall prove that (ii) does not vanish at any point in D. Suppose that there exists a point x_0 in D for which

$$W(y_1(x_0), y_2(x_0), ..., y_n(x_0)) = 0 \qquad ...(iv)$$

Then the system of linear equations with the coefficients $y_i^{(j)}(x_0)$

$$C_1 y_1(x_0) + C_2 y_2(x_0) + ... + C_n y_n(x_0) = 0$$

$$C_1 y_1'(x_0) + C_2 y_2'(x_0) + ... + C_n y_n'(x_0) = 0$$

....

$$C_1 y_1^{(n-1)}(x_0) + C_2 y_2^{(n-1)}(x_0) + ... + C_n y_n^{(n-1)}(x_0) = 0$$

has solutions C_1, C_2, ..., C_n, not all zero. The linear combination

$$y(x) = \sum_{i=1}^{n} C_i\, y_i(x)$$

of $y_i(x)$ with these coefficients C_i obviously satisfies the equation (5) and the initial conditions (6) at the point x_0 in D. Therefore, we have

$$y(x) = \sum_{i=1}^{n} C_l\, y_i(x) \equiv 0$$

This contradicts the fact that $y_1(x), y_2(x), ..., y_n(x)$ are linearly independent. Therefore, the Wronskian of linearly independent solutions $y_1(x), y_2(x), ..., y_n(x)$ does not vanish at any point in D.

Next we shall consider the Wronskian $W(y_1(x), y_2(x), ..., y_n(x))$ of n solutions $y_1(x)$, $y_2(x)$, ..., $y_n(x)$ where $y_1(x), y_2(x), ... y_n(x)$ are not necessarily linearly independent. Differentiating $W(y_1(x), y_2(x), ..., y_n(x))$ with respect to x, we obtain

$$\frac{dW(y_1(x), y_2(x), ..., y_n(x))}{dx} = \begin{vmatrix} y_1(x), & y_2(x), & ..., & y_n(x) \\ y_1'(x), & y_2'(x), & ..., & y_n'(x) \\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ y_1^{(n-1)}(x), & y_2^{(n-2)}(x), & ..., & y_n^{(n-2)}(x) \\ y_1^{(n)}(x), & y_2^{(n)}(x), & ..., & y_n^{(2)}(x) \end{vmatrix} \qquad ...(v)$$

Since $y_l(x)$ satisfies the equation (5)

$$y_l^{(n)}(x) = -\sum_{k=1}^{n-1} p_k(x) y_l^{(n-k)}(x) - p_n(x) y_i(x)$$

Substituting this in the above determinant, we obtain

$$= \frac{dW(y_1(x), y_2(x), ..., y_n(x))}{dx} \qquad ...(vi)$$

$$= -p_i(x) W(y_1(x), y_2(x), ..., y_n(x))$$

Notes

Accordingly, $W(y_1(x), y_2(x)..., y_n(x))$ transpose is a solution of the linear homogeneous equation (vi) with coefficients continuous in D. Therefore, if $W(y_1(x), y_2(x)..., y_n(x))$ vanishes at a point in D, then, $W(y_1(x), y_2(x)..., y_n(x))$ is identically zero in the whole domain D. This proves the following theorem.

Theorem 1: Either the Wronskian of n solutions of (5) is identically zero or it never vanishes at any point in D.

By integration of the equation (vi), we obtain

$$W(y_1(x), y_2(x)..., y_n(x)) = W(y_1(x_0), y_2(x_0)..., y_n(x_0))\exp\left(-\int_{x_0}^{x} p_1(t)dt\right), x \in D \quad ...(vii)$$

which is called *Liouville's formula*. From (3), it follows immediately that, if n solutions $y_1(x)$, $y_2(x)$, ... $y_n(x)$ of (5) are linearly dependent, then the Wronskian $W(y_1(x), y_2(x), ..., y_n(x))$ is identically zero on D. Thus we obtain the following:

Theorem 2: Let $y_1(x)$, $y_2(x)$, ... $y_n(x)$ be n solutions of the equation (5). Then these solutions are linearly independent if and only if the Wronskian $W(y_1(x), y_2(x), ..., y_n(x))$ does not vanish at any point in D. Further, these solutions are linearly dependent if and only if their Wronskian is identically zero in D.

(6) ***Lagrange's method of variation of constants and D' Alembert's method of reduction of order***

We shall be concerned with the inhomogeneous linear differential equation (1). Let $y_1(x)$, $y_2(x)$ be solutions of (1). Then, clearly, $y(x) = y_1(x) - y_2(x)$ is a solution of the associated homogeneous equation (5). This proves the following theorem.

Theorem 1: The general solution of (1) is written as the sum of a particular solution of (1) and the general solution of (5).

However, if we know a fundamental system of the solutions of (5), then we can obtain a particular solution of (1) by the *method of variation of constants* which is due to Lagrange. Accordingly, in order to solve linear differential equations, it is sufficient to solve the associated homogeneous equations.

The method of variation of constants. Let $y_1, y_2, ..., y_n$ be a fundamental system of the solutions of (5). Then the general solution of (5) is written in the form

$$y(x) = \sum_{i=1}^{n} C_i\, y_n(x) \quad ...(i)$$

Now we regard these constants C_t as functions of x, and try to determine them in such a way that

$$y(x) = \sum_{i=1}^{n} C_t(x) y_i(x)$$

satisfies (1). As was shown by Lagrange, if $C_1(x), C_2(x), ..., C_n(x)$ satisfy the system of linear equations

$$\begin{aligned} y_1(x)C_1'(x) + y_2(x)C_2'(x) + ... + y_n(x)C_n'(x) &= 0 \\ y_1'(x)C_1'(x) + y_2'(x)C_2'(x) + ... + y_n'(x)C_n'(x) &= 0 \\ \dots\dots\dots\dots\dots\dots\dots\dots\dots\dots\dots\dots & \quad ...(ii) \\ y_1^{(n-2)}(x)C_1'(x) + y_2^{(n-2)}(x)C_2'(x) + ... + y_n^{(n-2)}C_n'(x) &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

Notes

$$y_1^{(n-1)}(x)C_1'(x)+y_2^{(n-1)}(x)C_2'(x)+...+y_n^{(n-1)}C_n'(x) \quad = \quad q(x)$$

then $\Sigma_{i=1}^{n} C_l(x)y_i(x)$ satisfies (1).

In fact, if there exist $C_1(x)$, $C_2(x)$, ..., $C_n(x)$ satisfying (ii), then, by differentiation and by making use of (ii), we obtain successively

$$y(x) \quad = \quad \sum_{i=1}^{n} C_i(x)y_i(x)$$

$$y'(x) \quad = \quad \sum_{i=1}^{n} C_i(x)y_i'(x)$$

....

$$y^{(n-1)}(x) \quad = \quad \sum_{i=1}^{n} C_i(x)y_i^{(n-1)}(x)$$

$$y^{(n)}(x) \quad = \quad \sum_{i=1}^{n} C_i(x)y_i^{(n)}(x)+q(x)$$

Since $y_i(x)$ satisfies (5), $y(x)$ is certainly a solution of (1).

Now we consider the system (ii). According to Theorem 2, the Wronskian $W(y_1(x), y_2(x), ..., y_n(x))$ of the fundamental system $\{y_i(x)\}$ never vanishes at any point in the domain D, in which the coefficients $p_1(x)$, $p_2(x)$, ..., $p_n(x)$ of (5) are continuous. Therefore, there exists one and only one set of solutions $C_i'(x), C_2'(x), ..., C_n'(x)$ of (ii), which is written as

$$dC_i(x)/dx \quad = \quad q(x)W_i(x)/W(y_i(x), y_2(x), ..., y_n(x)) \qquad ...(iii)$$

$$= \quad Z_i(x), \qquad (i=1,2,...,n)$$

where $W_i(x)$ is the cofactor of $y_i^{(n-1)}(x)$ in $W(y_1(x), y_2(x),..., y_n(x))$. Integrating (iii), we obtain

$$C_i(x) \quad = \quad \int_{x_0}^{x} Z_i(t)\,dt+\bar{C}_t, \qquad (i=1,2,...,n) \qquad ...(iv)$$

where $\bar{C}_t$ is a constant of integration. Consequently, a particular solution of the equation (1) is

$$y(x) \quad = \quad \sum_{x}^{n}\left(\int_{x_0}^{x} Z_i(t)\,dt+\bar{C}_i\right)y_i(x) \qquad ...(v)$$

The method of reduction of order. If a particular solution $y_1(x)$, not identically zero, of the nth order linear differential equation (5) is known, then, by setting

$$y \quad = \quad y_1 z$$

(5) can be reduced to a linear differential equation of the $(n-1)$ order with respect to dz/dx. This procedure is called the *method of reduction of order* and is due to D′ Alembert.

Notes

In fact, Leibnitz's formula yields

$$y^{(p)} = y_1 z^{(p)} + p y_1' z^{(p-1)} + \cdots + y_1^{(p)} z \qquad (p = 1, 2, ..., n)$$

Substituting these in (5), we see that the coefficient of $z^{(n)}$ is y_1, and that of z is zero. Thus (5) becomes an equation of the $(n - 1)$ order with respect to z',

$$y_1 z^{(n)} + q_1(x) z^{(n-1)} + q_2(x) z^{(n-1)} + ... + q_{n-1}(x) z' = 0 \qquad \text{(vi)}$$

In particular, when $n = 2$, the reduced equation (vi) can be solved. Hence, by virtue of this method, we obtain the general solution

$$y(x) = y_1(x) \int^x y_1(t)^{-2} \exp\left(-\int^i p_1(\tau) d\tau \right) dt \qquad ...\text{(viii)}$$

$y_1(x)$ being a particular solution of (5) with $n = 2$. This method is useful in the practical treatment of the linear differential equations.

Self Assessment

1. Consider the second order differential equations

   $$y'' + p_1(x) y' + p_2(x) y = 0$$

   having two independent solutions y_1 and y_2. Find a relation between p_1, p_2 in terms of y_1, y_2 and their derivatives.

2. Obtain the particular solution of the differential equation

   $$y'' - y = e^{2x}$$

   by the method of variation of constants.

2.3 Solution of the Linear Equation with Constant Coefficients

To solve the equation

$$P_0 \frac{d^n y}{dx^n} + P_1 \frac{d^{n-1} y}{dx^{n-1}} + ... + P_n y = 0, \qquad ...\text{(i)}$$

where P_0, P_1,...., P_n are constants.

Substitute $y = e^{mx}$ on a trial basis,

Then $$e^{mx}(P_0 m^n + P_1 m^{n-1} + ... + P_n) = 0 \qquad ...\text{(ii)}$$

Now, e^{mx} is a solution of (i) if m is a root of the algebraic equation

$$P_0 m^n + P_1 m^{n-1} + ... + P_n = 0 \qquad ...\text{(iii)}$$

Auxiliary Equation

The equation (iii) is called the *auxiliary equation.* Therefore if m have a value say m_1 that satisfies (iii), $y = e^{m_1 x}$ is an integral of (i), and if the n roots of (iii) be m_1, m_2, m_3, ...m_n the complete solution of (i) is

$$y = c_1 e^{m_1 x} + c_2 e^{m_2 x} + ... + c_n e^{m_n x}.$$

Notes

This will be the case when all the roots, $m_1, m_2, m_3, \ldots m_n$ of the auxiliary equation are real, distinct and different.

Auxiliary Equation having Equal Roots

If the auxiliary equation has two equal roots, say m_1 and m_2, the solution of the given equation

$$P_0 \frac{d^n y}{dx^n} + P_1 \frac{d^{n-1} y}{dx^{n-1}} + \ldots + P_n y = 0$$

will be $$y = (c_1 + c_2)\, e^{m_1 x} + c_3\, e^{m_2 x} + \ldots + c_n e^{m_n x}$$

or $$y = c e^{m_1 x} + c_3 e^{m_2 x} + \ldots + c_n e^{m_n x}$$

where $$c_1 + c_2 = c.$$

This is not the general solution of (i), because it contains $(n - 1)$ arbitrary constants while the order of the equation is n. To obtain the general solution of (i) in this case, we proceed as follows:

Consider the repeated factor as $\left(\frac{dy}{dx} - m_1\right)^2 y = 0$. This can be written as $(D - m_1)^2 y = 0$, where $D = \frac{d}{dx}$.

Put $$(D - m_1)\, y = \nu;$$

then $$(D - m_1)\, \nu = 0.$$

Therefore $$\frac{d\nu}{dx} = m_1 \nu$$

or $$\frac{d\nu}{\nu} = m_1\, dx$$

Integrating, we have $\log \frac{\nu}{c_2} = m_1 x$

Hence $$\nu = c_2\, e^{m_1 x}.$$

or $$(D - m_1)\, y = c_2\, e^{m_1 x}$$

or $$\frac{dy}{dx} - m_1 y = c_2\, e^{m_1 x}$$

This is a linear differential equation and we will have

$$y e^{-m_1 x} = c_1 + \int c_2\, e^{m_1 x} .\, e^{-m_1 x}\, dx$$

$$= c_1 + c_2 x$$

$$\therefore \quad y = (c_1 + c_2 x) e^{m_1 x}.$$

This consequently means that if two roots of the auxiliary equation are equal, the general solution of (i) will be

$$y \;=\; (c_1 + c_2 x)e^{m_1 x} + c_3 e^{m_2 x} + \ldots + c_n e^{m_n x}.$$

In general, if r roots of the auxiliary equation $P_0 m^n + P_1 m^{n-1} + \ldots + P_n = 0$ are equal to m_1 say, the general solution of (i) will be

$$y \;=\; (c_1 + c_2 x + c_3 x^2 + \ldots + c_r x^{r-1})\, e^{m_1 x} + c_{r+1} e^{m_{r+1} x} + \ldots + c_n e^{m_n x}.$$

Auxiliary Equation having Complex Roots

If some of the roots of auxiliary equation are complex, then we shall follow the procedure as given below:

Let $\alpha \pm i\beta$ be the roots of the auxiliary equation; then the corresponding part shall become

$$= c_1 e^{(\alpha + i\beta)} + c_2 e^{(\alpha - i\beta)x}$$

$$= c_1 e^{\alpha x}\, e^{i\beta x} + c_2 e^{\alpha x} e^{-i\beta x}$$

$$= e^{ax}(c_1 \cos \beta x + i c_1 \sin \beta x) + e^{ax}(c_2 \cos \beta x - i c_2 \sin \beta x)$$

$$= e^{ax}[(c_1 + c_2)\cos \beta x + (ic_1 - ic_2)\sin \beta x]$$

$$= e^{ax}[A \cos \beta x + b \sin \beta x],$$

where A and B are arbitrary constants.

Therefore the solution is

$$y \;=\; e^{ax}(c_1 \cos \beta x + c_2 \sin \beta x) + c_3 e^{m_2 x} + \ldots + c_n e^{m_n x}$$

Example 1: The expression $e^{ax}(A \cos \beta x + b \sin \beta x)$ can be also written as

$$c_1 e^{ax} \cos(\beta\, x \pm c_2) \text{ or } c_1 e^{ax} \sin(\beta\, x \pm c_2),$$

Example 2: if the auxiliary equation has two equal pairs of complex roots, say $\alpha \pm i\,\beta$ occurring twice, then the portion of the solution corresponding to these roots, is

$$e^{\alpha x}\left[(c_1 + c_2 x)\cos\, \beta x + (c_3 + c_4 x)\sin \beta x\right]$$

Example 3: If the auxiliary equation has the roots as $\alpha \pm \sqrt{\beta}$, then the portion of the solution corresponding to these roots is

$$c_1 e^{ax} \cos h\left(x\sqrt{\beta} + c_2\right) \text{ or } c_1\, e^{ax} \sin h\left(x\sqrt{\beta} + c_2\right)$$

Solution of equations of the form

$$P_0 \frac{d^n y}{dx^n} + P_1 \frac{d^{n-1} y}{dx^{n-1}} + \ldots + P_n y = 0.$$

Notes

will have the following properties.

Nature of the roots	Solution
1. Real and distinct i.e., $m_1, m_2, ...m_n$	$y = c_1 e^{m_1 x} + c_2 e^{m_2 x} + \cdots + c_n e^{m_n x}$
2. Real and equal, each m_1 (say)	$y = (c_1 + c_2 x + c_3 x^2 + \cdots + c_n x^{n-1}) e^{m_1 x}$
3. Non-repeated roots as $\alpha \pm i\beta$	$y = (c_1 \cos \beta x + c_2 \sin \beta x)\, e^{ax}$ or $y = c_1 e^{\alpha x} \cos(\beta x + c_2)$
4. Repeated roots $\alpha \pm i\beta$, r times	$y = [(c_1 + c_2 x + \cdots + c_r x^{r-1}) \cos\beta x + (c_1' + c_2' x + \cdots + c_r' x^{r-1}) \sin \beta x]\, e^{\alpha x}$
5. Irrational roots as $\alpha \pm \sqrt{\beta}$	$y = c_1 e^{ax} \cos h(x\sqrt{\beta} + c_2)$ or $y = c_1 e^{\alpha x} \sin h(x\sqrt{\beta} + c_2)$

Example 4: The symbol D is used for $\frac{d}{dx}$ for D^n for $\frac{d^n}{dx^n}$. It should be kept in mind that D and D^{-1} are the inverse operations, i.e., as D *means differentiations*, D^{-1} *means integrations*.

Illustrative Examples

Example 1: Solve: $\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} - 7\frac{dy}{dx} - 44y = 0.$

Solution: The equation can be written as $(D^2 - 7D - 44)\, y = 0$

The auxiliary equation is

$$m^2 - 7m - 44 = 0 \quad \text{or} \quad (m - 11)(m + 4) = 0$$

$\therefore$ $m = 11, -4$, which are real and distinct. Hence solution of the given equation is

$$y = c_1 e^{11x} + c_2\, e^{-4x}.$$

Example 2: Solve: $\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} - 4\frac{dy}{dx} + y = 0.$

Solution: The given equation is

$$(D^2 - 4D + 1) = 0$$

The auxiliary equation is

$$m^2 - 4m + 1 = 0$$

$$\therefore \quad m = \frac{4 \pm \sqrt{16 - 4}}{2} = 2 \pm \sqrt{3}$$

Hence general solution is

$$y = c_1 e^{(2+\sqrt{3})x} + c_2 e^{(2-\sqrt{3})x}$$

It can also be written in the form

$$y = e^{2x}\left(c_1 e^{\sqrt{3x}} + c_2 e^{\left(-\sqrt{3x}\right)}\right)$$

Notes

or $$y = e^{2x}\left(c_1 \cos h\sqrt{3x} + c_2 \sin h \sqrt{3x}\right).$$

Example 3: Solve: $\dfrac{d^3y}{dx^3} - 2\dfrac{d^2y}{dx^2} - 4\dfrac{dy}{dx} + 8y = 0.$

Solution: The given equation is

$$(D^3 - 2D^2 - 4D + 8)\, y = 0$$

Auxiliary equation is

$$m^2 - 2m^2 - 4m + 8 = 0$$

or $$(m - 2)\,(m^2 - 4) = 0;\ m = 2, -2.$$

$\therefore$ General solution is

$$y = (c_1 + c_2 x)e^{2x} + c_3 e^{-2x}.$$

Example 4: Solve: $\dfrac{d^2y}{dx^2} + 4y = 0.$

Solution: The given equation is

$$(D^2 + 4)\, y = 0.$$

Auxiliary equation is

$$m^2 + 4 = 0 \text{ or } m = \pm 2i.$$

The general solution is

$$y = c_1 \cos 2x + c_2 \sin 2x.$$

Self Assessment

3. Solve

$$\frac{d^3y}{dx^3} - 9\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} + 23\frac{dy}{dx} - 15y = 0$$

4. Solve

$$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} + 8\frac{dy}{dx} + 25y = 0$$

5. Solve

$$\frac{d^3y}{dx^3} - 4\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} + 5\frac{dy}{dx} - 2y = 0$$

6. Solve

$$\frac{d^4y}{dx^4} - 2\frac{d^3y}{dx^3} + 5\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} - 8\frac{dy}{dx} + 4y = 0$$

2.4 Particular Integral

Notes

Let $$\frac{1}{f(D)}Q \quad \text{...(i)}$$

denote some function of x which when operated upon by $f(D)$ gives Q. This function of x is a particular solution of the differential equation.

$$f(D)y = Q \quad \text{...(ii)}$$

As $f(D)$ and $f(D)^{-1}$ are inverse operations, therefore

$$D\{D^{-1}(Q)\} = Q \quad \text{(Particular case)}$$

or $$\frac{d}{dx}\{D^{-1}(Q)\} = Q$$

$$D^{-1}(Q) = \int Q\,dx$$

Example: Properties of $\frac{1}{f(D)}$.

1. If $Q = u_1 + u_2 + u_3 + \cdots + u_n$ then

$$\frac{1}{f(D)}Q = \frac{1}{f(D)}u_1 + \frac{1}{f(D)}u_2 + \cdots + \frac{1}{f(D)}u_n.$$

2. $\frac{1}{f(D)}(k\,Q) = k.\frac{1}{f(D)}Q.$ where k is a constant

3. $\frac{1}{f(D)}$ can be resolved into factors.

4. $\frac{1}{f(D)}$ can be broken into partial fractions.

5. $\frac{1}{f(D)}Q$ is a particular integration.

To show that $\frac{1}{D-\alpha}Q = e^{\alpha x}\int e^{-ex}Q\,dx$

Let $$\frac{1}{(D-\alpha)}Q = V$$

Therefore $$(D-\alpha)\,V = Q$$

or $$\frac{dv}{dx} - \alpha V = Q$$

This is a linear differential equation. The solution is

$$V e^{-ax} = \int Q e^{-ax}\,dx + c$$

$$V = e^{ax}\int Q e^{-ax} dx + ce^{ax}.$$

Now c can be taken zero, for we want only a particular solution.

Hence $$V = e^{ax}\int Q e^{-ax} dx.$$

or $$\frac{1}{(D-\alpha)}Q = e^{ax}\int Q\, e^{-ax} dx.$$

We are now in a position to evaluate

$$\{f(D)\}^{-1}Q$$

Let on factorization

$$f(D) = (D-\alpha_1)(D-\alpha_2)\cdots(D-\alpha_n)$$

Then $$(D-\alpha_1)(D-\alpha_2)\cdots(D-\alpha_n)y = Q$$

It follows that

$$(D-\alpha_1)(D-\alpha_2)\cdots(D-\alpha_n)y = (D-\alpha_1)^{-1}Q$$

$$= e^{\alpha_1 x}\int e^{-\alpha_1 x} Q\,dx$$

Therefore

$$(D-\alpha_3)\cdots(D-\alpha_n)y = (D-\alpha_2)^{-1} e^{\alpha_1 x}\int e^{-\alpha_1 x} Q\,dx$$

or $$(D-\alpha_3)\cdots(D-\alpha_n)y = e^{\alpha_2 x}\int e^{(\alpha_1-\alpha_2)x}\int e^{-\alpha_1 x} Q\,dx$$

and so on.

Hence, we get generally

$$y = e^{\alpha_n x}\int e^{(\alpha_{n-1}-a_n)x}\int\cdots\int e^{(\alpha_1-\alpha_2)x}\int e^{-\alpha_1 x} Q\,dx\cdots dx.$$

This is the required particular integral.

Note: In case $f(D)$ fails to give real linear factors, we may use imaginary factors and use the above method and finally put the result in a real form.

Let $\frac{1}{f(D)}$ be capable of resolving into partial fractions. Thus

$$\frac{1}{f(D)} = \frac{A_1}{D-\alpha_1} + \frac{A_2}{D-\alpha_2} + \cdots + \frac{A_n}{D-\alpha_n}$$

Now, particular integral

$$= \frac{1}{f(D)}Q = \frac{A_1}{D-\alpha_1}Q + \frac{A_2}{D-\alpha_2}Q + \ldots + \frac{A_n}{D-\alpha_n}Q.$$

Notes

$$A_1 e^{\alpha_1 x}\int e^{-\alpha_1 x} Q\,dx + A_2 e^{\alpha_2 x}\int e^{-\alpha_2 x} Q\,dx$$

$$+\cdots + A_n e^{\alpha_n x}\int e^{-\alpha_n x}\,Q\,dx.$$

To evaluate $\frac{1}{f(D)}e^{\alpha x}$, where

$$f(D) = P_0 D^n + P_1 D^{n-1} + \cdots + P_n,$$

and $f(\alpha) \neq 0$.

We know that

$$D(e^{ax}) = ae^{ax}$$

$$D^2(e^{ax}) = a^2 e^{ax}$$

....

....

$$D^n(e^{ax}) = a^n\ e^{ax}.$$

Therefore,

$$\begin{aligned} f(D)e^{ax} &= (P_0 D^n + P_1\ D^{n-1} + \cdots + P_n)\ e^{ax} \\ &= P_0\,D^n\,e^{ax} + P_1\ D^{n-1}\,e^{ax} + \cdots + P_n\,e^{ax} \\ &= P_0 a^n\,e^{ax} + P_1\,a^{n-1}\,e^{ax} + \cdots + P_n\,e^{ax} \\ &= (P_0 a^n + P_1 a^{n-1} + \cdots + P_n)e^{ax} \end{aligned}$$

Now, $f(D)e^{ax} = f(a)\,e^{ax}$.

Operating upon both sides with $\frac{1}{f(D)}$ we have

$$\frac{1}{f(D)}f(D)e^{ax} = \frac{1}{f(D)}f(a)e^{ax},$$

$$e^{ax} = f(a)\frac{1}{f(D)}e^{ax}$$

$$\therefore \qquad \frac{e^{ax}}{f(a)} = \frac{1}{f(D)}e^{ax},\ \text{provided}\ f(a) \neq 0.$$

Illustrative Examples

Example 1: Solve the following equation

$$(D^2 - 3D + 2)y = e^{5x}.$$

Notes

Solution: The given equation is

$$(D^2 - 3D + 2)y = e^{5x}$$

Auxiliary equation is

$$m^2 - 3m + 2 = 0 \text{ or } (m-1)(m-2) = 0$$

$$\therefore \quad m = 1, 2$$

$$\therefore \quad \text{C.F.} = c_1 e^x + c_2 e^{2x}$$

$$\text{P.I.} = \frac{1}{D^2 - 3D + 2} e^{5x}$$

$$= \frac{1}{25 - 3.5 + 2} e^{5x} = \frac{1}{12} e^{5x}$$

$$\therefore \quad y = \text{C.F.} + \text{P.I.}$$

$$= c_1 e^x + c_2 e^{2x} + \frac{1}{12} e^{5x}$$

Example 2: Solve: $\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} + \frac{dy}{dx} + y = e^{-x}$.

Solution: Here the auxiliary equation is

$$m^2 + m + 1 = 0, \qquad \therefore \qquad m = -\frac{1}{2} \pm i\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$$

$$\therefore \quad \text{C.F.} = e^{-\frac{1}{2}x}\left[A\cos\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{3}x + B\sin\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{3}x\right]$$

Also

$$\text{P.I.} = \frac{1}{D^2 + D + 1} e^{-x}$$

$$= \frac{1}{(-1)^2 + (-1) + 1} e^{-x} = e^{-x}$$

Hence the general solution of the given equation is

$$y = e^{-\frac{1}{2}x}\left\{A\cos\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}x + B\sin\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}x\right\} + e^{-x}$$

Self Assessment

Solve the following differential equations:

7. $(D^2 + 5D + 6)y = e^{2x}$.
8. $(D^3 - D^2 - 4D + 4)y = e^{3x}$.
9. $(4D^2 + 4D - 3)y = e^{2x}$
10. $(D^3 + 1)y = (e^x + 1)^2$

Notes

To evaluate $\frac{1}{f(D)}\sin ax$, where $f(D) = P_0 D^n + P_1 D^{n-1} + ... P_n$.

Case I. When $f(D)$ contains even powers of D

Let $\qquad f(D^2) = P_0(D^2)^n + P_1(D^2)^{n-1} + \cdots + P_{n.}$

We notice that

$$D^2 \sin ax = -a^2 \sin ax.$$

$$D^4 \sin ax = (-a^2)^2 \sin ax$$

$$D^6 \sin ax = (-a^2)^3 \sin ax$$

....

....

$$(D^2)^n \sin ax = (-a^2)^n \sin ax$$

Therefore $\qquad f(D^2)\sin ax = P_0(D^{2n} + P_1 D^{2n-2} + \cdots + P_n)\sin ax$

or $\qquad f(D^2)\sin ax$

$$= P_0 D^{2n} \sin ax + P_1 D^{2n-2} \sin ax + \cdots + P_n \sin ax$$

$$= P_0(-a^2)^n \sin ax + P_1(-a^2)^{n-1} \sin ax + ... + P_n \sin ax$$

$$= f(-a^2)\sin ax.$$

Operating on both sides with $\frac{1}{f(D^2)}$, we have

$$\frac{1}{f(D^2)} f(D^2)\sin ax = \frac{1}{f(D)^2} f(-a^2)\sin ax$$

or $\qquad \sin ax = f(-a^2).\frac{1}{f(D^2)}\sin ax.$

Dividing both sides by $f(-a^2)$, we have

$$\frac{1}{f(D^2)}\sin ax = \frac{1}{f(-a^2)}\sin ax.$$

Case II. When $f(D)$ contains odd powers of D.

Let it be put in the form $f_1(D^2) + Df_2(D^2)$; then

$$\frac{1}{f(D)}\sin ax = \frac{1}{f_1(D^2) + D f_2(D^2)}\sin ax$$

$$= \frac{1}{f(-a^2) + D f_2(-a^2)}\sin ax$$

$$= \frac{1}{m + nD}\sin ax \text{ say}$$

[where $m = f_1(-a^2), n = f_2(-a^2)$]

$$= (m - nD)\left\{\frac{1}{(m-nD)} \cdot \frac{1}{m+nD}\sin ax\right\}$$

Since $(m-nD), \dfrac{1}{(m-nD)}$ are inverse operations.

$$= (m-nD)\left\{\frac{1}{(m^2 - n^2 D^2)}\sin ax\right\}$$

$$= (m-nD)\frac{1}{m^2 + n^2 a^2}\sin ax$$

$$= \frac{m\sin ax - na\cos ax}{m^2 + n^2 a^2}$$

$$= \frac{f_1(-a^2)\sin ax - f_2(-a^2)a\cos ax}{\left\{f_1(-a^2)\right\}^2 + a^2\left\{f_2(-a^2)\right\}^2}$$

Note Similar results are true for $\dfrac{1}{f(D)}\cos ax$.

Illustrative Examples

Example 1: Solve: $(D^2 + D + 1)\, y = \sin 2x$.

Solutions: Here C.F. $= e^{-x/2}\left(c_1\cos\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}x + c_2\sin\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}x\right)$

$$\text{P.I.} = \frac{1}{D^2 + D + 1}\sin 2x$$

$$= \frac{1}{-(2)^2 + D + 1}\sin 2x$$

$$= \frac{1}{D-3}\sin 2x$$

$$= \frac{D+3}{D^2-9}\sin 2x$$

$$= \frac{D(\sin 2x) + 3\sin 2x}{-4-9}$$

$$= -\frac{1}{13}(2\cos 2x + 3\sin 2x)$$

Therefore the general solution is

$$y = \text{C.F.} + \text{P.I.}$$

$$= e^{-x/2}\left\{c_1 \cos\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}x + c_2 \sin\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}x\right\} - \frac{1}{13}(2\cos 2x + 3\sin 2x)$$

Self Assessment

11. Solve the following differential equations

$$(D^2 - D - 2)y = \sin 2x$$

12. $\dfrac{d^2y}{dx^2} - 5\dfrac{dy}{dx} + 6y = \sin 3x$

2.5 Summary

- The unit starts with the existence the uniqueness of the solution of nth order differential equation.
- Here the nth order linear differential equation is reduced to a system of n first order equations and the method of last unit applied.
- Some of the properties listed, help us in finding the general solution of the equation when the coefficients are constant.

2.6 Keywords

Complementary functions are the solutions of the nth order differential equation without the non-homogeneous term and involves n arbitrary constants.

Particular Integral (P.I.): It is the solution of non-homogeneous, nth order differential equation without having any arbitrary constants.

2.7 Review Questions

1. Solve

$$9\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} + 18\frac{dy}{dx} - 16y = 0$$

2. Solve

$$\frac{d^4y}{dx^4} + y = 0$$

3. Solve

$$(D^4 - D^3 - 9D^2 - 11D - 4)\, y = 0$$

4. Solve

$$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} - 5\frac{dy}{dx} + 6y = e^{4x}$$

Notes

5. Solve

$$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} - 3\frac{dy}{dx} + 2y = e^{5x}$$

6. $$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} - 4y = e^x + \sin 2x$$

Answers: Self Assessment

1. $p_1 = \dfrac{(y_1'' y_2 - y_2'' y_1)}{(y_1 y_2' - y_1' y_2)}$, $p_2 = \dfrac{(y_1' y_2'' - y_1' y_2')}{(y_1' y_2 - y_1 y_2')}$

2. Particular integral, P.I. = $\dfrac{e^{2x}}{3}$

3. $y = c_1 e^x + c_2 e^{3x} + c_3 e^{5x}$

4. $y = e^{-4x}(c_1 \cos 3x + c_2 \sin 3x)$

5. $y = (c_1 + c_2 x) e^x + c_3 e^{2x}$

6. $y = (c_1 + c_2 x) e^x + c_3 \cos 2x + c_4 \sin 2x$

7. $y = c_1 e^{-2x} + c_2 e^{-3x} + \dfrac{1}{20} e^{2x}$

8. $y = c_1 e^x + c_2 e^{2x} + c_3 e^{-2x} + \dfrac{1}{10} e^{3x}$

9. $y = c_1 e^{x/2} + c_2 e^{\frac{-3x}{2}} + \dfrac{1}{21} e^{2x}$

10. $y = c_1 e^{-x} + e^{x/2}\left(c_2 \cos \dfrac{\sqrt{3}}{2} x + c_3 \sin \dfrac{\sqrt{3}}{2} x\right) + \dfrac{1}{4} e^{2x} + e^x + 1$

11. $y = c_1 e^{2x} + c_2 e^{-x} + \dfrac{1}{20}(\cos 2x - 3\sin 2x)$

12. $y = c_1 e^{2x} + c_2 e^{3x} + \dfrac{1}{78} x(5 \cos 3x - \sin 3x)$

2.8 Further Readings

Books

Yosida, K., Lectures in Differential and Integral Equations

Piaggio, H.T.H., Differential Equations

Unit 3: Total Differential Equations, Simultaneous Equations

CONTENTS

Objectives
Introduction
3.1 Total Differential Equation
3.2 Condition of Integrability of Total Differential Equation
3.3 Methods for Solving the Differential Equations
3.4 Simultaneous Differential Equations
3.5 Summary
3.6 Keywords
3.7 Review Questions
3.8 Further Readings

Objectives

After studying this unit, you should be able to:

- Deal with equations which are total differentials as well as simultaneous differential equations involving more than one dependent variable and one independent variable.
- See whether total differential equations are integrable and study the condition of integrability as well its uniqueness of the solution.

Introduction

The total differential equations are seen to be integrable with some illustrated examples. There are four differential methods of obtaining the solution of total differential equations. The conditions when the total differential is exact are obtained.

3.1 Total Differential Equation

An equation of the form

$$P\,dx + Q\,dy + R\,dz = 0 \quad \text{...(i)}$$

Where, P, Q, R are functions of x, y, z is known as 'total differential equation'. The equation (i) is said to be integrable if there exists a relation of the form

$$u(x,y,z) = c, \quad \text{...(ii)}$$

which on differentiation gives the above differential equation (i). The relation (ii) is called the complete integral or solution of the given differential equation.

Now consider equation (i). If (ii) is the integral of (i) and since

$$du = \frac{\partial u}{\partial x}dx + \frac{\partial u}{\partial y}dy + \frac{\partial u}{\partial z}dz, \quad \text{...(iii)}$$

Notes

$du = 0$, gives on comparison with (i) the relations

$$\frac{\frac{\partial u}{\partial x}}{P} = \frac{\frac{\partial u}{\partial y}}{Q} = \frac{\frac{\partial u}{\partial z}}{R} = \lambda \qquad \text{(say)} \qquad \text{...(iv)}$$

So we get

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} = \lambda P, \frac{\partial u}{\partial y} = \lambda Q, \frac{\partial u}{\partial z} = \lambda R \qquad \text{...(v)}$$

3.2 Condition of Integrability of Total Differential Equation

Now differentiating these three equations (v), first with respect to y and z, second with respect to z and x and third with respect to x and y, we get

$$\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y \partial x} = P\frac{\partial \lambda}{\partial y} + \lambda\frac{\partial P}{\partial y}, \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial z \partial x} = P\frac{\partial \lambda}{\partial z} + \lambda\frac{\partial P}{\partial z}$$

$$\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x \partial y} = Q\frac{\partial \lambda}{\partial x} + \lambda\frac{\partial Q}{\partial x}, \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial z \partial y} = Q\frac{\partial \lambda}{\partial z} + \lambda\frac{\partial Q}{\partial z}$$

$$\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x \partial z} = R\frac{\partial \lambda}{\partial x} + \lambda\frac{\partial R}{\partial x}, \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y \partial z} = R\frac{\partial \lambda}{\partial y} + \lambda\frac{\partial R}{\partial y},$$

equating the values of $\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x \partial y}$ etc., and rearranging

$$\left.\begin{aligned} \lambda\left[\frac{\partial P}{\partial y} - \frac{\partial Q}{\partial x}\right] &= Q\frac{\partial \lambda}{\partial x} - P\frac{\partial \lambda}{\partial y} \\ \lambda\left[\frac{\partial Q}{\partial z} - \frac{\partial R}{\partial y}\right] &= R\frac{\partial \lambda}{\partial y} - Q\frac{\partial \lambda}{\partial z} \\ \lambda\left[\frac{\partial R}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial P}{\partial z}\right] &= P\frac{\partial \lambda}{\partial z} - R\frac{\partial \lambda}{\partial x} \end{aligned}\right\} \qquad \text{....(vi)}$$

Now multiplying the above three equations by R, P, Q respectively and adding, we get

$$R\left[\frac{\partial P}{\partial y} - \frac{\partial Q}{\partial x}\right] + P\left[\frac{\partial Q}{\partial z} - \frac{\partial R}{\partial y}\right] + Q\left[\frac{\partial R}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial P}{\partial z}\right] = 0 \qquad \text{...(vii)}$$

which is the required condition.

Sufficiency of the Condition (vii)

Now if (vii) holds for the coefficients of (i), a similar relation holds for coefficients of

$$\mu P\,dx + \mu Q\,dy + \mu R\,dz = 0 \qquad \text{...(viii)}$$

where μ is a function of x, y, z. Now consider $P\,dx + Q\,dy$. If it is not an exact differential with respect to x, y an integrating factor μ can be found for it. So $P\,dx + Q\,dy$ can be regarded as an exact differential.

Notes

Now μ $P\,dx + Q\,dy$ is an exact differential,

$$\frac{\partial P}{\partial y} = \frac{\partial Q}{\partial x},$$

and if

$$V = \int [P\,dx + Q\,dy]$$

$$\left.\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial V}{\partial x} &= P \text{ and } \frac{\partial V}{\partial y} = Q \\ \frac{\partial P}{\partial z} &= \frac{\partial^2 V}{\partial z dx}, \frac{\partial Q}{\partial z} = \frac{\partial^2 V}{\partial z \partial y} \end{aligned}\right\} \quad \text{...(ix)}$$

Putting these values in (vii)

$$\frac{\partial V}{\partial x}\left\{\frac{\partial^2 V}{\partial z \partial y} - \frac{\partial R}{\partial y}\right\} + \frac{\partial V}{\partial y}\left[\frac{\partial R}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial^2 V}{\partial z \partial x}\right] = 0$$

or

$$\frac{\partial V}{\partial x}\frac{\partial}{\partial y}\left[\frac{\partial V}{\partial z} - R\right] - \frac{\partial V}{\partial y}\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left[\frac{\partial V}{\partial z} - R\right] = 0$$

or

$$\begin{vmatrix} \dfrac{\partial V}{\partial x} & \dfrac{\partial}{\partial x}\left(\dfrac{\partial V}{\partial z} - R\right) \\ \dfrac{\partial V}{\partial y} & \dfrac{\partial}{\partial y}\left(\dfrac{\partial V}{\partial z} - R\right) \end{vmatrix} = 0$$

This equation shows that a relation independent of x and y exists between

$$V \text{ and } \frac{\partial V}{\partial z} - R.$$

Therefore $\frac{\partial V}{\partial z} - R$ can be expressed as a function of z and V alone.

Suppose

$$\frac{\partial V}{\partial z} - R = \phi\,(z, V)$$

Since

$$P\,dx + Q\,dy + R\,dz = \frac{\partial V}{\partial x}dx + \frac{\partial V}{\partial y}dy + \frac{\partial V}{\partial z}dz + \left(R - \frac{\partial V}{\partial z}\right)dz \quad \text{...(x)}$$

Equation (i) may be written, on taking into account (x) as

$$dV - \phi(z, V)\,dz = 0 \quad \text{...(xi)}$$

The equation is an equation in two variables. Its integration will lead to an equation of the form

$$F(V, z) = c.$$

Notes

Hence the condition (vii) is necessary and sufficient both. In the vector form the equation (i) can be written as

$$\vec{A}.\vec{dr} = 0$$

where

$$\vec{A} = P\hat{i} + Q\hat{j} + R\hat{k} \text{ and}$$

$$\vec{dr} = dx\hat{i} + dy\hat{j} + dz\hat{k}$$

The necessary and sufficient condition then becomes $\vec{A}$. Curve $\vec{A} = 0$ i.e.

$$\begin{vmatrix} P & Q & R \\ \dfrac{\partial}{\partial x} & \dfrac{\partial}{\partial y} & \dfrac{\partial}{\partial z} \\ P & Q & R \end{vmatrix} = 0$$

Self Assessment

1. Show that the differential equation

   $xz^3 dx - z\,dy + 2y\,dz = 0$

   is integrable.

2. Show that the differential equation

   $yz(y+z)dx + zx(z+x)dy + xy(x+y)dz = 0$

   is integrable.

3.3 Methods for Solving the Differential Equations

$$P\,dx + Q\,dy + R\,dx = 0 \qquad ...(1)$$

The condition for integrability of the above equation is

$$P\left(\frac{\partial Q}{\partial z} - \frac{\partial R}{\partial y}\right) + Q\left(\frac{\partial R}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial P}{\partial z}\right) + R\left(\frac{\partial P}{\partial y} - \frac{\partial Q}{\partial x}\right) = 0 \qquad ...(2)$$

If the differential equation (1) is exact differential then its integral is of the form

$$u(x,y,z) = c, \qquad ...(3)$$

Now

$$du = \frac{\partial u}{\partial x}dx + \frac{\partial u}{\partial y}dy + \frac{\partial u}{\partial z}dz = 0 \qquad ...(4)$$

Giving us the conditions

$$P = \frac{\partial u}{\partial x}, Q = \frac{\partial u}{\partial y}, R = \frac{\partial u}{\partial z}$$

Notes

Now $$\frac{\partial P}{\partial y} = \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y \partial x} = \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x \partial y} = \frac{\partial Q}{\partial x}$$

or $$\left.\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial P}{\partial y} &= \frac{\partial Q}{\partial x} \\ \text{Similarly} \quad \frac{\partial Q}{\partial z} &= \frac{\partial R}{\partial y}, \frac{\partial R}{\partial x} = \frac{\partial P}{\partial z} \end{aligned}\right\} \qquad ...(5)$$

There are various methods of solving equation (1) which are shown below.

Method I : Solution by Inspection

If the conditions of integrability are satisfied, then sometimes by rearranging the terms of the given equation and/or by dividing by some suitable function, the given equation may be changed to a form containing several parts, all of which are exact differential. Then integrating it, the integral can be obtained directly.

Note: Certain common exact differentials, which may occur in the transformed total differential equation are as follows:

$$x\,dy + y\,dx = d(xy)$$

$$xy\,dz + xz\,dy + yz\,dz = d(x\,y\,z)$$

$$\frac{x\,dy - y\,dx}{x^2} = d(y/x);$$

$$\frac{y\,dx - x\,dy}{y^2} = d(x/y)$$

$$\frac{x\,dy - y\,dx}{x^2 + y^2} = d(\tan^{-1}(y/x))$$

$$\frac{x\,dx + y\,dy}{x^2 + y^2} = d\left[\frac{1}{2}\log(x^2 + y^2)\right]$$

$$\frac{d\,f(x,y,z)}{f(x,y,z)} = d\left[\log f(x,y,z)\right]$$

$$\frac{x\,dx + y\,dy + z\,dz}{x^2 + y^2 + z^2} = d\left[\frac{1}{2}\log(x^2 + y^2 + z^2)\right]$$

Example 1: Solve

$$(y^2 + yz)dx + (z^2 + zx)dy + (y^2 - xy)dz = 0 \qquad ...(1)$$

Notes

Solution:

Let

$$P = y^2 + yz, Q = z^2 + zx, R = y^2 - xy \quad ...(2)$$

The condition for integrability of equation (1) is

$$P\left(\frac{\partial Q}{\partial z} - \frac{\partial R}{\partial y}\right) + Q\left[\frac{\partial R}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial P}{\partial z}\right] + R\left[\frac{\partial P}{\partial y} - \frac{\partial Q}{\partial x}\right] = 0 \quad ...(3)$$

Now

$$\frac{\partial Q}{\partial z} = 2z + x, \frac{\partial R}{\partial y} = 2y - x$$

$$\frac{\partial R}{\partial x} = -y, \qquad \frac{\partial P}{\partial z} = y$$

$$\frac{\partial P}{\partial y} = 2y + z, \quad \frac{\partial Q}{\partial x} = z$$

Substituting in equation (3) we get

$$(y^2 + yz)(2z + 2x - 2y) + (z^2 + zx)(-y - y) + (y^2 - xy)(2y + z - z)$$

or $$y^2(2z + 2x - 2y + 2y) + yz(2z + 2x - 2y) - 2y(z^2 + zx) - 2xy^2$$

$$= 2y^2z + 2xy^2 + 2yz^2 + 2xyz - 2y^2z - 2yz^2 - 2xyz - 2xy^2 = 0 = \text{R.H.S.}$$

So condition of integrability is verified.

Let z be constant, so that $dz = 0$. So from (1) we get

$$(y^2 + yz)dx + (z^2 + zx)dy = 0 \quad ...(4)$$

So $$\frac{dx}{x+z} + \frac{z\,dy}{y^2 + yz} = 0$$

or $$\frac{dx}{x+z} + \left\{\frac{1}{y} - \frac{1}{z+y}\right\}dy = 0 \quad ...(5)$$

Integrating we get

$$\log(x+z) + \log\frac{y}{y+z} = \text{Constant}$$

or $$\log\left\{\frac{(x+z)y}{y+z}\right\} = \text{constant} \quad ...(6)$$

$$= \log\phi \quad \text{(say)}$$

so $$\frac{y(x+z)}{y+z} = \phi \quad ...(7)$$

Where ϕ is only a function of z. Taking the differential of both the sides, we get

Notes

$$\frac{(y+z)\left[y(dx+dz)+(x+z)dy\right]-y(x+z)(dy+dz)}{(y+z)^2} = d\phi$$

or

$$\frac{(y^2+yz)dx+dy(z^2+zx)+dz(y^2+zy-yx-yz)}{(y+z)^2} = d\phi \qquad ...(8)$$

Now from (1) and (8) we have,

$$d\phi = 0 \quad \text{or} \quad \phi = k \text{ (constant)}$$

Thus from (7)

$$\frac{y(x+z)}{y+z} = \text{k}$$

or the solution is

$$y(x+z) = k(y+z) \qquad \text{Q.E.D.}$$

Example 2: Solve

$$(x^2y-y^3-y^2z)dx+(xy^2-x^2z-x^3)dy+(xy^2+x^2y)dz = 0 \qquad ...(1)$$

Let $\qquad \text{P} = x^2y-y^3-y^2z, Q = xy^2-x^2z-x^3,\ R = xy^2+x^2y$

The condition of integrability is

$$P\left(\frac{\partial Q}{\partial z}-\frac{\partial R}{\partial y}\right)+Q\left[\frac{\partial R}{\partial x}-\frac{\partial P}{\partial z}\right]+R\left[\frac{\partial P}{\partial y}-\frac{\partial Q}{\partial x}\right] = 0 \qquad ...(2)$$

So

$$\frac{\partial Q}{\partial z} = -x^2,\ \frac{\partial R}{\partial y} = 2xy+x^2$$

$$\frac{\partial R}{\partial x} = y^2+2xy,\ \frac{\partial P}{\partial z} = -y^2$$

$$\frac{\partial P}{\partial y} = x^2-3y^2-2yz,\ \frac{\partial Q}{\partial x} = y^2-2xz-3x^2$$

Substituting in (2) we have

$$= (x^2y-y^3-y^2z)\left[-x^2-2xy-x^2\right]+\left[xy^2-x^2z-x^3\right](y^2+2xy+y^2)+$$

$$+(xy^2+x^2y)\left[x^2-3y^2-2yz-y^2+2xz+3x^2\right]$$

$$= y\left[(x-y)(x+y)-yz\right][-2x](x+y)+\left[x(y-x)(y+x)-x^2z\right](2y)(x+y)+$$

$$+2xy(x+y)[2x^2-2y-yz+xz]$$

Notes

$$= 2yx(x+y)[-x^2+y^2+yz+y^2-x^2-xz+2x^2-2y^2-yz+xz]$$

$$= 2xy(x+y)[0]=0 \qquad ...(3)$$

So integrability condition is satisfied.

Now dividing by x^2y^2 eq. (1) we have

$$\left(\frac{1}{y}-\frac{y}{x^2}-\frac{z}{x^2}\right)dx+\left(\frac{1}{y}-\frac{z}{y^2}-\frac{x}{y^2}\right)dy+\left(\frac{1}{x}+\frac{1}{y}\right)dz = 0$$

or $$\frac{y\,dx-x\,dy}{y^2}+\frac{x\,dy-y\,dx}{x^2}+\frac{x\,dz-z\,dx}{x^2}+\frac{y\,dz-z\,dy}{y^2} = 0$$

or $$d\left(\frac{x}{y}\right)+d\left(\frac{y}{x}\right)+d\left(\frac{z}{x}\right)+d\left(\frac{z}{y}\right) = 0 \qquad ...(4)$$

Integrating (4) we have

$$\frac{x}{y}+\frac{y}{x}+\frac{z}{x}+\frac{z}{y} = 0 \quad \text{(say)} \qquad ...(5)$$

or

$$x^2+y^2+z(x+y) = cxy$$ is the solution of equation (1).

Self Assessment

3. Solve the differential equation

   $2yz\,dx+zx\,dy-xy(1+z)dz$

4. Solve the differential equation

   $x\,dx+y\,dy-\sqrt{a^2-x^2-y^2}\,dz=0$

Method II: Regarding one Variable as Constant

If the differential equation satisfies the condition of integrability and any two terms say $Pdx+Qdy=0$ can easily be integrated, then the third variable (say z) may be regarded as constant so that $dz=0$.

Note that we should choose such a variable constant so that the remaining equation may be integrated easily.

So the given differential equation will reduce to the integrable form

$$Pdx+Q\,dy = 0 \qquad ...(1)$$

suppose its solution is

$$u = c \quad \text{(constant)} \qquad ...(2)$$

Notes

i.e. not involving x, y. Now we take

$$u = \phi(z) \quad ...(3)$$

where $\phi(z)$ is the function of z alone as the solution of the given equation. Now taking the differential of both sides of equation (3), we must get the given equation.

On equating the two, we may get the value of $\frac{d\phi}{dz}$. Eliminating x, y from the value of $\frac{d\phi}{dz}$, using (3), and then integrating we can obtain the value of $\phi(z)$. Substituting the value of ϕ in (3), we get required solution.

Example 1: Solve

$$3x^2dx + 3y^2dy - (x^3 + y^3 + e^{2z})dz = 0 \quad ...(1)$$

by regarding one variable as constant.

Solution:

Let z be constant so that

$$dz = 0 \quad ...(2)$$

Then (1) gives

$$3x^2dx + 3y^2dy = 0 \quad ...(3)$$

This gives

$$x^3 + y^3 = \text{constant} = \phi(z) \quad \text{(say)} \quad ...(4)$$

Taking the differential of (4) we have

$$3x^2dx + 3y^2\,dy = d\phi \quad ...(5)$$

Comparing (5) with (1) we have

$$dz(x^3 + y^3 + e^{2z}) = d\phi \quad ...(6)$$

or eliminating x, y from (6) we have

$$(\phi + e^{2z}) = \frac{d\phi}{dz}$$

or

$$\frac{d\phi}{dz} - \phi = e^{2z} \quad ...(7)$$

This equation is linear in ϕ, whose $I.F. = e^{-z}$. So

$$\phi e^{-z} = \int e^{2z}.e^{-z}dz \ + \text{constant}$$

$$= \int e^{z}\,dz + C \ \text{(say)}$$

Thus

$$\phi(z) = e^{2z} + Ce^{z}$$

Notes

Now from (4) we have

$$x^3 + y^3 = e^{2z} + Ce^z \qquad ...(8)$$

which is the required solution

Example 2: Solve

$$(2x^2 + 2xy + 2xz^2 + 1)dx + dy + dz.2z = 0 \qquad ...(1)$$

by regarding one variable as constant.

Solution: Let x be constant, so that

$$dx = 0 \qquad ...(2)$$

Then $$dy + 2z\,dz = 0$$

or $$d(y + z^2) = 0$$

so $$y + z^2 = \text{constant}$$

$$= \phi(x) \qquad \text{(say)} \qquad ...(3)$$

Taking differential of (3) we have

$$dy + 2z\,dz = d\phi(x) \qquad ...(4)$$

Comparing (4) with (1) we have

$$-(2x^2 + 2xy + 2xz^2 + 1)\,dx = d\phi(x)$$

$$-\frac{d\phi}{dx} = 2x^2 + 1 + 2x(y + z^2)$$

or $$-\frac{d\phi}{dx} = 2x^2 + 1 + 2x\phi$$

So $$\frac{d\phi}{dx} + 2x\phi = -2x^{2-1} \qquad ...(5)$$

The equation (5) is linear in ϕ, so I.F. is $e^{+\int 2x\,dx} = e^{x^2}$.

Thus $$\phi e^{x^2} = -\int (2x^2 + 1)\,e^{x^2}dx + C$$

$$= -\int x\left[2xe^{x^2}\right]dx - \int e^{x^2}dx + C$$

$$= -x\,e^{x^2} + \int e^{x}dx - \int e^{x^2}dx + C$$

$$= -x\,e^{x^2} + C$$

So $\phi = -x + Ce^{-x^2}$. Thus $y + z^2 = -x + Ce^{-x^2}$ Q.E.D.

Self Assessment

Notes

5. Solve the differential equation

$yz\, dx^{+2} zx\, dy - 3xy\, dz = 0$

6. Solve

$2(y+z)dx - (x+z)dy + (2y - x + z)dz = 0$

Method III: For Homogeneous Equations

Consider the equation

$$P\,dx + Q\,dy + R\,dy = 0 \qquad ...(1)$$

If the functions P, Q and R are homogeneous functions of x, y, z then one variable say z, can be separated from the other variables by substituting $x = z\,u$ and $y = zv$, so that

$$dx = z\,du + u\,dz,$$

$$dy = z\,dv + v\,dz, \qquad ...(2)$$

in the given equation. Then transformed equation can be integrated as

$$\frac{du\, f_1(u,v) + f_2(u,v)dv}{F(u,v)} + \frac{dz}{z} = 0 \qquad ...(3)$$

Now to integrate the first term, we find $d[F(u,v)]$ and add and subtract it to numerator. After doing so, the first term will also be integrable.

Example 1: Solve

$$(yz + z^2)dx - xz\,dy + xy\,dz = 0 \qquad ...(1)$$

Here $yz + z^2, -xz$ and xy are homogeneous in x, y, z. Let us put $x = uz$, and $y = vz$, so that

$$\left.\begin{aligned} dx &= z\,du + u\,dz \\ dy &= z\,dv + v\,dz \end{aligned}\right\} \qquad ...(2)$$

Substituting (2) in (1) we have

$$(vz^2 + z^2)(z\,du + u\,dz) - uz^2(z\,dv + v\,dz) + uvz^2dz = 0$$

$$z[(v+1)du - u\,dv] + \left[u(v+1)\begin{matrix}-uv\\+uv\end{matrix}\right]dz = 0 \qquad ...(3)$$

or

$$\frac{(v+1)du - u\,dv}{u(v+1)} + \frac{dz}{z} = 0 \qquad ...(4)$$

Simplifying we have

$$\frac{du}{u} - \frac{dv}{1+v} + \frac{dz}{z} = 0 \qquad ...(5)$$

Notes

Integrating

$$\log u - \log(1+v) + \log z = \log c \qquad (c \text{ being constant})$$

or $$\frac{uz}{1+v} = c$$

or $$u\,z^2 = c(z+zv)$$

or $$xz = c(y+z) \qquad ...(6)$$

is the solution of the equation (1).

Example 2: Solve

$$z(z-y)dx + z(z+x)dy + x(x+y)dz = 0 \qquad ...(1)$$

Here $$P = z(z-y),\ Q = z(z+x),\ R = x(x+y) \qquad ...(2)$$

$$\left.\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial P}{\partial y} &= -z,\ \frac{\partial Q}{\partial x} = z \\ \frac{\partial R}{\partial x} &= 2x+y,\ \frac{\partial D}{\partial z} = 2z-y \\ \frac{\partial Q}{\partial z} &= 2z+x,\ \frac{\partial R}{\partial y} = x \end{aligned}\right\} \qquad ...(3)$$

The integrability condition

$$P\left[\frac{dQ}{dz} - \frac{\partial R}{\partial y}\right] + Q\left[\frac{\partial R}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial P}{\partial z}\right] + R\left[\frac{\partial P}{\partial y} - \frac{\partial Q}{\partial x}\right] = 0 \qquad ...(4)$$

L.H.S. of equation (4) is

$$= z(z-y)[2z+x-x] + z(z+x)[2x+y-2z+y] + x(x+y)[-z-z]$$

$$= 2z^2(z-y) + z(z+x)(2x+2y-2z) - 2zx(x+y)$$

$$= 2z^3 - 2z^2y + 2z^2x + 2zx^2 + 2yz^2 + 2xyz - 2z^3 - 2z^2x - 2zx^2 - 2xyz = 0 = \text{R.H.S.}$$

So condition (4) is satisfied

Let

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x &= uz,\ dx = z\,du + udz \\ y &= vz,\ dy = z\,dv + vdz \end{aligned}\right\} \qquad ...(5)$$

Substituting in equation (1)

$$z^2(1-v)[z\,du + u\,dz] + z^2(1+u)[z\,dv + v\,dz] + z^2u(u+v)\,dz = 0$$

or $$(1-v)z\,du + z(1+u)\,dv + \left[u(1-v) + v(1+u) + u(u+v)\right]dz = 0$$

Notes

or
$$\frac{(1-v)\,du+(1+u)dv}{(u+v)(1+u)}+\frac{dz}{z} = 0$$

$$\frac{[1+u-u-v]du}{(u+v)(1+u)}+\frac{dv}{u+v}+\frac{dz}{z} = 0$$

or
$$\left(\frac{1}{u+v}-\frac{1}{1+u}\right)du+\frac{dv}{u+v}+\frac{dz}{z} = 0$$

$$\frac{du+dv}{u+v}-\frac{du}{1+u}+\frac{dz}{z} = 0$$

Integrating we have

$$\log(u+v)-\log(1+u)+\log z = \log\left(\frac{1}{c}\right) \quad \left(\begin{array}{c} c \text{ being} \\ \text{constant}\end{array}\right)$$

or
$$cz(u+v) = 1+u$$

or
$$c(x+y)z = z+x \qquad ...(6)$$

is the solution of the equation (1).

Self Assessment

7. Solve the differential equation

$$z^2dx+(z^2-2yz)dy+(2y^2-yz-zx)dz=0$$

8. Solve

$$(y^2+z^2-x^2)dx-2xy\ dy-2xz\ dz=0$$

Method IV: Method of Auxiliary Equations

Let the given equation

$$P\ dx+Q\ dy+R\ dz = 0 \qquad ...(1)$$

be integrable. Then we must have

$$P\left[\frac{dQ}{dz}-\frac{\partial R}{\partial y}\right]+Q\left[\frac{\partial R}{\partial x}-\frac{\partial P}{\partial z}\right]+R\left[\frac{\partial P}{\partial y}-\frac{\partial Q}{\partial x}\right] = 0 \qquad ...(2)$$

Comparing these two, we obtain

$$\frac{dx}{\left(\frac{dQ}{dz}-\frac{\partial R}{\partial y}\right)} = \frac{dy}{\left(\frac{\partial R}{\partial x}-\frac{\partial P}{\partial z}\right)}=\frac{dz}{\left(\frac{\partial P}{\partial y}-\frac{\partial Q}{\partial x}\right)}$$

These equations are called auxiliary equations and can be solved as shown in the two examples below.

Notes

Example 1: Solve

$$(y^2+yz+z^2)dx+(z^2+zx+x^2)dy+(x^2+xy+y^2)dz = 0 \qquad ...(1)$$

Here put $P = y^2+yz+z^2, Q = z^2+zx+x^2$

$$R = x^2+xy+y^2 \qquad ...(2)$$

Now $\frac{\partial Q}{\partial z} = 2z+x,\ \frac{\partial R}{\partial y} = 2y+x$

$$\frac{\partial R}{\partial x} = 2x+y,\ \frac{\partial P}{\partial z} - 2z+y$$

$$\frac{\partial P}{\partial y} = 2y+z,\ \frac{\partial Q}{\partial x} = 2x+z$$

The auxiliary equations are

$$\frac{dx}{\frac{\partial Q}{\partial z}-\frac{\partial R}{\partial y}} = \frac{dy}{\frac{\partial R}{\partial x}-\frac{\partial P}{\partial z}} = \frac{dz}{\frac{\partial P}{\partial y}-\frac{\partial Q}{\partial x}} \qquad ...(3)$$

or $$\frac{dx}{2(z-y)} = \frac{dy}{2(x-z)} = \frac{dz}{2(y-x)} \qquad ...(4)$$

so

$$\frac{dx+dy+dz}{z-y+x-z+y-x} = \frac{dx+dy+dz}{0} \qquad ...(5)$$

Thus $dx+dy+dz = 0$

or $x+y+z =$ constant $= u$ (say) ...(6)

Also from (4)

$$\frac{(z+y)dx}{z^2-y^2} = \frac{(x+z)dy}{x^2-z^2} = \frac{(y+x)dz}{y^2-x^2}$$

So $$\frac{(z+y)dx+(x+z)dy+(y+x)dz}{0} \qquad ...(7)$$

Gives us

$$(z+y)dx+(x+z)dy+(y+x)dz = 0 \qquad ...(8)$$

or $y\,dx+x\,dy+z\,dy+y\,dz+z\,dx+x\,dz = 0$

or $d(xy+yz+zx) = 0$

So $xy+yz+zx =$ constant $= v$ (say) ...(9)

Notes

Let the solution of (1) is

$$A du + B\, dv \qquad ...(10)$$

then
$$A\,du + B\,dv = 0 \qquad ...(11)$$

is identical to (1) i.e.

$$A(dx+dy+dz) + B[(z+y)dx + (x+z)dy + (y+x)dz] = 0 \qquad ...(12)$$

$$[A + B(z+y)]dx + [A + B(x+z)]dy + [A + B(y+x)]dz = 0 \qquad ...(12')$$

Comparing (12′) with (1) we have

$$\left.\begin{aligned} A + B(y+z) &\equiv y^2 + yz + z^2 \\ A + B(x+z) &\equiv z^2 + zx + x^2 \\ A + B(x+y) &\equiv x^2 + xy + y^2 \end{aligned}\right\} \qquad ...(13)$$

From (13) we have $B = x + y + z = u$ ...(14)

And
$$A = -(xy + yz + xz) = -v \qquad ...(15)$$

Hence

$$Au + Bv = 0 \qquad ...(16)$$

becomes
$$-v\,du + u\,dv = 0$$

or
$$-\frac{du}{u} + \frac{dv}{v} = 0$$

on integrating

$$\log\left(\frac{u}{v}\right) = \log k$$

or
$$\frac{u}{v} = k \qquad ...(17)$$

From (6) and (9) we have

$$\frac{x+y+z}{xy+yz+zx} = k \qquad ...(18)$$

which is the solution of equation (1).

Example 2: Solve

$$(2xz - yz)dx + (2yz - zx)dy - (x^2 - xy + y^2)dz = 0 \qquad ...(1)$$

Solution: By the method of forming auxiliary equations

Here $P = 2xz - yz$, $Q = 2yz - zx$, $R = -x^2 + xy - y^2$

The set of Auxiliary equations are

$$\frac{dx}{\left(\frac{\partial Q}{\partial z}-\frac{\partial R}{\partial y}\right)} = \frac{dy}{\left(\frac{\partial R}{\partial x}-\frac{\partial P}{\partial z}\right)}=\frac{dz}{\left(\frac{\partial P}{\partial y}-\frac{\partial Q}{\partial x}\right)} \quad ...(2)$$

$$\frac{\partial Q}{\partial z} = 2y-x, \frac{\partial R}{\partial y}=z+x-2y$$

$$\frac{\partial R}{\partial x} = -2x+y, \frac{\partial P}{\partial z}=2x-y$$

$$\frac{\partial P}{\partial y} = -z, \frac{\partial Q}{\partial x}=-z$$

$$\left.\begin{aligned}\frac{\partial Q}{\partial z}-\frac{\partial R}{\partial y} &= 2y-x-x+2y\\ \frac{\partial R}{\partial x}-\frac{\partial P}{\partial z} &= -2x-2x\\ \frac{\partial P}{\partial y}-\frac{\partial Q}{\partial x} &= -z+z=0\end{aligned}\right\} \quad ...(3)$$

Thus substituting (3) into equation (2) we have

$$\frac{dx}{(2y-x)-(x-2y)} = \frac{dy}{(y-2x)-(2x-y)}=\frac{dz}{-z-(-z)}$$

$$\frac{dx}{2(2y-x)} = \frac{dy}{2(y-2x)}=\frac{dz}{0} \quad ...(4)$$

Last equation gives $dz = 0$

or $\qquad z = a = u \quad$ (say) ...(5)

From first two members of equation (4) we have

$$\frac{dx}{2y-x} = \frac{dy}{y-2x}$$

or $\qquad (y-2x)dx = (2y-x)dy$

Re-arranging we have

$$y\,dx+x\,dy-2x\,dx-2y\,dy = 0$$

or $\qquad d(xy-d(x^2)-d(y^2) = 0$

$$d(xy-x^2-y^2) = 0$$

Thus $\qquad xy-x^2-y^2 = \text{constant} = v$ (say) ...(6)

Let the given equation (1) be identical to

$$A\,du + B\,dv = 0 \qquad ...(7)$$

From (5) $\quad du = dz.$

From (6) and (7) we have

$$A\,dz + B\,d(xy - x^2 - y^2) = 0$$

or $$A\,dz + B(x\,dy + y\,dx - 2x\,dx - 2y\,dy) = 0 \qquad ...(8)$$

Rearranging in (8) we have

$$(By - 2x\,B)dx + (x - 2y)B\,dy + A\,dz = 0 \qquad ...(9)$$

Comparing (9) with (1) we have

$$By - 2xB = 2xz - yz,\ \ i.e\ B = -z = -u \qquad ...(10)$$

And $$A = xy - x^2 - y^2 \equiv v \qquad ...(11)$$

Hence (7) gives

$$v\,du - u\,dv = 0 \qquad ...(12)$$

Integrating (12)

$$\frac{du}{u} - \frac{dv}{v} = 0$$

or $$\log u - \log v = \text{constant} = \log c \qquad \text{(say)}$$

Therefore

$$\frac{u}{v} = c$$

or $$\frac{z}{xy - x^2 - y^2} = c$$

is the solution of equation (1).

Self Assessment

9. Solve

   $(a - z)(y\,dx + x\,dy) + xy\,dz = 0$

10. Solve

   $(y^2 + yz + z^2)dx + (z^2 + zx + x^2)dy + (x^2 + xy + y^2)dz = 0$

3.4 Simultaneous Differential Equations

In the unit 5 we have discussed differential equations involving two variables i.e. one independent variable and another dependent variable. There is quite a lot of situations in which we have to deal with a number of dependent variables that depend on one independent variable. In the above sections also we have been dealing with more than two variables. So in these cases we can take one variable as independent and solve the equations for the other remaining variables. We illustrate these by means of examples.

Example 1: Solve

$$\frac{dx}{dt}+wy = 0 \quad ...(1)$$

$$\frac{dy}{dt}-wx = 0 \quad ...(2)$$

Differentiate (1) by t, we have

$$\frac{d^2x}{dt^2}+w\frac{dy}{dt} = 0 \quad ...(3)$$

Substituting the value of $\frac{dy}{dt}$ from (2) into (3) we have

$$\frac{d^2x}{dt^2}+w^2x = 0 \quad ...(4)$$

The solution of (4) is

$$x = A\cos wt + B\sin wt \quad ...(5)$$

Where A, B are constants. Substituting this value of x in (1) we have

$$-wA\sin wt + wB\cos wt + wy = 0$$

or $$y = -A\sin wt + B\cos wt \quad ...(6)$$

Example 2: Solve

$$\frac{dx}{dt}+4x+3y = t \quad ...(1)$$

$$\frac{dy}{dt}+2x+5y = e^t \quad ...(2)$$

Introducing D operator, $D=\frac{d}{dt}$ in (1) and (2) we have

$$(D+4)x+3y = t \quad ...(3)$$

$$(D+5)y+2x = e^t \quad ...(4)$$

Operating equation by $(D + 5)$,

$$(D+5)(D+4)x+3(D+5y) = (D+5)t$$

or $$(D+5)(D+4)x+3(D+5)y = 5t+1 \quad ...(5)$$

Eliminating y from (5)

$$(D+5)(D+4)x+3(e^t-2x) = 5t+1$$

or $$(D^2+9D+20)x-6x = 5+1-3e^t$$

Notes

or $$(D^2+9D+14)x = 1+5t-3e^t \quad ...(6)$$

or $$(D+7)(D+2)x = 1+5t-3e^t \quad ...(7)$$

C.F. is $C_1e^{-7t}\ C_2e^{-2t}$

The particular integral, P.I. is given by

$$P.I. = \frac{1}{[14+9D+D^2]}\{1+5t-3e^t\}$$

$$= \frac{1}{14}\left(1+\frac{9D+D^2}{14}\right)^{-1}\left\{1+5t-3e^t\right\}$$

$$= \frac{1}{14}\left(1-\frac{9D}{14}\right)(1+5t)-\frac{3e^t}{14+9(1)+(1)^2}$$

$$= \frac{1}{14}\left(1+5t-\frac{45}{14}\right)-\frac{3e^t}{24}$$

$$= \frac{1}{14}\left(-\frac{31}{14}+5t\right)-\frac{e^t}{8} \quad ...(8)$$

So the complete solution is

$$C_1e^{-7t} + C_2e^{-2t}+\frac{5}{14}t-\frac{31}{196}-\frac{e^t}{8} \quad ...(9)$$

Self Assessment

11. Solve $\frac{dx}{dt}-7x+y=0$

$$\frac{dy}{dt}-2x-5y=0$$

12. Solve $\frac{dx}{dt}+2\frac{dy}{dt}-2x+2y=3e^t$

$$3\frac{dx}{dt}+\frac{dy}{dt}+2x+y=4e^{3t}$$

The equation of the type

$$\left.\begin{aligned} P_1dx+Q_1dy+R_1dz &= 0 \\ P_2dx+Q_2dy+R_2dz &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\} \quad ...(1)$$

Where P_1, P_2, Q_1, Q_2 and R_1, R_2 are functions of x, y, z

We can write these equations as

$$P_1\frac{dx}{dz}+Q_1\frac{dy}{dz}+R_1 = 0$$

Notes

$$P_2 \frac{dx}{dz} + Q_2 \frac{dy}{dz} + R_2 = 0$$

Solving for $\frac{dx}{dz}$ and $\frac{dy}{dz}$

$$\frac{dx}{dz} = \frac{Q_1R_2 - Q_2R_1}{P_1Q_2 - Q_1P_2}, \frac{dy}{dz} = \frac{R_1P_2 - P_1R_2}{P_1Q_2 - Q_1P_2}$$

hence

$$\frac{dx}{Q_1R_2 - Q_2R_1} = \frac{dy}{R_1P_2 - P_1R_2} = \frac{dz}{P_1Q_2 - P_2Q_1} \quad ...(2)$$

i.e. equations (1) can be put in the form

$$\frac{dx}{P} = \frac{dy}{Q} = \frac{dz}{R} \quad ...(3)$$

Hence forth the equations (3) will be taken as the standard form of a pair of ordinary simultaneous equations of the first order and of the first degree.

Solution of $\frac{dx}{P} = \frac{dy}{Q} = \frac{dz}{R}$

We have

$$\frac{dx}{P} = \frac{dy}{Q} = \frac{dz}{R} = \frac{l\,dx + m\,dy + n\,dz}{lP + mQ + nR} \quad ...(4)$$

and if $lP + mQ + nR = 0$ ...(5)

then $l\,dx + m\,dy + n\,dz = 0$ ...(6)

and if (5) is an exact differential, say du, then $u = a$ is one equation of the complete solution.

Similarly choosing l', m' and n' such that

$$l'P + m'Q + n'R = 0.$$

then $l'dx + m'dy + n'dz = dv = 0$ ...(7)

Whence $v = b$ is another equation of the complete solution.

This method may be used with advantage in some examples to obtain a zero denominator and a numerator that is an exact differential or a non-zero denominator of which the numerator is the differential.

Example 1: Solve

$$\frac{dx}{z(x+y)} = \frac{dy}{z(x-y)} = \frac{dz}{x^2 + y^2} \quad ...(1)$$

Each fraction is equal to

$$= \frac{x\,dx - y\,dy - z\,dz}{xz(y+x) - yz(x-y) - z(x^2+y^2)} = \frac{x\,dx - y\,dy - z\,dz}{0}$$

Therefore

Notes

$$x\,dx - y\,dy - z\,dz = 0 \qquad ...(2)$$

or $$d\left(\frac{x^2}{2} - \frac{y^2}{2} - \frac{z^2}{2}\right) = 0$$

or $$x^2 - y^2 - z^2 = \text{constant} = c_1 \qquad ...(3)$$

Similarly

$$\frac{y\,dx + x\,dy - z\,dz}{yz(y+x) + xz(x-y) - z(x^2+y^2)} = \frac{y\,dx + xdy - zdz}{0}$$

Thus

$$y\,dx + x\,dy - z\,dz = 0$$

Thus $$xy - \frac{z^2}{2} = \text{constant} = c_2 \qquad ...(4)$$

So the two integrals (3), (4) are complete integrals of (1) Q.E.D.

Example 2: Solve

$$\frac{dx}{x^2+y^2} = \frac{dy}{2xy} = \frac{dz}{(x+y)z} \qquad ...(1)$$

Solution: From the first two members

$$\frac{dx+dy}{x^2+y^2+2xy} = \frac{dz}{(x+y)z}$$

or

$$\frac{dx+dy}{x+y} = \frac{dz}{z} \qquad ...(2)$$

Integrating (2) we have

$$\log(x+y) = \log z + \log c$$

∴ $$x+y = cz \qquad ...(3)$$

Also from (i)

$$\frac{dx+dy}{(x+y^2)} = \frac{dx-dy}{(x-y)^2} \qquad ...(4)$$

Integrating (4) we have

$$-(x+y)^{-1} = -(x-y)^{-1} - c_2 \qquad (c_2 \text{ being a constant}) \qquad ...(5)$$

or $$\frac{1}{x+y} = \frac{1}{x-y} + c_2$$

or $$\frac{1}{x-y}-\frac{1}{x+y}+c_2 = 0$$

$$\frac{x+y-x+y}{(x^2-y^2)}+c_2 = 0$$

∴ $$2y+c_2(x^2-y^2) = 0$$

So $$c_2 = \frac{2y}{y^2-x^2}$$

So complete solution is

$$\phi(c_1,c_2) = 0=\phi\left(\frac{x+y}{z},\frac{zy}{y^2-x^2}\right)=0 \quad ...(6)$$

Example 3: Solve

$$\frac{dx}{xy} = \frac{dy}{y^2}=\frac{dz}{xyz-2x^2} \quad ...(1)$$

Solution:

From the first two members

$$\frac{dx}{xy} = \frac{dy}{y^2}$$

$$\frac{dx}{x} = \frac{dy}{y} \quad ...(2)$$

Integrating (2) we have

$$\log x = \log y+\log c_1$$

or $$x = c_1 y \quad ...(3)$$

From the second and third member of (1) we have

$$\frac{dy}{y^2} = \frac{dz}{xyz-2x^2} \quad ...(4)$$

Putting the value of x from (3) we have from (4)

$$\frac{dy}{y^2} = \frac{dz}{[zc_1y^2-2c_1^2y^2]}$$

or $$dy = \frac{dz}{(c_1z-2c_1^2)} \quad ...(5)$$

Integrating (5) we have

$$\int dy = \int\frac{dz}{c_1(z-2c_1)}+\frac{c_2}{c_1}$$

or $$y = \frac{1}{c_1}\log(z-2c_1)+\frac{c_2}{c_1}$$

or $$c_1 y = \log(z-2c_1)+c_2 \qquad ...(6)$$

Substituting value of c_1 from (3)

$$x = \log\left(z-\frac{2x}{y}\right)+c_2 \qquad ...(7)$$

Thus from (3), (7) we have

$$\left.\begin{aligned} c_1 &= \frac{x}{y} \\ c_2 &= x-\log\left(\frac{zy-2x}{y}\right) \end{aligned}\right\} \qquad ...(8)$$

So equation (8) form the complete integral of the set of equations.

Self Assessment

13. Solve

$$\frac{dx}{1+y}=\frac{dy}{1+x}=\frac{dz}{z}$$

14. Solve

$$\frac{dx}{x^2-y^2-yz}=\frac{dy}{x^2-y^2-yz}=\frac{dz}{z(x-y)}$$

Geometrical Meaning of

$$\frac{dx}{P} = \frac{dy}{Q}=\frac{dz}{R} \qquad ...(1)$$

We know that the direction ratio of the tangent to a curve at any point (x, y, z) on it are proportional to dx, dy, dz at that point. Hence geometrically the given equations represent a system of curves in space, such that the direction ratios of the tangent to any one of these curves in space, at that point (x, y, z) on it are proportional to P, Q and R at that point. If $u = a, v = b$ are the general solutions of (1), then system of curves must be the curves of intersection of the surfaces $u = a, v = b$. It is also clear that since a, b are arbitrary constants, the system of curves represented by the equations is doubly infinite.

3.5 Summary

- Total differential equations can be solved under certain conditions.
- Simultaneous Differential equations are also shown to be solved by the above method.
- Illustrated examples are solved so that the technique of solving by various methods is clear.

Notes

3.6 Keywords

Exact Differential: An equation

$$P\,dx + Q\,dy + R\,dz = 0, \qquad ...(1)$$

is an exact differential if its integral is found in the form

$$u(x,y,z) = c, \qquad \text{(c being a constant)}$$

Exact Differential Equation: When equation (1) is put into the form

$$d\,u(x,y,z) \equiv P\,dx + Q\,dy + R\,dz = 0,$$

it is called Exact Differential Equation

Integrable: A differential equation when solved is said to be integrable.

3.7 Review Questions

1. Solve $\dfrac{dx}{x} = \dfrac{dy}{y} = \dfrac{dz}{z}$
2. Solve $yz\log y\ dx - z\ x\log z\ dy + xy\ dz = 0$
3. Solve $(y+b)(z+c)\,dx + (x+a)(z+c)\,dy + (x+a)(y+b)\,dz = 0$
4. Solve $yz^2(x^2 - yz)\,dx + zx^2(y^2 - xz)\,dy + xy^2(z - xy)\,dz = 0$
5. Solve $\dfrac{dx}{y} = \dfrac{dy}{x} = \dfrac{dz}{xyz^2(x^2 - y^2)}$

Answers: Self Assessment

3. $x^2y = cze^2,$ (c being a constant)
4. $(a^2 - x^2 - y^2)^{1/2} = C - Z,$ (c being a constant)
5. $xy^2 = cz^3,$ (c being a constant)
6. $(x+z)^2 = c(y+z)$ (c being a constant)
7. $z(x+y) - y^2 = cz^2$ (c being a constant)
8. $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = cx$ (c being a constant)
9. $xy = c(a - z)$ (c being an arbitrary constant)
10. $xy + yz + zx = c(x+y+z),$ (c being a constant)
11. $x = e^{6t}$ (A cos t + B sin t)

    $y = e^{6t}[(A-B)\cos t + (A+B)\sin\ t]$

Notes

12. $x = c_1\left[-\frac{6}{5}t\right] + \frac{e^{2t}}{2} - \frac{3e^t}{11}$

$y = c_2 e^{-t} - \frac{c_1}{8}\exp\left[-\frac{6}{5}t\right]$

13. $x + y + z = c_1 z$

$\frac{x(2+x)}{y(2+y)} = c_2$

14. $x - y - z = c_1$

$x^2 - y^2 = c_2 z^2$

3.8 Further Readings

Books

H.T. Piaggio, Differential Equations

E.L. Ince, Ordinary Differential Equations

Unit 4: Adjoint and Self-Adjoint Equations

CONTENTS

Objectives

Introduction

4.1 Adjoint and Self-adjoint Operators

4.2 Boundary Conditions

4.3 Eigenvalues and Eigenfunctions of Hermitian Linear Operators

4.4 Eigenfunction Expansions

4.5 Summary

4.6 Keywords

4.7 Review Question

4.8 Further Readings

Objectives

After studying this unit, you should be able to:

- See that adjoint and self-adjoint operators play an important part in the solution of certain types of equations.
- Observe that the properties of the solutions as well as the values of certain parameter are obtained in a systematic manner.
- Notice that the self-adjoint equations when solved under certain boundary conditions yield values of the solutions known as eigenfunctions corresponding to certain eigenvalues.

Introduction

In this unit the method of putting an equation into a self-adjoint form is dealt with. This method and the Sturm–Liouville's method leads us to the solutions of the differential equations which are orthogonal.

The solutions form a set of eigenfunctions which are complete and so any function on the given interval can be expanded in terms of these eigenfunctions.

4.1 Adjoint and Self-adjoint Operators

In this unit we are interested in solving inhomogeneous boundary value problems for linear, second order differential equations. We will now develop an approach that is based upon the idea of linear algebra. We shall work with the simplest possible type of linear differential operator L, $C^2[a, b\} \to C\{a, b\}$ being in self-adjoint form:

$$L = \frac{d}{dx}\left(p(x)\frac{d}{dx}\right)+q(x) \qquad ...(1)$$

where $p(x) \in C^1[a, b]$ and is strictly non-zero for all $x \in (a, b)$, and $q(x) \in C'[a, b]$. The reasons for referring to such an operator as self-adjoint will become clear later in this unit.

This definition encompasses a wide class of second order differential operators.

For example, if

$$L^1 \equiv a_2(x)\frac{d^2}{dx^2} + a_1(x)\frac{d}{dx} + a_0(x) \quad ...(2)$$

is non-singular on [a, b], we can write it in self-adjoint form by defining

$$p(x) = \exp\left(\int^x \frac{a_1(t)}{a_2(t)}dt\right), q(x) = \frac{a_0(x)}{a_2(x)}\exp\left(\int^x \frac{a_1(t)}{a_2(t)}dt\right) \quad ...(3)$$

Note that $p(x) \neq 0$ for $x \in [a, b]$. By studying inhomogeneous boundary value problems of the form $Ly = f$, or

$$\frac{d}{dx}\left(p(x)\frac{dy}{dx}\right) + q(x)y = f(x) \quad ...(4)$$

we are therefore considering all second order, non-singular, linear differential operators. For example, consider Hermite's equations.

$$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} - 2x\frac{dy}{dx} + \lambda y = 0, \quad ...(5)$$

for $-\infty < x < \infty$. This is not in self-adjoint form, but, if we follow the above procedure, the self-adjoint form of the equation is

$$\frac{d}{dx}\left(e^{-x^2}\frac{dy}{dx}\right) + \lambda e^{-x^2}y = 0$$

This can be simplified, and kept in self-adjoint form, by writing $u = e^{\left(-x^2/2\right)}y$ to obtain

$$\frac{d^2u}{dx^2} - (x^2 - 1)u = -\lambda u \quad ...(6)$$

4.2 Boundary Conditions

To complete the definition of a boundary value problem associated with (4), we need to know the boundary conditions. In general these will be of the form

$$\alpha_1 y(a) + \alpha_2 y(b) + \alpha_3 y'(a) + \alpha_4 y'(b) = 0,$$

$$\beta_1 y(a) + \beta_2 y(b) + \beta_3 y'(a) + \beta_4 y'(b) = 0. \quad ...(7)$$

Since each of these is dependent on the values of y and y' at each end of [a, b], we refer to these as mixed or coupled boundary conditions. It is unnecessarily complicated to work with the boundary conditions in this form, and we can start to simplify matters by deriving Lagrange's identity.

Lagrange's Identity: If L is the linear differential operator given by (1) on [a, b] and if $y_1, y_2 \in C^2$ [a, b], then

$$y_1(Ly_2) - y_2(Ly_1) = [p(y_1y'_2 - y'_1y_2)]'. \quad ...(8)$$

Proof: From the definition of L,

$$y_1(Ly_2) - y_2(Ly_1) = y_1\left[(py_2')' + qy_2\right] - y_2\left[(py_1')' + qy_1\right]$$

$$= y_1(py_2')' - y_2(py_1')' = y_1\left[py_2'' + p'y_2'\right] - y_2\left[py_1'' + p'y_1'\right]$$

$$= p'(y_1y_2' - y_1'y_2) + p(y_1y_2'' - y_1''y_2) = [p(y_1y_2' - y_1'y_2)]'$$

Now recall that the space $C[a, b]$ is a real inner product space with a standard inner product defined by

$$\langle f, g\rangle = \int_a^b f(x)g(x)dx$$

If we now integrate (8) over $[a, b]$ then

$$\langle y_1, Ly_2\rangle - \langle Ly_1, y_2\rangle = [p(y_1y_2' - y_1'y_2)]_a^b \qquad \text{...(9)}$$

This result can be used to motivate the following definitions. The adjoint operator of T, written $\overline{T}$, satisfies $\langle y_1, Ty_2\rangle - \langle \overline{T}y_1, y_2\rangle$ for all y_1 and y_2. For example, let us see if we can construct the adjoint to the operator

$$\mathcal{D} \equiv \frac{d^2}{dx^2} + \gamma\frac{d}{dx} + \delta,$$

with $\gamma, \delta \in R$, on the interval [0, 1], when the functions on which $\mathcal{D}$ operates are zero at $x = 0$ and $x = 1$. After integrating by parts and applying these boundary conditions, we find that

$$\langle \phi_1, \mathcal{D}\phi_2\rangle = \int_0^1 \phi_1(\phi_2'' + \gamma\phi_2' + \delta\phi_2)dx = \left[\phi_1\phi_2'\right]_0^1 - \int_0^1 \phi_1'\phi_2'dx + \left[\gamma\phi_1\phi_2\right]_0^1 - \int_0^1 \gamma\phi_1'\phi_2dx + \int_0^1 \delta\phi_1\phi_2dx$$

$$= -\left[\phi_1'\phi_2\right]_0^1 + \int_0^1 \phi_1''\phi_2dx - \int_0^1 \gamma\phi_1'\phi_2dx + \int_0^1 \delta\phi_1\phi_2 = (\overline{\mathcal{D}}\phi_1, \phi_2),$$

where

$$\overline{D} \equiv \frac{d_2}{dx^2} - \gamma\frac{d}{dx} + \delta$$

A linear operator is said to be Hermitian, or self-adjoint. If $\langle y_1, Ty_2\rangle = \langle Ty_1, y_2\rangle$ for all y_1 and y_2. It is clear from (9) that L is a Hermitian, or self-adjoint, operator if and only if

$$\left[p(y_1y_2' - y_1'y_2\right]_a^b = 0$$

and hence

$$p(b)\{y_1(b)y_2'(b) - y_1'(b)y_2(b)\} - p(a)\{y_1(a)y_2'(a) - y_1'(a)y_2(a)\} = 0 \qquad \text{...(10)}$$

In other words, whether or not L is Hermitian depends only upon the boundary values of the functions in the space upon which it operates.

There are three different ways in which (10) can occur.

(i) $p(a) = p(b) = 0$. Note that this doesn't violate our definition of p as strictly non-zero on the open interval (a, b). This is the case of singular boundary conditions.

(ii) $p(a) = p(b) \neq 0$, $y_i(a) = y_i(b)$ and $y_i'(a) = y_i'(b)$. This is the case of periodic boundary conditions.

(iii) $\alpha_1 y_i(a) + \alpha_2 y_1'(a) = 0$ and $\beta_1 y_i(b) + \beta_2 y_1'(b) = 0$, with at least one of the α_i and one of the β_i non-zero. These conditions then have non-trivial solutions if and only if

$$y_1(a)y_2'(a) - y_1'(a)y_2(a) = 0, \quad y_1(b)y_2'(b) - y_1'(b)y_2(b) = 0,$$

and hence (10) is satisfied.

Conditions (iii), each of which involves y and y' at a single endpoint, are called unmixed or separated. We have therefore shown that our linear differential operator is Hermitian with respect to a pair of unmixed boundary conditions. The significance of this result becomes apparent when we examine the eigenvalues and eigenfunctions of Hermitian linear operators.

As an example of how such boundary conditions arise when we model physical systems, consider a string that is rotating or vibrating with its ends fixed. This leads to boundary conditions $y(0) = y(a) = 0$ - separated boundary conditions. In the study of the motion of electrons in a crystal lattice, the periodic conditions $p(0) = p(l)$, $y(0) = y(l)$ are frequently used to represent the repeating structure of the lattice.

4.3 Eigenvalues and Eigenfunctions of Hermitian Linear Operators

The eigenvalues and eigenfunctions of a Hermitian linear operator L are the non-trivial solutions of $Ly = \lambda y$ subject to appropriate boundary conditions.

Theorem 1. Eigenfunctions belonging to distinct eigenvalues of a Hermitian linear operator are orthogonal.

Proof: Let y_1 and y_2 be eigenfunctions that correspond to the distinct eigenvalues λ_1 and λ_2. Then

$$\langle Ly_1, y_2\rangle = \langle \lambda_1 y_1, y_2\rangle = \lambda_1 \langle y_1, y_2\rangle$$

and

$$\langle y_1, Ly_2\rangle = \langle y_1, \lambda_2 y_2\rangle = \lambda_2 \langle y_1, y_2\rangle$$

so that the Hermitian property $\langle Ly_1, y_2\rangle = \langle y_1, Ly_2\rangle$ gives

$$(\lambda_1 - \lambda_2)(y_1, y_2) = 0$$

Since $\lambda_1 \neq \lambda_2$, $(y_1, y_2) = 0$, and y_1 and y_2 are orthogonal.

As we shall see in the next section, all of the eigenvalues of a Hermitian linear operator are real, a result that we will prove once we have defined the notion of a complex inner product.

If the space of functions $C^2[a, b]$ were of finite dimension, we would now argue that the orthogonal eigenfunctions generated by a Hermitian operator are linearly independent and can be used as a basis (or in the case of repeated eigenvalues, extended into a basis). Unfortunately, $C^2[a, b]$ is not finite dimensional, and we cannot use this argument. We will have to content ourselves with presenting a credible method for solving inhomogeneous boundary value problems based upon the ideas we have developed, and simply state a theorem that guarantees that the method will work in certain circumstances.

4.4 Eigenfunction Expansions

In order to solve the inhomogeneous boundary value problem given by (4) with $f \in C[a, b]$ and unmixed boundary conditions, we begin by finding the eigenvalues and eigenfunctions of L.

Notes

We denote these eigenvalues by $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, ..., \lambda_n, ...$, and the eigenfunctions by $\phi_1(x), \phi_2(x) ..., \phi_n(x), ...$ Next, we expand $f(x)$ in terms of these eigenfunctions, as

$$f(x) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n \phi_n(x) \quad ...(11)$$

By making use of the orthogonality of the eigenfunctions, after taking the inner product of (11) with ϕ_n, we find that the expansion coefficients are

$$c_n = \frac{\langle f, \phi_n \rangle}{\langle \phi_n, \phi_n \rangle} \quad ...(12)$$

Next, we expand the solution of the boundary value problem in terms of the eigenfunctions, as

$$y(x) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} d_n \phi_n(x), \quad ...(13)$$

and substitute (12) and (13) into (4) to obtain

$$L\left[\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} d_n \phi_n(x)\right] = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n \phi_n(x).$$

From the linearity of L and the definition of ϕ_n this becomes

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} d_n \ \lambda_n \ \phi_n(x) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n \ \phi_n(x).$$

We have therefore constructed a solution of the boundary value problem with $d_n = c_n/\lambda_n$, if the series (13) converges and defines a function in $C^2(a, b)$. This process will work correctly and give a unique solution provided that none of the eigenvalues λ_n is zero. When $\lambda_m = 0$, there is no solution if $c_m \neq 0$ and an infinite number of solutions if $c_m = 0$.

Example 1: Consider the boundary value problem

$$-y'' = f(x) \qquad \text{subject to } y(0) = y(\pi) = 0 \quad ...(14)$$

In this case, the eigenfunctions are solutions of

$$y'' + \lambda y = 0 \quad \text{subject to } y(0) = y(\pi) = 0,$$

which we already know to be $\lambda_n = n^2$, $\phi_n(x) = \sin nx$. We therefore write

$$f(x) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n \sin nx,$$

and the solution of the inhomogeneous problem (14) is

$$y(x) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{c_n}{n^2} \sin nx,$$

In the case $f(x) = x$,

$$c_n = \frac{\int_0^{\pi} x \sin nx \, dx}{\int_0^{\pi} \sin^2 nx \, dx} = \frac{2(-1)^{n+1}}{n},$$

so that

$$y(x) = 2\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{(-1)^{n+1}}{n^3}\sin nx$$

This type of series is known as a Fourier series.

This example is, of course, rather artificial, and we could have integrated (14) directly. There are, however, many boundary value problems for which this eigenfunction expansion method is the only way to proceed analytically.

Example 2: Consider the inhomogeneous equation

$$(1 - x^2)y'' - 2xy' + 2y = f(x) \qquad \text{on } -1 < x < 1, \qquad ...(15)$$

with $f \in C[-1, 1]$, subject to the condition that y should be bounded on $[-1, 1]$. We begin by noting that there is a solubility condition associated with this problem. If $u(x)$ is a solution of the homogeneous problem, then, after multiplying through by u and integrating over $[-1, 1]$, we find that

$$\left[u(1-x^2)y'\right]_{-1}^{1} - \left[u'(1-x^2)y\right]_{-1}^{1} = \int_{-1}^{1} u(x)f(x)dx$$

If u and y are bounded on $[-1, 1]$, the left hand side of this equation vanishes, so that $\int_{-1}^{1} u(x)f(x)dx = 0.$ Since the Legendre polynomial, $u = P_1(x) = x$, is the bounded solution of the homogeneous problem, we have

$$\int_{-1}^{1} P_1(x)f(x)dx = 0$$

Now, to solve the boundary value problem, we first construct the eigenfunction solutions by solving $Ly = \lambda y$, which is

$$(1 - x^2)y'' - 2xy' + (2 - \lambda)y = 0$$

The choice $2 - \lambda = n(n + 1)$, with n a positive integer, gives us Legendre's equation of integer order, which has bounded solutions $y_n(x) = P_n(x)$. These Legendre polynomials are orthogonal over $[-1, 1]$. If we now write

$$f(x) = \sum_{m=0}^{\infty} A_m P_m(x),$$

where $A_1 = 0$ by the solubility condition, and then expand $y(x) = \sum_{m=0}^{\infty} B_m P_m(x)$

we find that

$$\{2 - m(m + 1)\}B_m = A_m \text{ for } m \geq 0$$

The required solution is therefore

$$y(x) = \frac{1}{2}A_0 + B_1 P_1(x) + \sum_{m=2}^{\infty}\frac{A_m}{2 - m(m+1)}P_m(x)$$

with B_1 an arbitrary constant.

Notes

Having seen that this method works, we can now state a theorem that gives the method a rigorous foundation.

Theorem: If L is a non-singular, linear differential operator defined on a closed interval $[a, b]$ and subject to unmixed boundary conditions at both endpoints, then

(i) L has an infinite sequence of real eigenvalues $\lambda_0, \lambda_1, \ldots$, which can be ordered so that

$$|\lambda_0\} < |\lambda_1| < \ldots < |\lambda_n| < \ldots$$

and

$$\lim_{n \to \infty} |\lambda_n| = \infty$$

(ii) The eigenfunctions that correspond to these eigenvalues form a basis for $C[a, b]$, and the series expansion relative to this basis of a piecewise continuous function y with piecewise continuous derivative on $[a, b]$ converges uniformly to y on any subinterval of $[a, b]$ in which y is continuous.

We will not prove this result here. Instead, we return to the equation, $Ly = \lambda y$, which defines the eigenfunctions and eigenvalues. For a self-adjoint, second order. Linear differential operator, this is

$$\frac{d}{dx}\left(p(x)\frac{dy}{dx}\right) + q(x)y = \lambda y, \qquad \text{...(16)}$$

which, in its simplest form, is subject to the unmixed boundary conditions

$$\alpha_1 y(\text{a}) + \alpha_2 y'(a) \;=\; 0, \quad \beta_1 y(b) + \beta_2 y'(b) = 0, \qquad \text{...(17)}$$

with $\alpha_1^2 + \alpha_2^2 > 0$ and $\beta_1^2 + \beta_2^2 > 0$ to avoid a trivial condition. This is an example of a Sturm–Liouville system, and we will devote the unit II for study of the properties of the solutions of such systems.

Self Assessment

1. Consider the linear second order differential equation

$$x\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} + (1-x)\frac{dy}{dx} + \lambda y = 0$$

Show that the Sturm–Liouville form of the above equation is

$$(xe^{-x}y')' + \lambda e^{-x}y = 0, \text{ for } x > 0$$

2. Show that the equation

$$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} + A(x)\frac{dy}{dx} + [\lambda B(x) - C(x)]y = 0$$

can be written in self-adjoint form by defining

$$p(x) = \exp\left(\int A(x)dx\right)$$

what are $q(x)$, $r(x)$ in terms of A, B, C?

4.5 Summary

Notes

- In this unit we rearrange certain linear equations of the second order in a way in which the differential operator is self-adjoint.
- Examples of self-adjoint equations are Legendre equation, Bessel's equations, Hermite equations and many more.
- Putting these equations into self-adjoint form enables us to study certain properties known as eigenvalue and eigenfunction expansions and completeness etc.

4.6 Keywords

Eigenfunctions are a set of solutions of the self-adjoint equations that form an orthonormal set of complete system.

The real symmetric matrix is self-adjoint or an ***Hermitian operator***.

4.7 Review Question

1. Show that

   $(xy'(x))' = -\lambda xy(x)$

   is self-adjoint on the interval (0, 1), with $x = 0$ a singular end point and $x = 1$ a regular end point with the condition $y(1) = 0$.

4.8 Further Readings

Books

King A.C., Billingham and Otto S.R., Differential Equations.

Pipes L.A. and Harrill L.R., Applied Mathematics for Engineers and Physicists

Yosida K., Lectures on Differential and Integral Equations.

Unit 5: Green's Function Method

CONTENTS

Objectives

Introduction

5.1 Boundary Value Problem of Sturm–Liouville Type

5.2 Green's Function for one dimensional problem

5.3 Periodic Solutions. Generalized Green's Function

5.3.1 Construction of Green's Function

5.4 Green's Function for Two independent Variables

5.5 Green's Function for Two Dimensional Problem

5.6 Summary

5.7 Keywords

5.8 Review Questions

5.9 Further Readings

Objectives

After studying this unit, you should be able to see that:

- Green's function plays an important part in the solution of the differential equations.
- It finds its applications in most of the boundary value problems.
- Green's function is quite helpful in converting a differential equation into an integral equation.

Introduction

Green's function method helps in solving most of the boundary value problems. It is quite useful in reducing a differential equation to an integral equation. With the help of the Green's function method the problem of solution of differential equations becomes simpler.

5.1 Boundary Value Problem of Sturm–Liouville Type

We consider a differential equation of the second order

$$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} + p_1(x)\frac{dy}{dx} + p_2(x)y = 0 \qquad ...(1)$$

where $p_1(x)$, $p_2(x)$ are real-valued continuous function on a closed interval $a \le x \le b$. The equation (1) can be put into the form

$$\frac{d}{dx}\left(p(x)\frac{dy}{dx}\right) = q(x)y \qquad ...(2)$$

by multiplying equation (1) with

$$\exp\left(\int_a^x p_1(x)dx\right) = p(x) \qquad ...(3)$$

and putting

$$q(x) = -p_2(x)p\ (x) \qquad ...(4)$$

The coefficients $p(x)$ and $q(x)$ satisfy the following conditions:

$p(x)$ and $q(x)$ are real-valued continuous functions on the interval $a \le x \le b$ and $p(x) > 0$ there.

Putting $z = p(x)\dfrac{dy}{dx}$ in (2) we have

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{z}{p(x)} \qquad ...(5)$$

$$\frac{dz}{dx} = q(x)\ y \qquad ...(6)$$

If a pair of functions $y(x)$ and $z(x)$ is a solution of the equations (5) and (6) and if $y(x) \neq 0$, then $y(x)$, and $z(x)$ do not vanish at any point in the interval $a \le x \le b$. So due to $y(x) \neq 0$, we may seek a solution.

$$y(x) = \rho(x)\sin\theta(x)$$

$$z(x) = \rho(x)\cos\theta(x)$$

$$\text{with } p(x) = (y^2(x) + z^2(x))^{1/2} > 0 \qquad ...(7)$$

Substituting in (5) and (6) we have

$$\frac{d\rho}{dx}\sin\theta(x) + \rho(x)\cos\theta(x) \qquad \frac{d\theta}{dx} = \frac{\rho(x)\cos\theta(x)}{p(x)}$$

and $\dfrac{d\rho}{dx}\cos\theta(x) - \rho(x)\sin\theta(x)\dfrac{d\theta}{dx} = q(x)\,\rho(x)\sin\theta(x)$

Simplifying the above equations, we have

$$\frac{d\rho(x)}{dx} = \left(\frac{1}{p(x)} + q(x)\right)P\sin\theta(x)\cos\theta(x) \qquad ...(8)$$

$$\frac{d\theta}{dx} = \frac{\cos^2\theta(x)}{p(x)} - q(x)\sin^2\theta(x), \qquad p(x) > 0$$

The second equation of (8) does not contain the unknown ρ, hence we can find a solution $\theta(x)$. Then substituting this solution in the first equation, we can obtain the general solution $p(x)$

$$\rho(x) = \rho(\alpha)\exp\left(\int_a^x\left\{\frac{1}{p(x)} + q(x)\right\}\sin\theta(x)\cos\theta(x)dx\right) \qquad ...(9)$$

Notes

Since $p(x) > 0$ or < 0 or every point $a \le x \le b$, according as $p(a) > 0$ or < 0, we can find a positive solution $p(x)$ from which, along with $\theta(x)$, we can obtain a solution $y(x) = p(x) \sin \theta(x)$, not identically zero, of the original equation (2).

Now for an integer n, $\theta(x) + 2\pi\, n$ is also a solution of the second equation of (8). Thus the solutions $y_1(x)$ and $y_2(x)$ obtained from $\theta(x)$ and $\theta(x) + 2n\pi$ are linearly dependent. So if the two solutions $y_1(x)$ and $y_2(x)$ given by

$$y_1(x) = \rho_1(x) \sin \theta_1(x)$$

$$y_2(x) = \rho_2(x) \sin \theta_2(x)$$

are linearly dependent, then for some integer n

$$\theta_1(x) = \theta_2(x) + 2\pi.$$

Now, an initial condition for q(x),

$$\theta(a) = \alpha \qquad \text{...(10)}$$

gives a relation between $y(a)$ and $y_1(a)$ as follows

At $x = a$ from (5) and (7) we have

$$z(a) = p(a)\, y'(a) = \rho(a) \cos \theta(a)$$

So $\quad p(a)\, y'(a) \sin \theta(a) = \rho(a) \cos \theta(a) \sin \theta(a)$

or $\quad p(a)\, y'(a) \sin \theta(a) = y(a) \cos \theta(a)$

or $\quad p(a)\, y'(a) \sin \theta(a) - y(a) \cos \theta(a) = 0 \qquad \text{...(11)}$

In this section we shall be concerned with the problem of finding the solution $y(x)$ corresponding to the solution $\theta(x)$ satisfying the boundary conditions

$$\theta(a) = \alpha,\ \theta(b) = \beta \qquad \text{...(12)}$$

at both ends of the interval $a \le x \le b$.

Condition (12) corresponds to the conditions

$$p(a)\, y'(a) \sin \alpha - y(a) \cos \alpha = 0$$

$$p(b)\, y'(b) \sin \beta - y(b) \cos \beta = 0 \qquad \text{...(13)}$$

for $y(x)$. It should be noted that the boundary value problem of finding the solution of (2) satisfying the boundary conditions (13) between y and y' is essentially different from the initial value problem.

5.2 Green's Function for One Dimensional Problem

Let us denote $L_x(y)$, a differential operator

$$L_x(y) = \frac{d}{dx}\left[p(x)\frac{dy}{dx}\right] - q(x)y \qquad \text{...(1)}$$

which is defined for every function $y(x)$ such that $\frac{dy}{dx}$ and $\frac{d}{dx}\left[p(x)\frac{dy}{dx}\right]$ are defined and continuous on the interval $\alpha \le x \le b$. Let us define Lagrange's identity

$$y\, L_x(z) - z\, L_x(y) = \frac{d}{dx}\left[p(x)\frac{dz}{dx}\right]y - z\frac{d}{dx}\left[p(x)\frac{dy}{dx}\right]$$

$$= \frac{d}{dx}\left\{p(x)\left[y(x)\frac{dz}{dx} - z\frac{dy}{dx}\right]\right\} \quad ...(2)$$

Integrating both sides of equation (2) we obtain

$$\left\{p(x)\left[y(x)\frac{dz}{dx} - z(x)\frac{dy}{dx}\right]\right\}_{a'}^{b'} = \int_{a'}^{b'}[y\,L_x(z) - Z\,L_x(y)]dx,\ a < a' < b' < b \quad ...(3)$$

Equation (3) is known as Green's theorem in one dimension. If $y(x)$ and $z(x)$ both satisfy the boundary conditions

$p(a)\ y,(a) \sin \alpha - y(a) \cos \alpha = 0$

$p(b)\ y,(b) \sin \beta - y(b) \cos \beta = 0$

$p(a)\ z,(a) \sin \alpha - z(a) \cos \alpha = 0$

$p(b)\ y,(b) \sin \beta - z(b) \cos \alpha = 0$ ...(4)

Then for $a, = a$ and $b, = b$, L.H.S. is zero and we get

$$\int_a^b [y(x)L_x(x) - z(x)L_x(y)]dx = 0 \quad ...(5)$$

Suppose that two functions $y_1(x) \neq 0$ and $y_2(x) \neq 0$ satisfy

$L_x(y_1) = 0$

$p(a)\ y_1,(a) \sin \alpha - y_1(a) \cos \alpha = 0$ ...(6)

and

$L_x(y_2) = 0$

$p(b)\ y_2,\ (b) \sin \beta - y_2(b) \cos \beta = 0$ ...(7)

respectively, and suppose that these two functions $y_1(x)$ and $y_2(x)$ are linearly independent. Write

$C = p(\xi)\ [y_1(\xi)\ y,_2(\xi) - y,_1(\xi)\ y_2(\xi)].$

Differentiating C with respect to ξ and making use of (2), we see, by virtue of (6) and (7), that C must be constant. Moreover, the linear independence of $y_1(x)$ and $y_2(x)$ implies that C is not zero. Now we define a function $G(x, \xi)$ of two variables x and ξ by

$$G(x, \xi) = -\frac{1}{C}y_1(\xi)y_2(x) \qquad (x \geqq \xi)$$

$$= \frac{1}{C}y_1(x)y_2(\xi) \qquad (x < \xi)$$

$$C = p(\xi)\left[y_1(\xi)y_2'(\xi) - y_1'(\xi)y_2(\xi)\right] = \text{Constant}$$

The function $G(x, \xi)$ is called *Green's Function* for the equation $L_x(y) = 0$ subject to the boundary conditions (4). Obviously Green function $G(x, \xi)$ has the following properties:

$G(x, \xi)$ is continuous at any point (x, ξ) in the domain $a \leqq x, \xi \leqq b$.

As a function of x, $G(x, \xi)$ satisfies the given boundary conditions for every ξ. ...(9)

If $x \neq \xi$, $G(x, \xi)$ satisfies the equation $L_x(G) = 0$ as a function of x.

Notes

Both $G_x(x, \xi)$ and $\{p(x)G_x(x, \xi)\}_x$ are bounded in the region $x \neq \xi,\ a \leqq x, \xi \leqq b$. ...(10)

If $a < x_0 < b$ then as $x \to x_0$, keeping the relation $x < \xi$ and as $x \to x_0$, $\xi \to x_0$, keeping the relation $x < \xi$, $G(x, \xi)$ tends to finite values $G_x(x_0 + 0, x_0)$ and $G(x_0 - 0, x_0)$ respectively, and ...(11)

$$G_x(x_0 + 0, x_0) - G_x(x_0 \to 0, x_0) = -\frac{1}{p(x_0)} \qquad ...(12)$$

$$G(x, \xi) = G(\xi, x) \qquad ...(13)$$

Example: On the basis of equation (8), we have

$$L_x = \frac{d^2}{dx^2}, \quad y(0) = y(1) = 0$$

$$x = 0, x = 1$$

Now solutions of

$$L_x(y) = 0$$

or
$$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = 0 \qquad ...(14)$$

Suppose that a Green's function $G(x, \xi)$ exists. Then since

$L_x(G(x, \xi)) = 0$ for $x \neq \xi$,

$G(x, \xi)$ must be represented, by means of a fundamental system $y_1(x)$, $y_2(x)$ of the solutions of $L_x(y) = 0$, as follows:

The general solution of $\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = 0$.

So the solution of (14) is

$$y = c_1 x + c_2 \qquad ...(15)$$

Let the two solutions be $y_1(x)$ and $y_2(x)$. Thus

if $\quad y_1(0) = 0$ then $c_2 = 0$

so $\quad y_1(x) = x, \qquad ...(16)$

$\quad y_2(1) = 0 = c_1 \quad 1 + c_2 = 0$

$\therefore \quad c_1 = -c_2 = 1$

$$y_2 = (1 - x), \qquad ...(17)$$

Thus

$$C = 1 \cdot \{x \cdot (-1) - 1 \cdot (1 - x)\} = 1$$

$$G(x, \xi) = 1 \cdot (1 - \xi)x \qquad (x \leqq \xi)$$

$$= (1 - x)\xi \qquad (x > \xi). \qquad ...(18)$$

Self Assessment

Notes

1. Find the Green function for the equation

$$L_x\, y = \frac{d^2}{dx^2}\; y = 0$$

with the conditions

$y(0) = 0,\ y'(1) = 0$

5.3 Periodic Solutions Generalized Green's Function

A system of important boundary conditions not included earlier is

$$y(a) = y(b),\ y'(a) = y'(b) \quad \text{...(1)}$$

If the coefficients $p(x)$, $g(x)$, $r(x)$ are periodic functions with period $b - a$, that is

$$p(x + b - a) = p(x),\ q\ (x + b - a) = q(x),\ r(x + b - a) = r(x)$$

Then the conditions (1) are just the conditions that the solution $y(x)$ of the equation

$$(p(x)y')' - q(x)y + \lambda r(x)y = 0 \quad \text{...(A)}$$

is periodic with the same period $b - a$, that is

$$y(x + b - a) = y(x)$$

For in each case, $y(x)$, $y_{a,\,b}\ (x + b - a)$ both satisfy the equation (A) together with the same initial conditions

$$y(a) = y_{a,b}\ (a),\ y'(a) = y_{a,b}\ (a)$$

Hence by the uniqueness of the solutions, we must have

$$y(x) = y_{a,b}\ (x)$$

In the following we shall be concerned with more general conditions, which include the conditions (1), of the form

$$y(a) = \gamma\, y(b),\ p(a)\ y'(\mathrm{a}) = \frac{p(b)}{\gamma}\ y'(b) \quad \text{...(2)}$$

or $\quad y(a) = \gamma\, p(b),\ y'(b),\ p(a)\ y'(\mathrm{a}) = -\ \frac{1}{\gamma} y'(b) \quad$ ...(3)

where γ is a non-zero constant. It is easily seen that if $y(x)$ and $z(x)$ both satisfy either (2) or (3), then the relation

$$p(x)\ (y(x)z'(x)\ - y'(x)\ z(x))\Big|_a^b = 0 \quad \text{...(4)}$$

holds.

5.3.1 Construction of Green's Function

Suppose that a Green's function exists. Then since $L_x(\mathrm{G}(x,\ \xi)) = 0$ for $x \neq \xi$, $y(x,\ \xi)$ must be represented by means of a fundamental system $y_1(x)$, $y_2(x)$ of the solution of $L_x(y) = 0$ as follows:

$$G(x,\ \xi) = \begin{Bmatrix} c_1 y_1(x) + c_2 y_2(x) & (a \leqq x < \xi) \\ c_3 y_1(x) + c_4 y_2(x) & (\xi < x \leq b) \end{Bmatrix} \quad \text{...(5)}$$

where every C_i is a function of ξ. We shall determine the relations between C_i so that $G(x, \xi)$ satisfies the required properties for the Green's function pertaining to the boundary condition (2). Since $G(x, \xi)$ is continuous at $x = \xi$, we obtain

$$c_1 y_1(\xi) + c_2 y_2(\xi) = c_3 y_3(\xi) + c_4 y_4(\xi) \qquad ...(6)$$

By equation (12) of section (10.2), we obtain

$$c_1 y_1'(\xi) + c_2 y_2'(\xi) - c_3 y_3'(\xi) - c_4 y_4'(\xi) = \frac{1}{p(\xi)} \qquad ...(7)$$

Finally from the boundary conditions (2) we obtain

$$c_1 y_1(a) + c_2 y_2(a) = \gamma\,(c_3 y_3(b) + c_4 y_4(b))$$

$$\gamma\, p(a)\,(c_1 y_1'(a) + c_2 y_2'(a) = p(b)\,(c_3 y_3'(b) + c_4 y_4'(b)) \qquad ...(8)$$

Also Green's function should be symmetric i.e.

$$G(x, \xi) = G(\xi, x) \qquad ...(8a)$$

Only the last relation of (8) must be changed according as the corresponding boundary conditions, if we are concerned with Green's function under the boundary conditions (3).

Example: Find the Green's function for $L_x\, y = 0$ with the boundary conditions

$$y(0) = -y(1), \quad y'(0) = -y'(1).$$

Solution:

The general solution of $L_x y = 0$ is of the form $c_1 x + c_2$. Now taking as a fundamental system of the solutions of $y'' = 0$, as

$$y_1(x) = (x),\ y_2(x) = 1,\ p(x) = 1,\ \gamma = 1$$

Let $G(x, \xi)$ be given by the relation (5) where $a = 0$, $b = 1$ from the equations (6), (7) and (8) we have

$$c_1\xi + c_2 = c_3\,\xi + c_4,\ c_1 - c_3 = 1,\ c_2 = -(c_3 + c_4),\ c_1 = -c_3$$

Solving these equations, we obtain

$$2\,c_1 = 1,\ c_1 = \frac{1}{2} = -c_3,\ (c_1 - c_3)\xi + c_2 = c_4$$

$$c_2 - \frac{1}{2} = -c_4$$

$$2\,c_2 - \frac{1}{2} + \xi = 0$$

$$c_2 = \frac{1}{4} - \xi/2,\ c_4 = \frac{1}{4} + \xi/2$$

Therefore

$$G(x, \xi) = \frac{1}{2}x + \left(\frac{1}{4} - \xi/2\right)\cdot 1 \qquad \text{for } 0 \le x < \xi$$

$$= -\frac{1}{2}x + \left(\frac{1}{4} + \xi/2\right)\cdot 1 \qquad \text{for } \xi < x \le 1$$

or $$G(x, \xi) = -\frac{1}{2}|x - \xi| + \frac{1}{4} = G(\xi, x).$$

Generalized Green's Function

Notes

Let us consider the inhomogeneous equation

$$L_x\, y = \varphi(x)$$

whose solution $y(x)$ satisfies the boundary conditions. Let us assume that there exists a non-trivial solution $y_0(x) \neq 0$ of the equation $L_x\, y(x) = 0$. We can show that the function $\varphi(x)$ must satisfy

$$\int_a^b \varphi(x)\, y_0(x) dx = 0 \qquad ...(9)$$

where $y_0(x)$ also satisfying the boundary conditions. To see this we have

$$-\int_a^b \varphi(x) y_0(x) dx = \int_a^b \left[y_0(x) L_x(y) - y(x) L_x(y_0) \right] dx$$

$$= \left[p(x)\,(y_0(x) y'(x) - y'_0(x) y(x) \right]_a^b = 0$$

On the other hand the solution $y(x)$ may be written in the form

$$y(x) = z(x) + c\, y_0(x)$$

where $z(x)$ is a solution of $L_x(z) = \varphi(x)$, satisfying the boundary conditions. Since $y_0(x) \neq 0$ we can choose the constant C so that

$$\int_a^b y(x) y_0(x) dx = 0 \qquad ...(10)$$

Now it can be proved that such a function $y(x)$ of the boundary value problem satisfying (10) can be written as

$$y(x) = \int_a^b G(x, \xi) \varphi(\xi) d\xi \qquad ...(11)$$

by means of the generalized Green's function $G(x, \xi)$.

By a generalized Green's function, we mean a such $G(x, \xi)$ satisfying the following five conditions:

1. Continuity of $G(x, \xi)$ at any point (x, ξ) in the domain $a \leq x \leq \xi < b$. As a function of x, $G(x, \xi)$ satisfies the given boundary conditions.
2. If $x \neq \xi$, $G(x, \xi)$ satisfies the equation

   $G(x, \xi) = y_0(x)\, y_0(\xi)$

   as a function of x. $G_x(x, \xi)$ is bounded in the region $x \neq \xi$.
3. If $a < x_0 < b$ then as $x \to x_0$, $\xi \to x$, keeping the relation $x > \xi$ and as $x \to x_0$, $\xi \to x_0$ keeping the relation $x < \xi$, $G_x(x, \xi)$ tends to finite values $G_x(x_0 + 0, x_0)$ and $G_x(x_0 - 0, x_0)$, respectively, and

   $$G_x(x_0 + 0, x_0) - G_x(x_0 - 0, x_0) = \left(-\frac{1}{p(x_0)} \right)$$
4. $G(x, \xi) = G(\xi, x)$
5. $\int_a^b G(x, \xi) y_0(x) dx = 0$

Example: Find generalized Green's function for $L_x = \frac{d^2}{dx^2}$, with the boundary conditions $y'(0) = y'(1) = 0$.

Solution:

The general solution of $y''(x) = 0$ is a polynomial of degree 1. Hence there exists a non-trivial solution $y_0(x) = 1$ of the boundary value problem. So from the condition (2) we have

$L_x\, G(x, \xi) = 1$, that is, $G_{xx}(x, \xi) = 1$.

Hence we have

$$G(x, \xi) = A_1 + A_2 x + \frac{x^2}{2} \qquad x \leqq \xi$$

$$= B_1 + B_2 x + \frac{x^2}{2} \qquad x > \xi$$

By the boundary conditions $G_x(0, x) = 0$, $G_x(1, \xi) = 0$, we obtain

$A_2 = 0$, $B_2 = -1$. So the condition

$$G_x(\xi + 0, \xi) - G_x(\xi - 0, \xi) = -1$$

holds automatically. By the continuity at $x = \xi$, that is $G(\xi + 0, \xi) - G(\xi - 0, \xi) = 0$, we obtain $B_1 - \xi - A_1 = 0$. Hence we obtain

$$G(x, \xi) = A_1 + \frac{x^2}{2} \qquad x \leqq \xi$$

$$= A_1 + \xi - x + \frac{x^2}{2} \qquad x > \xi.$$

Finally, from the relation

$$\int_0^1 G(x, \xi) y_0(\xi) d\xi = 0,$$

we obtain $A_1 = 0$. Thus the generalized Green's function is given by

$$G(x, \xi) = \frac{x^2}{2} \qquad x \leqq \xi$$

$$= \xi - x + \frac{x^2}{2} \qquad x > \xi.$$

Self Assessment

2. Find the generalized Green's function for $L_x = \frac{d^2}{dx^2}$, with the boundary conditions

   $y(-1) = y(1)$, $y'(-1) = y'(1)$. (*Hint:* take $y_0(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$)

5.4 Green's Function for Two Independent Variables

Notes

Let us assume that a function z of x and y satisfies the differential equation

$$L(z) = f(x, y) \quad ...(1)$$

Where L denotes the linear operator

$$\frac{\partial^2}{\partial x \partial y} + a\frac{\partial}{\partial x} + b\frac{\partial}{\partial y} + c \quad ...(2)$$

Now let w be another function with continuous derivatives of the first order. We may write

$$w\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x \partial y} - z\frac{\partial^2 w}{\partial x \partial y} = \frac{\partial}{\partial y}\left(w\frac{\partial z}{\partial x}\right) - \frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left(z\frac{\partial w}{\partial y}\right)$$

$$wa\frac{\partial z}{\partial x} + z\frac{\partial (aw)}{\partial x} = \frac{\partial}{\partial x}(awz)$$

$$wb\frac{\partial z}{\partial y} + z\frac{\partial (aw)}{\partial y} = \frac{\partial}{\partial y}(bwz)$$

Defining the M operator by the relation

$$Mw = \frac{\partial^2 w}{\partial x \partial y} - \frac{\partial (aw)}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial (bw)}{\partial y} + cw \quad ...(3)$$

we find that

$$wLz - z\,Mw = w\left(\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x \partial y} + a\frac{\partial z}{\partial x} + b\frac{\partial z}{\partial y} + cz\right)$$

$$- \; z\left(\frac{\partial^2 w}{\partial x \partial y} - \frac{\partial (aw)}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial (bw)}{\partial y} + cw\right)$$

$$= \frac{\partial}{\partial x}(awz) - \frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left(z\frac{\partial w}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial}{\partial y}(bwz) + \frac{\partial}{\partial y}\left(w\frac{\partial z}{\partial x}\right)\right)$$

or

$$wLz - zMw = \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial v}{\partial y} \quad ...(4)$$

where $\quad u = awz - z\dfrac{\partial w}{\partial y}, \quad v = bwz + w\dfrac{\partial z}{\partial x} \quad ...(5)$

The operator M defined by equation (3) is called the *adjoint* operator. If $M = L$, we say the operator L is *self-adjoint*.

Now if Γ is a closed curve enclosing an area Σ, then it follows from equation (4) and a straight forward use of Green's theorem that

$$\iint_{\Sigma} (wLz - zLw)\,dx\,dy = \iint \left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial \nu}{\partial y}\right) dx\,dy$$

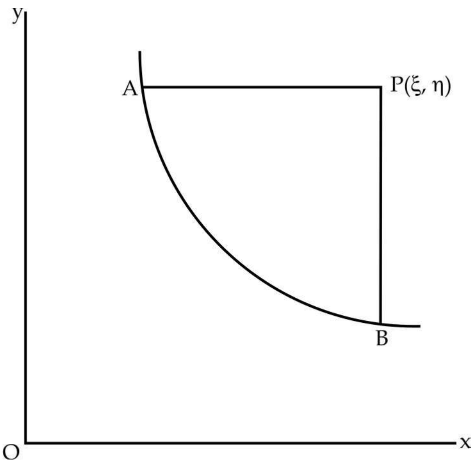
Notes

$$= \int_{\Gamma} (u\,dy - \nu\,dx)$$

$$= \int_{\Gamma} [u\cos(n, x) - \nu\cos(x, y)]ds \qquad \text{...(6)}$$

w here n denotes the direction of the inward drawn normal to the curve Γ.

Figure 5.1



Suppose now that the values of z, $\frac{dz}{dx}$ or $\frac{dz}{dy}$ are prescribed along a curve C in the xy plane (see Figure 10.1) and that we wish to find the solution of the equation (1) at the point $p(\xi, n)$ agreeing with boundary conditions. Through P we draw PA parallel to the x-axis and cutting the curve in the point A and PB parallel to the y-axis and cutting *curve* in B. We then take the curve to be the closed curve $PABPA$ since $dx = 0$ on PB and $dy = 0$ on PA, we have immediately from (6)

$$\iint (wLz - zMw)dxdy = \int_{AB} (u\,dy - v\,dx) + \int_{BP} (u\,dy - \int_{PA} v\,dx$$

Now $\quad \int v\,dx = \int (bwz + w\frac{\partial z}{\partial x})dx = \{bw\}^P + \int z(bw - \frac{\partial w}{\partial x})dx$.

So $\quad [z\,w]^P + \int z(bw - \frac{\partial w}{\partial x})dx - \int (u\,dy - v\,dx) - \int z(aw - \frac{\partial w}{\partial x})dy$

$$+ \iint (wLz - zMw)dx\,dy \qquad \text{...(7)}$$

Here the function w has been arbitrary. Suppose now that we choose function $w(x, y, \xi, \eta)$ which has the properties

$$Mw = 0$$

$$\frac{\partial w}{\partial x} = b\,(x, y)w \qquad \text{when } y = \eta$$

$$\frac{\partial w}{\partial y} = a\,(x, y)w \qquad \text{when } x = \xi$$

$$w = 1 \qquad \text{when } x = \xi,\ y = \eta \qquad \text{...(8)}$$

Here w function is called Green's function for the problem. Since also $Lz = f$, we find that

Notes

$$[z\, w] = \int_{AB} wz(a\,dy - b\,dx) + \int_{AB}\left(z\frac{\partial w}{\partial y}dy + w\frac{\partial z}{\partial x}dx\right) + \iint_{\Sigma} w\, f\, dxdy \qquad ...(9)$$

Equation (7) enables us to find the value of z at the point P when $\frac{dz}{dx}$ is prescribed along the curve C. When $\frac{dz}{dx}$ is prescribed, we make use of the following calculation

$$[z\, w]_B - [z\, w]_A = \iint_{AB}\left[\frac{\partial(zw)}{\partial x}dx - \frac{\partial(zw)}{\partial y}dy\right]$$

to show that we can write equation (7) in the form

$$[z]_P - [zw]_B - \int_{AB} wz(a\,dy - b\,dx) - \iint_{AB}\left[z\frac{\partial(w)}{\partial x}dx - \frac{\partial(z)}{\partial y}w\,dy\right] + \iint_{\Sigma}(wf)dx\,dy \qquad ...(10)$$

Finally adding (9) and (10), we obtain the symmetrical results

$$[z]_P = \frac{1}{2}[[zw]_A - [zw]_B] - \int wz(a\,dy - b\,dx) - \frac{1}{2}\int_{AB} w\left(\frac{\partial z}{\partial y}dy - \frac{\partial z}{\partial x}dx\right)$$

$$-\frac{1}{2}\int_{AB} z\left(\frac{\partial w}{\partial x}dx - \frac{\partial w}{\partial y}dy\right) + \iint_{\Sigma}(wf)dxdy \qquad ...(11)$$

So we can find z at any point in terms of prescribed values of $z, \frac{\partial z}{\partial x}, \frac{\partial z}{\partial y}$, along a given curve.

Self Assessment

3. If L denotes the operator

$$R\frac{\partial^2}{\partial x^2} - S\frac{\partial^2}{\partial x \partial y} - T\frac{\partial^2}{\partial y^2} - P\frac{\partial}{\partial x} - Q\frac{\partial}{\partial y} = Z$$

and M is the adjoint operator defined by

$$Mw = \frac{\partial^2(Rw)}{\partial x^2} - \frac{\partial^2(Sw)}{\partial x \partial y} - \frac{\partial^2(Tw)}{\partial y^2} - \frac{\partial(Pw)}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial(Qw)}{\partial y} = zw$$

show that

$$\iint_{\Sigma}(wLZ - ZMw)dx\,dy = \int_{\Gamma}\left[U\cos(n,x) - V\cos(n,y)\right]ds$$

where Γ is a closed curve enclosing an area Σ and

$$U = Rw\frac{\partial z}{\partial x} - z\frac{\partial(Rw)}{\partial x} - z\frac{\partial(Sw)}{\partial y} - Pzw$$

$$V = Sw\frac{\partial z}{\partial x} - Tw\frac{\partial z}{\partial y} - z\frac{\partial(Tw)}{\partial y} - Qzw.$$

Notes

5.5 Green's Function for Two Dimensional Problem

The theory of the Green function for the two dimensional Laplace equation may be developed as follows. It is well known that if $P(x, y)$ and $Q(x, y)$ are functions defined inside and on the boundary C of the closed area Σ, then

$$\int_{\Sigma}\left(\frac{\partial Q}{\partial x}-\frac{\partial P}{\partial y}\right)dS = \int_{C}(Pdx+Qdy) \qquad ...(1)$$

If we put

$$P=-\psi\frac{\partial\psi}{\partial y}, Q=\psi\frac{\partial\psi'}{\partial x}, \text{ in equation (1) we find that}$$

$$\int_{\Sigma}\psi\nabla^2\psi' ds+\int_{\Sigma}\left(\frac{\partial\psi}{\partial x}\frac{\partial\psi'}{\partial x}+\frac{\partial\psi}{\partial y}\frac{\partial\psi'}{\partial y}\right)ds = \int_{C}\left(-\psi\frac{\partial\psi'}{\partial y}dx+\psi\frac{\partial\psi'}{\partial x}dy\right)$$

$$= +\int_{C}\psi\frac{\partial\psi'}{\partial n}ds \qquad ...(2)$$

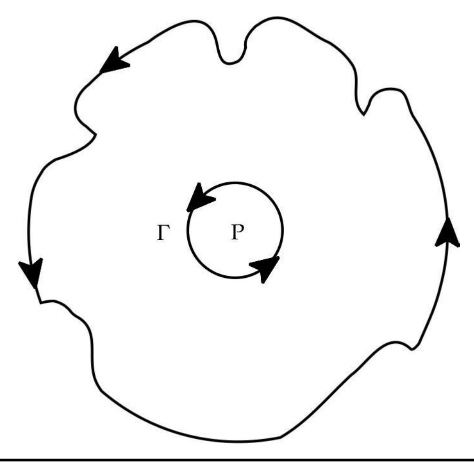
where $\frac{\partial\psi'}{\partial n}$ denotes the derivative of ψ in the direction of the outward normal to C and we have used the relation

$$\frac{\partial\psi'}{\partial x}dy-\frac{\partial\psi'}{\partial y}dx = \frac{\partial\psi'}{\partial n} \qquad ...(3)$$

If we interchange ψ and ψ' in (2) and subtract the two equations, we find that

$$\int_{\Sigma}\left(\psi\nabla^2\psi'-\psi'\nabla^2\psi'\right)ds = \int_{C}\left(\psi\frac{\partial\psi'}{\partial n}-\psi'\frac{\partial\psi}{\partial n}\right)ds \qquad ...(4)$$

Figure 5.2



Suppose that P with co-ordinates (x, y) is a point in the interior of the region S in which the function ψ is assumed to be harmonic. Draw a small circle Γ with center P and small radius ε (see

Notes

figure) and apply the result (4) to the region k bounded by the curves C and Γ with $\psi' = \log \dfrac{1}{|\vec{r} - \vec{r^1}|}$.

Since both ψ and ψ' are harmonic, it follows that if S is measured in the direction shown in the fig.,

$$\left(\int_\Gamma + \int_C\right)\left[\psi(x', y')\frac{\partial}{\partial n}\log\frac{1}{|\vec{r} - \vec{r^1}|} - \log\frac{1}{|\vec{r} - \vec{r^1}|}\frac{\partial \psi}{\partial n}\right] = 0 \qquad ...(5)$$

we can show that

$$\int_\Gamma \psi \frac{\partial}{\partial n}\log\frac{1}{|\vec{r} - \vec{r^1}|}ds' = 2\pi\psi(x, y) + 0(\varepsilon)$$

and that

$$\left|\int_\Gamma \log\frac{1}{|\vec{r} - \vec{r^1}|}\frac{\partial \psi}{\partial n}ds'\right| < 2\pi M\,\varepsilon \log \varepsilon,$$

where M is an upper bound of $\dfrac{\partial \psi}{\partial r}$. Inserting these results into equation (5), we find that

$$\psi(x, y) = \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_C\left[\log\frac{1}{|\vec{r} - \vec{r^1}|}\frac{\partial \psi(x', y')}{\partial n} - \psi(x', y')\frac{\partial}{\partial n}\log\frac{1}{|\vec{r} - \vec{r^1}|}\right]ds' \qquad ...(6)$$

we now introduce a Green's function $G(x, y, x', y')$ defined by the equations

$$G(x, y, x', y') = W(x, y, x', y') + \log\frac{1}{|\vec{r} - \vec{r^1}|} \qquad ...(7)$$

where the function $W(x, y, x', y')$ satisfies the relations

$$\left(\frac{\partial^2}{\partial x'^2} + \frac{\partial^2}{\partial y'^2}\right)W(x, y, x', y') = 0 \qquad ...(8)$$

$$W(x, y, x', y') = \log|\vec{r} - \vec{r^1}| \quad \text{on } C \qquad ...(9)$$

then for ψ satisfying equations

$$\nabla^2 \psi = 0 \quad \text{within } \Sigma,$$

and $$\psi = f(x, y) \quad \text{on } C \qquad ...(10)$$

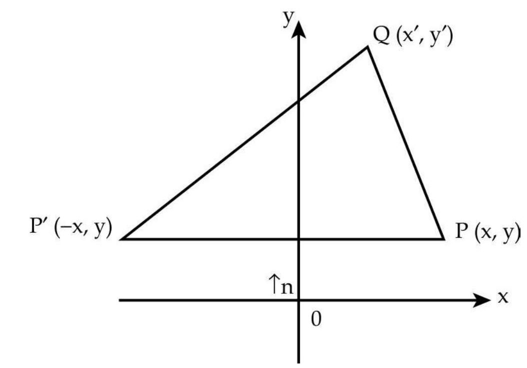
is given by the expression

$$\psi(x, y) = -\frac{1}{2\pi}\int \psi(x', y')\frac{\partial G}{\partial n}G(x, y, x', y')ds' \qquad ...(11)$$

Where $\hat{n}$ is the outward drown normal to the boundary curve C.

Dirichlet's Problem for a Half Plane Suppose that we wish to solve the boundary value problem $\nabla^2 \psi = 0$ for $x \geq 0$, $\psi = f(y)$ on $x = 0$, and $\psi = 0$ as $x \to \infty$. If $P(x, y)$ is a point $(x > 0)$, and P' is $(-x, y)$, then $G(x, y, x', y') = \log\left(\frac{QP'}{QP}\right)$, satisfies both equations (8) and (9) since $P'Q = PQ$. on $x = 0$.

Figure 5.3



The required Green's function is therefore

$$G(x, y, x', y') \quad = \quad \frac{1}{2}\log\left[\frac{(x+x')^2 + (y-y')^2}{(x-x') + (y-y')^2}\right] \qquad \text{...(12)}$$

Now on C

$$\frac{\partial G}{\partial x} = -\left.\frac{\partial G}{\partial x'}\right|_{x'=0} = \frac{2x}{x^2 + (y-y')^2},$$ so substituting in (11), we find that

$$\psi(x, y) \quad = \quad \frac{\pi}{x}\int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} \frac{f(y')dy'}{\left[x^2 + (y-y')^2\right]} \qquad \text{...(13)}$$

5.6 Summary

- Green's functions and its properties are described for one and two dimensional problems.
- It is seen that depending upon the boundary conditions the structure of the Green's functions is established.
- It also gives a link to reduce a differential equation into an integral equation.

5.7 Keywords

We can have an ***initial value problem*** where the values of the dependent function and its derivatives are given.

In a ***boundary value problem*** the values of the dependent function and its derivatives are given at both the ends of the interval of the independent variable.

Notes

5.8 Review Questions

1. Find the Green's function for the one dimensional case given by

$$L_x y = \frac{d^2}{dx^2} y = 0$$

with $y(0) = y'(0), y(1) = -y'(1)$

2. Find the Green's function for the boundary value problem $\nabla^2\psi = \left(\frac{\partial^2}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2}{\partial y^2}\right)\psi = 0$, for $r < 0$, given that $\psi = f(0)$ for $r = a$

3. Prove that for the equation

$$\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x \partial y} - \frac{2}{x-y}\left(\frac{\partial z}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial z}{\partial y}\right) = 0$$

the Green's function is

$$G(x,y,\xi,\eta) = \frac{(x-y)[2xy - (\xi-\eta)(x-y) - 2\xi\eta]}{(\xi-\eta)^3}.$$

Answers: Self Assessment

1. $G(x,\xi) = \begin{cases} x & (x \leqq \xi) \\ \xi & (x > \xi) \end{cases}$

2. $G(x,\xi) = -\frac{1}{2}|x-\xi| + \frac{1}{4}(x-\xi)^2 + \frac{1}{6}.$

5.9 Further Readings

Books

K. Yosida, Lectures in Differential and Integral Equations

Sneddon L.N., Elements of Partial Differential Equations

King A.C, Billingham J. and S.R. Otto, Differential Equations

Richa Nandra, Lovely Professional University

Unit 6: Sturm –Liouville's Boundary Value Problems

CONTENTS

Objectives

Introduction

6.1 Sturm-Liouville's Equation

6.2 Boundary Conditions

6.3 Properties of the Eigenvalues and Eigenfunctions

6.4 Bessel's Inequality, Approximation in the Mean and Completeness

6.5 Summary

6.6 Keywords

6.7 Review Questions

6.8 Further Readings

Objectives

After studying this unit, you should be able to:

- Understand the structure of self-adjoint equations. If we are dealing with only second order differential equations, we see that under what conditions we can put them in self-adjoint form.
- Know that Sturm-Liouville boundary value problem is a method of dealing with equations which can be put into Sturm-Liouville form.
- Find the solutions for some values of the parameters. The solutions are known as eigenfunctions and the values of the parameter are known as eigenvalues.
- Know that important examples of Sturm-Liouville boundary value problems are Legendre equation, Bessel's equations and many more.

Introduction

This method helps us in finding certain sets of functions which are orthogonal and we can express any function in terms of these eigenfunctions on the interval $a \le x \le b$ where a and b may be finite or one of them finite and the other infinite or both a and b to be infinite.

These methods are known as Fourier Legendre expansion if we use Legendre polynomials and so on.

6.1 Sturm-Liouville's Equation

In the first four units we have studied linear second order differential equations. After examining some solutions techniques that are applicable to such equations in general we studied the particular cases of Legendre's equation, Bessel's equations, the Hermite equations and Laguerre's equations, as they frequently arise in models of physical systems in spherical, cylindrical geometries and in Quantum mechanics. In each case we saw that we can construct a set of solutions that can be used as the basis for series expansion of the solution of the physical problem in question, namely the Fourier-Legendre's and Fourier-Bessel series. In this unit we will see that Legendre's, Bessel's, Hermite and Laguerre's equations are examples of Sturm-Liouville's equations which are also in self-adjoint form. Some of the properties of Sturm-Liouville's equations are examined in the previous unit also. In this unit we deduce some more properties of such equations independent of the function form of the coefficients.

Sturm-Liouville equations are of the form

$$(p(x)y'(x))' + q(x)y(x) = -\lambda r(x)y(x) \qquad ...(1)$$

which can be written more concisely as

$$Sy(x, \lambda) = -\lambda r(x)y(x, \lambda) \qquad ...(2)$$

where the differential operator S is defined as

$$S\phi \equiv \frac{d}{dx}\left(p(x)\frac{d\phi}{dx}\right) + q(x)\phi. \qquad ...(3)$$

This is a slightly more general equation. In (1) the number λ is the eigenvalue, whose possible values, which may be complex, are critically dependent upon the given boundary conditions. It is often more important to know the properties of λ than it is to construct the actual solutions of (1).

We seek to solve the Sturm-Liouville equation (1) on an open interval, (a, b) of the real line. We will also make some assumptions about the behaviour of the coefficients of (1) for $x \in (a, b)$, namely that

(i) $p(x)$, $q(x)$ and $r(z)$ are real-valued and continuous

(ii) $p(x)$ is differentiable, ...(4)

(iii) $p(x) > 0$ and $r(z) > 0$.

Some Example of Sturm-Liouville Equations

Perhaps the simplest example of a Sturm-Liouville equation is Fourier's equations,

$$y''(x, \lambda) = -\lambda y(x, \lambda) \qquad ...(5)$$

which has solutions $\cos(x\sqrt{\lambda})$ and $\sin(x\sqrt{\lambda})$. We discussed a physical problem that leads naturally to Fourier's equation at the start of least unit.

We can write Legendre's equation and Bessel's equation as Sturm-Liouville problems. Recall that Legendre's equation is

$$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} - \frac{2x}{1-x^2}\frac{dy}{dx} + \frac{\lambda}{1-x^2}y = 0$$

and we are usually interested in solving this for $-1 < x < 1$. This can be written as

$$[(1 - x^2)y']' = -\lambda y.$$

If $\lambda = n(n + 1)$, we showed in unit 2 that this has solutions $P_n(x)$ and $Q_n(x)$. Similarly, Bessel's equation, which is usually solved for $0 < x < a$, is

$$x^2y'' + xy' + (\lambda x^2 - \nu^2)\phi = 0.$$

This can be rearranged into the form

$$(xy')' - \frac{\nu^2}{x}y = -\lambda xy.$$

Again, from the results of unit 1, we know that this has solutions of the form $J_v(x\sqrt{\lambda})$ and $Y_v(x\sqrt{\lambda})$.

Although the Sturm-Liouville forms of these equations may look more cumbersome than the original forms, we will see that they are very convenient for the analysis that follows. This is because of the self-adjoint nature of the differential operator.

6.2 Boundary Conditions

We begin with a couple of definitions. The endpoint, $x = a$, of the interval (a, b) is a regular endpoint if a is finite and the conditions (4) hold on the closed interval $[a, c]$ for each $c \in (a, b)$. The endpoint $x = a$ is a singular endpoint if $a = -\infty$ or if a is finite but the conditions (4) do not hold on the closed interval $[a, c]$ for some $c \in (a, b)$. Similar definitions hold for the other endpoint, $x = b$. For example, Fourier's equation has regular endpoints if a and b are finite. Legendre's equation has regular endpoints if $-1 < a < b > 1$, but singular endpoints if $a = -1$ or $b =1$, since $p(x) = 1- x^2 = 0$ when $x = \pm 1$. Bessel's equation has regular endpoints for $0 < a < b < \infty$, but singular endpoints if $a = 0$ or $b = \infty$, since $q(x) = -v^2/x$ is unbounded at $x = 0$.

We can now define the types of boundary conditions that can be applied to a Sturm-Liouville equation.

(i) On a finite interval, $[a, b]$, with regular endpoints, we prescribe unmixed, or separated, boundary conditions, of the form

$$\alpha_0 y(a, \lambda) + \alpha_1 y'(a, \lambda) = 0, \ \beta_0 y(b, \lambda) + \beta_1 y'(v, \lambda) = 0. \qquad \text{...(6)}$$

These boundary conditions are said to be real if the constants α_0, α_1, β_0 and β_1 are real, with $\alpha_0^2 + \alpha_1^2 > 0$ and $\beta_0^2 + \beta_1^2 > 0$.

(ii) On an interval with one or two singular endpoints, the boundary conditions that arise in models of physical problems are usually boundedness conditions. In many problems, these are equivalent to Friedrich's boundary conditions, that for some c ε (a, b) there exists $A \ \varepsilon \ \mathbb{R}^+$ such that

$$|y(x, \lambda)| \le A \text{ for all } x \in (a, c)$$

and similarly if the other endpoint, $x = b$, is singular there exists $B \subseteq \mathbb{R}^+$ such that $|y(x, \lambda)| \le B$ for all $x \ \varepsilon \ (a, b)$

We can now define the Sturm-Liouville boundary value problem to be the Sturm-Liouville equation,

$$(p(x)y'(x))' + q(x)y(x) = -\lambda r(x)y(x) \qquad \text{for } x \in (a, b)$$

where the coefficient functions satisfy the conditions (4), to be solved subject to a separated boundary condition at each regular endpoint and a Friedrich's boundary condition at each singular endpoint. Note that this boundary value problem is homogeneous and therefore always has the trivial solution, $y = 0$. A non-trivial solution, $y(x, \lambda) \not\equiv 0$, is an eigenfunction, and λ is the corresponding eigenvalue.

Some Examples of Sturm-Liouville Boundary Value Problems.

Consider Fourier's equation.

$$y''(x, \lambda) = -\lambda x(x, \lambda) \qquad \text{for } x \in (0, 1)$$

subject to the boundary conditions $y(0, \lambda) = y(1, \lambda) = 0$, which are appropriate since both endpoints are regular. The eigenfunctions of this system are $\sin\sqrt{\lambda_n x}$ for $x = 1, 2,....,$ with corresponding eigenvalues $\lambda = \lambda_\eta = n^2 \pi^2$.

Legendre's equation is

$$\{(1 - x^2)y'(x, \lambda)\}' = -\lambda y(x, \lambda) \text{ for } x \in (-1, 1).$$

Note that this is singular at both endpoints, since $p(\pm 1) = 0$. We therefore apply Friedrich's boundary conditions, for example with $c = 0$, in the form

$$|y(x, \lambda)| \le A \text{ for } x \in (-1, 0), \ |y(x, \lambda)| \le B \text{ for } x \in (0, 1),$$

Notes

for some $A, B \in \mathbb{R}^{+}$. In unit 2 we used the method of Frobenius to construct the solutions of Legendre's equation, and we know that the only eigenfunctions bounded at both the endpoints are the Legendre polynomials, $P_n(x)$ for $n = 0, 1, 2,...$, with corresponding eigenvalues $\lambda = \lambda_n = n(n + 1)$.

Let's now consider Bessel's equation with $v = 1$, over the interval (0, 1),

$$(xy')' - \frac{y}{x} = -\lambda xy.$$

Because of the form of $q(x)$, $x = 0$ is a singular endpoint, whilst $x = 1$ is a regular endpoint. Suitable boundary conditions are therefore

$$|y(x, \lambda)| \le A \text{ for } x \in \left(0, \frac{1}{2}\right),\ y(1, \lambda) = 0$$

for some $A \in \mathbb{R}^{+}$. In unit 1 we constructed the solutions of this equation using the method of Frobenius. The solution that is bounded at $x = 0$ is $J_1\left(x, \sqrt{\lambda}\right)$. The eigenvalues are solutions of

$$J_1\left(\sqrt{\lambda_n}\right) = 0,$$

which we write as $\lambda = \lambda_1^2, \lambda_2^2, ...$, where $J_1(\lambda_n) = 0$.

Finally, let's examine Bessel's equation with $v = 1$, but now for $x \in (0, \infty)$. Since both endpoints are now singular, appropriate boundary conditions are

$$|y(x, \lambda)| \le A \text{ for } x \in \left(0, \frac{1}{2}\right),\ |y(x, \lambda)| \le B \text{ for } x \in \left(\frac{1}{2}, \infty\right),$$

for some $A, B \in \mathbb{R}^{+}$. The eigenfunctions are again $J_1\left(x, \sqrt{\lambda}\right)$, but now the eigenvalues lie on the half-line $[0, \infty)$. In other words, the eigenfunctions exist for all real, positive λ. The set of eigenvalues for a Sturm-Liouville system is often called the spectrum. In the first of the Bessel function examples above, we have a discrete spectrum, whereas for the second there is a continuous spectrum. We will focus our attention on problems that have a discrete spectrum only.

Self Assessment

1. Put the equation

   $x^2y'' + xy' + (\lambda^2x^2 - 4)\, y = 0$

   in Sturm-Liouville's form

2. Put the equation

   $$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} - 2x\frac{dy}{dx} + 2\lambda y = 0$$

   into Sturm-Liouville's form

6.3 Properties of the Eigenvalues and Eigenfunctions

In order to study further the properties of the eigenfunctions and eigenvalues, we begin by defining the inner product of two complex-valued functions over an interval I to be

$$\langle \phi_1(x), \phi_2(x) \rangle = \int_I \phi_1^*(x)\phi_2(x)dx,$$

Notes

where a superscript asterisk denotes the complex conjugate. This means that the inner product has the properties

(i) $\langle \phi_1, \phi_2 \rangle = \langle \phi_2, \phi_1 \rangle^*$,

(ii) $\langle a_1\phi_1, a_2\phi_2 \rangle = a_1^* a_2 \langle \phi_1, \phi_2 \rangle$,

(iii) $\langle \phi_1, \phi_2 + \phi_3 \rangle = \langle \phi_1, \phi_2 \rangle + \langle \phi_1, \phi_3 \rangle$, $\langle \phi_1 + \phi_2, \phi_3 \rangle = \langle \phi_1, \phi_3 \rangle + \langle \phi_2, \phi_3 \rangle$

(iv) $\langle \phi, \phi \rangle = \int_I |\phi|^2 \, dx \geq 0$, with equality if and only if $\phi(x) \equiv 0$ in I.

Note that this reduces to the definition of a real inner product if ϕ_1 and ϕ_2 are real. If $\langle \phi_1, \phi_2 \rangle = 0$ with $\phi_1 \not\equiv 0$ and $\phi_2 \not\equiv 0$, we say that ϕ_1 and ϕ_2 are orthogonal.

Let $y_1(x)$, $y_2(x) \in C^2[a, b]$ be twice-differentiable complex-valued functions. By integrating by parts, it is straightforward to show that

$$\langle y_2 S y_1 \rangle - \langle S y_2 \; y_1 \rangle = \left[p(x)\{y_1(x)(y_2^*(x))' = y_1(x) y_2^*(x)\} \right]_\alpha^\beta \qquad ...(7)$$

which is known as Green's formula. The inner products are defined over a sub-interval $[\alpha, \beta] \subset (a, b)$, so that we can take the limits $\alpha \to a^+$ and $\beta \to b^-$ when the endpoints are singular, and the Sturm-Liouville operator, S, is given by (3). Now if $x = a$ is a regular endpoint and the function y_1 and y_2 satisfy a separated boundary condition at a, then

$$p(a)\{y_1(a)(y_2^*(a))' - y_1'(a) y_2^*(a)\} = 0. \qquad ...(8)$$

If a is a finite singular endpoint and the functions y_1 and y_2 satisfy the Friedrich's boundary condition at a,

$$\lim_{x \to a^+} [p(x)\{y_1(x) y_2^*(x))' - y_1'(x) y_2^*(x)\}] = 0 \qquad ...(9)$$

Similar results hold at $x = b$.

We can now derive several results concerning the eigenvalues and eigenfunctions of a Sturm-Liouville boundary value problem.

Theorem 1: The eigenvalues of a Sturm-Liouville boundary value problem are real.

$$\langle y^*(x, \lambda) S y(x, \lambda) \rangle - \langle S y^*(x, \lambda), y(x, \lambda) \rangle$$

$$= [p(x)\{y(x, \lambda)(y^*(x, \lambda))' - y'(x, \lambda) y^*(x, \lambda)\}]_a^b = 0$$

Proof: If we substitute $y_1(x) = y(x, \lambda)$ and $y_2(x) = y^*(x, \lambda)$ into Green's formula over the entire interval, $[a, b]$, we have $\langle y^*(x,\lambda), Sy(x,\lambda) \rangle - \langle Sy^*(x,\lambda), y(x,\lambda) \rangle$

$$= \left[p(x)\left\{ y(x,\lambda)(y^*(x,\lambda)' - y'(x,\lambda) y^*(x,\lambda) \right\} \right]_a^b = 0$$

making use of (8) and (9). Now, using the fact that the function $y(x, \lambda)$ and $y^*(x, \lambda)$ are solutions of (1) and its complex conjugate, we find that

$$\int_a^b r(x) y(x, \lambda) y^*(x, \lambda)(\lambda - \lambda^*) \, dx = (\lambda - \lambda^*) \int_a^b r(x)[y(x, \lambda)]^2 \, dx = 0$$

Since $r(x) > 0$ and $y(x, \lambda)$ is nontrivial, we must have $\lambda = \lambda^*$ and hence $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}$ i.e. the eigenvalues are real.

Theorem 2: If $y(x, \lambda)$ and $y(x, \bar{\lambda})$ are eigenfunctions of the Sturm-Liouville boundary value problem, with $\lambda \neq \bar{\lambda}$), then these eigenfunctions are orthogonal over $C^p[a, b]$ with respect to the weighing function $r(x)$, so that

$$\int_a^b r(x) y(x, \lambda) y(x, \bar{\lambda}) \, dx = 0 \qquad ...(10)$$

Proof: Firstly, notice that the separated boundary condition (6) at $x = a$ takes the form

$$\alpha_0 y_1(a) + \alpha_1 y'_1(a) = 0,\ \alpha_0 y_2(a) + \alpha_1 y'_2(a) = 0. \qquad ...(11)$$

Taking the complex conjugate of the second of these gives

$$\alpha_0 y_2^*(a) + \alpha_1 (y'_2(a))^* = 0. \qquad ...(12)$$

since α_0 and α_1 are real. For the pair of equations (11) and (12) to have a nontrivial solution, we need

$$y_1(a)(y'_2(a))^* - y'_1(a)y'_2(a) = 0.$$

A similar result holds at the other endpoint, $x = b$. This clearly shows that

$$p(x)\{y(x,\lambda)\,(y'(x,\bar{\lambda}))^* - y'(x,\lambda)(y(x,\bar{\lambda}))^*\} = 0$$

as $x \to a$ and $x \to b$, so that, from Green's formula (7),

$$\langle y(x,\bar{\lambda})\ Sy(x,\lambda)\rangle = \langle Sy(x,\bar{\lambda}),\ y(x,\lambda)\rangle$$

If we evaluate this formula, we find that

$$\int_a^b r(x)y(x,\lambda)y(x,\bar{\lambda})dx = 0$$

so that the eigenfunctions associated with the distinct eigenvalues λ and $\bar{\lambda}$ are orthogonal with respect to the weighting function $r(x)$.

Example: Consider Hermite's equation

$$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} - 2x\frac{dy}{dx} + \lambda y = 0 \qquad ...(i)$$

for $-\infty < x < \infty$. This is not in self-adjoint form. To do that let us define

$$\begin{aligned} p(x) &= \exp\left[\int^x (-2x)dx\right] \\ &= \exp(-x^2) \end{aligned} \qquad ...(ii)$$

Thus the equation (i) becomes

$$\frac{d}{dx}\left(p(x)\frac{dy}{dx}\right) + \lambda e^{-x^2} y = 0 \qquad ...(iii)$$

By using the method of Frobenius, we showed in unit (3) that the solutions of equation (i) are polynomials defined by $H_n(x)$ when $\lambda = 2n$ for $n = 0, 1, 2, ...$. The solutions of equation (iii), the self-adjoint form of the equation, that are bounded at infinity for $\lambda = 2n$, then take the form

$$u_n = e^{-\frac{x^2}{2}} H_n(x) \qquad ...(iv)$$

and from theorem (2) satisfy the orthogonality condition

$$\int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} e^{-x^2} H_n(x)H_m(x)dx = 0 \ \textit{for } n \neq m$$

Self Assessment

3. Put the Laguerre's equation

   $xy'' + (1 - x) + \lambda y = 0$, for $0 < x < \infty$

   into self-adjoint form and deduce orthogonality condition for Laguerre's polynomials.

Notes

6.4 Bessel's Inequality, Approximation in the Mean and Completeness

We can now define a sequence of orthonormal eigenfunctions

$$\phi_n(x) = \frac{\sqrt{r(x)}y(x,\lambda_n)}{\left\langle \sqrt{r(x)}y(x,\lambda_n), \sqrt{r(x)}y(x,\lambda_n)\right\rangle},$$

which satisfy

$$\langle \phi_n(x), \phi_m(x)\rangle = \delta_{nm}, \qquad ...(13)$$

where δ_{nm} is the Kronecker delta. We will try to establish when we can write a piecewise continuous function $f(x)$ in the form

$$f(x) = \sum_{i=0}^{\infty} a_i\phi_i(x) \qquad ...(14)$$

Taking the inner product of both sides of this series with $\phi_j(x)$ shows that

$$a_j = \langle f(x), \phi_j(x)\rangle, \qquad ...(15)$$

using the orthonormality condition (13). The quantities a_i are known as the expansion coefficients, or generalized Fourier coefficients. In order to motivate the infinite series expansion (14), we start by approximating $f(x)$ by a finite sum,

$$f_N(x) = \sum_{i=0}^{N} A_i\phi(x,\lambda_i)$$

for some finite N, where the A_i are to be determined so that this provides the most accurate approximation to $f(x)$. The error in this approximation is

$$R_N(x) = f(x) - \sum_{i=0}^{N} A_i\phi(x,\lambda_i)$$

We now try to minimize this error by minimizing its norm

$$\|R_N\|^2 = \langle R_N(x), R_N(x)\rangle = \int_a^b \left[f(x) - \sum_{i=0}^{N} A_i\phi_i(x)\right]^2 dx,$$

which is the mean square error in the approximation. Now

$$\|R_N\|^2 = \left\langle f(x) - \sum_{i=0}^{N} A_i\phi_i(x), f(x) - \sum_{i=0}^{N} A_i\phi_i(x)\right\rangle$$

$$= \|f(x)\|^2 - \left\langle f(x), \sum_{i=0}^{N} A_i\phi_i(x)\right\rangle$$

$$-\left\langle \sum_{i=0}^{N} A_i\phi_i(x), f(x)\right\rangle + \left\langle \sum_{i=0}^{N} A_i\phi_i(x), \sum_{i=0}^{N} A_i\phi_i(x)\right\rangle$$

We can now use the orthonormality of the eigenfunctions (13) and the expression (15), which determines the coefficients a_i, to obtain

Notes

$$\|R_N(x)\|^2 = \|f(x)\|^2 - \sum_{i=0}^{N} A_i \langle f(x), \phi_i(x)\rangle$$

$$-\sum_{i=0}^{N} A_i^* \langle \phi_i(x), f(x)\rangle, \sum_{i=0}^{N} A_i^* A_i \langle \phi_i(x), \phi_i(x)\rangle$$

$$= \|f(x)\|^2 + \sum_{i=0}^{N} \{-A_i a_i - A_i^* a_i^* + A_i^* A_i\}$$

$$= \|f(x)\|^2 + \sum_{i=0}^{N} \{|A_i - a_i|^2 - |a_i|^2\}$$

The error is therefore smallest when $A_i = a_i$ for $i = 0, 1, ..., N$, so the most accurate approximation is formed by simply truncating the series (14) after N terms. In addition, since the norm of $R_N(x)$ is positive,

$$\sum_{i=0}^{N} |a_i|^2 \le \int_a^b |f(x)|^2 \, dx$$

As the right side of this is independent of N_1 if follows that

$$\sum_{i=0}^{\infty} |a_i|^2 \le \int_a^b |f(x)|^2 \, dx \qquad ...(16)$$

which is Bessel's inequality. This shows that the sum of the squares of the expansion coefficients converges. Approximations by the method of least squares are often referred to as approximations in the mean, because of the way the error is minimized.

If, for a given orthonormal system, $\phi_1(x)$, $\phi_2(x)$..., any piecewise continuous function can be approximated in the mean to any desired degree of accuracy by choosing N large enough, then the orthonormal system is said to be complete. For complete orthonormal systems, $R_N(x) \to 0$ as $N \to \infty$, so that Bessel's inequality becomes an *equality,*

$$\sum_{i=0}^{\infty} |a_i|^2 = \int_a^b |f(x)|^2 \, dx \qquad ...(17)$$

for every function $f(x)$.

The completeness of orthonormal systems as expressed by

$$\lim_{N \to \infty} \int_a^b \left[f(x) - \sum_{i=0}^{N} a_i \phi_i(x) \right]^2 dx = 0$$

does not necessarily imply that $f(x) = \sum_{i=0}^{\infty} a_i \phi_i(x)$, in other words that $f(x)$ has an expansion in terms of the $\phi_i(x)$. If however, the series $\sum_{i=0}^{\infty} a_i \phi_i(x)$, is uniformly convergent, then the limit and the integral can be interchanged, the expansion is valid, and we say that $\sum_{i=0}^{\infty} a_i \phi_i(x)$, converges in the mean to $f(x)$. The completeness of the systems $\phi_1(x)$, $\phi_2(x)$.... , should be seen as a necessary condition for the validity of the expansion, but, for an arbitrary function $f(x)$, the question of convergence requires a more detailed investigation.

The Legendre polynomials $P_0(x)$, $P_1(x)$,... on the interval (–1, 1) and the Bessel functions $J_v(\lambda_t x)$, $J_v(\lambda_2 x)$,... on the interval [0, a] are both examples of complete orthogonal systems (they can easily be made orthonormal), and the expansions of unit 1 to 5 are special cases of the more general

Notes

results of this chapter. For example, the Bessel functions $J_v\left(\sqrt{\lambda}x\right)$ satisfy the Sturm-Liouville equation, with $p(x) = x$, $q(x) = -v^2/x$ and $r(x) = x$. They satisfy the orthogonality relation

$$\int_0^a xJ_v\left(\sqrt{\mu}x\right)J_v\left(\sqrt{\lambda}x\right)dx = 0$$

if λ and μ are distinct eigenvalues. Using the regular endpoint condition $J_v\left(\sqrt{\lambda}a\right) = 0$ and the singular endpoint condition at $x = 0$, the eigenvalues, that is the zeros of $J_v(x)$, can be written as $\sqrt{\lambda}\, a = \lambda_1 a_1, \lambda_2 a...$, so that $\sqrt{\lambda} = \lambda_i$ for $i = 1, 2, ...$, and we can write

$$f(x) = \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} a_i J_v(\lambda_i x),$$

with

$$a_i = \frac{2}{a^2\{J_v'(\lambda_i a)\}^2}\int_0^a xJ_v(\lambda_i x)f(x)dx$$

Example: Show that the functions $g_m = \cos mx$, $m = 0, 1, 2, ...$ form orthogonal set of functions on the interval $-\pi < x > \pi$ and determine the corresponding orthonormal set of functions.

Solution: We have, for $m \neq n$

$$\int_{-\pi}^{\pi} \cos mx \cos nx \, dx$$

$$= 2\int_0^{\pi} \cos mx \cos nx \, dx$$

$$= \int_0^{\pi} \left\{\cos[(m+n)x] - \cos[(m-n)x]\right\} dx$$

$$= \left[\frac{\sin[(m+n)x]}{(m+n)} - \frac{\sin[(m-n)x]}{m-n}\right]_0^{\pi} = 0$$

Hence the given functions $g_m = \cos mx$, $m = 0, 1, 2, ...$ are orthogonal set of functions.

Now the norm of g_m is

$$\|g_m\| = \|\cos mx\| = \left|\int_{-\pi}^{\pi} \cos^2 mx \, dx\right|^{1/2}$$

$$= \left|2\int_0^{\pi} \cos^2 mx \, dx\right|^{1/2}$$

$$= \sqrt{2\pi} \quad \text{when } m = 0$$

and $= \sqrt{\pi}$ when $m = 1, 2, 3, ...$

Hence the orthonormal set is

$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}, \frac{\cos x}{\sqrt{\pi}}, \frac{\cos 2x}{\sqrt{\pi}}, \frac{\cos 3x}{\sqrt{\pi}}, ...$$

Self Assessment

4. Show that the functions 1, $\cos x$, $\sin x$, $\cos 2x$, $\sin 2x$, ... form an orthogonal set on an interval $-\pi \leq x \leq \pi$ and obtain the orthonormal set.

6.5 Summary

- The Sturm-Liouville's boundary value problems leads us to eigenvalues and eigenfunctions of certain second order differential equations.
- It is seen that the eigenfunctions form a set of orthonormal set and as so form a complete set.
- This helps us in expanding a certain function in terms of eigenfunctions on an interval (a, b).

6.6 Keywords

Bessel's differential equations, Legendre differential equations and many more equations can be written in the Sturm-Liouville equation.

Depending upon certain boundary conditions the solutions known as ***eigenfunctions*** can be found that form orthogonal set.

6.7 Review Questions

1. Find all eigenvalues and eigenfunctions of the Sturm-Liouville problem

   $y'' + \lambda y = 0$, with $y(0) = y'\left(\frac{\pi}{2}\right) = 0$

2. Find all the eigenvalues and eigenfunctions of the Sturm-Liouville problem

   $y'' + \lambda y = 0$, with $y'(0) = 3$, $y'(c) = 0$

Answers: Self Assessment

1. $(xy')' - \frac{4}{x}y = -\lambda xy$
2. $(e^{-x^2}y')' + 2\lambda e^{-x^2}y = 0$
3. $(x\, e^{-x}y')' + \lambda e^{-x}y = 0$
4. $\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}, \frac{\cos x}{\sqrt{\pi}}, \frac{\sin x}{\sqrt{\pi}}, \frac{\cos 2x}{\sqrt{\pi}}, \frac{\sin 2x}{\sqrt{\pi}}, \ldots\ldots$

6.8 Further Readings

Books

K. Yosida, Lectures in Differential and Integral Equations

Sneddon L.N., Elements of Partial Differential Equations

King A.C, Billingham J. and S.R. Otto, Differential Equations

Richa Nandra, Lovely Professional University

Unit 7: Sturm Comparison and Separation Theorems

CONTENTS

Objectives

Introduction

7.1 Linear Ordinary Second Order differential Equation

7.2 The Method of Reduction of Order

7.3 The Method of Variation of Parameters

7.4 The Wronskian

7.5 The Sturm Comparison Theorem

7.6 The Sturm Separation Theorem

7.7 Summary

7.8 Keywords

7.9 Review Questions

7.10 Further Readings

Objectives

After studying this unit, you should be able to:

- Deal with a linear second order differential equation with ease, there are a number of important processes by which the solutions are found easily.
- Know that in certain important cases the method of reduction of order helps in solving the differential equation.
- Discuss another method called the method of variation of parameters which helps in solving non-homogeneous differentiation equation.

Introduction

Sturm comparison and separation theorems help us in understanding the nature of solutions of certain differential equation where the solutions are periodic.

This process helps us in setting up the equation for Wronskian involving the solutions of the differential equation.

7.1 Linear Ordinary Second Order Differential Equation

We here consider linear, second order ordinary differential equation of the form

$$P(x)\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} + Q(x)\frac{dy}{dx} + R(x)y = F(x)$$

where $P(x)$, $Q(x)$ and $R(x)$ are finite polynomials that contain no common factor. This equation is inhomogeneous and has variable coefficients. After dividing through $P(x)$, we obtain the more concurrent, equivalent form,

$$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} + a_1(x)\frac{dy}{dx} + a_0(x)y = f(x) \qquad ...(1)$$

Provided $p \neq 0$. If $p(x) = 0$ at some point $x = x_0$, we call $x = x_0$ a singular point of the equation. If $P(x) \neq 0$, x_0 is a regular or ordinary point of the equation. If $P(x) \neq 0$ for all points x in the interval where we want to solve the equation, we say the equation is non-singular or regular in the interval.

If $a_1(x)$, $a_0(x)$ and $f(x)$ are continuous on some open interval $a < x < b$ that contains the initial point, then a unique solution of the form

$$y = Au_1(x) + Bu_2(x) + G(x)$$

where A, B are constants and are fixed by initial conditions. Before we try to construct the general solution of equation (1), we will outline a series of sub-problems that are more tractable.

7.2 The Method of Reduction of Order

As a first simplification we discuss the solution of the homogeneous differential equation

$$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} + a_1(x)\frac{dy}{dx} + a_0(x)y = 0 \qquad ...(2)$$

on the assumption that we know one solution, say $y(x) = u_1(x)$, and only need to find the second solution. We will look for a solution of the form $y(x) = U(x)u_1(x)$. Differentiating $y(x)$ using the product rule gives

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{dU}{dx}u_1 + U\frac{du_1}{dx},$$

$$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = \frac{d^2U}{dx^2}u_1 + 2\frac{dU}{dx}\frac{du_1}{dx} + U\frac{d^2u_1}{dx^2}$$

If we substitute these expressions into (2) we obtain

$$\frac{d^2U}{dx^2}u_1 + 2\frac{dU}{dx}\frac{du_1}{dx} + U\frac{d^2u_1}{dx^2} + a_1(x)\left(\frac{dU}{dx}u_1 + U\frac{du_1}{dx}\right) + a_0(x)Uu_1 = 0$$

We can now collect terms to get

$$U\left(\frac{d^2u_1}{dx^2} + a_1(x)\frac{du_1}{dx} + a_0(x)u_1\right) + u_1\frac{d^2U}{dx^2} + \frac{dU}{dx}\left(2\frac{du_1}{dx} + a_1u_1\right) = 0$$

Now, since $u_1(x)$ is a solution of (2), the term multiplying U is zero. We have therefore obtained a differential equation for dU/dx, and, by defining $Z = dU/dx$, we have

$$u_1\frac{dZ}{dx} + Z\left(2\frac{du_1}{dx} + a_1u_1\right) = 0$$

Dividing through by Zu_1 we have

$$\frac{1}{Z}\frac{dZ}{dx} + \frac{2}{u_1}\frac{du_1}{dx} + a_1 = 0,$$

Notes

which can be integrated directly to yield

$$\log|Z| + 2\log|u_1| + \int^x a_1(s)ds = C,$$

where s is a dummy variable, for some constant C. Thus

$$Z = \frac{c}{u_1^2}\exp\left\{-\int^x a_1(s)ds\right\} = \frac{dU}{dx}$$

where $c = e^C$. This can then be integrated to give

$$U(x) = \int^z \frac{c}{u_1^2(t)}\exp\left\{-\int^t a_1(s)ds\right\}dt + \bar{c},$$

for some constant $\bar{c}$. The solution is therefore

$$y(x) = u_1(x)\int^x \frac{c}{u_1^2(t)}\exp\left\{-\int^t a_1(s)ds\right\}dt + \in u_1(x).$$

We can recognize $\in u_1(x)$ as the part of the complementary function that we knew to start with, and

$$u_2(x) = u_1(x)\int^x \frac{1}{u_1^2(t)}\exp\left\{-\int^t a_1(s)ds\right\}dt \qquad ...(3)$$

as the second part of the complementary function. This result is called the reduction of order formula.

Example: Let us try to determine the full solution of the differential equation

$$(1-x^2)\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} - 2x\frac{dy}{dx} + 2y = 0$$

given that $y = u_1(x) = x$ is a solution. We firstly write the equation in standard form as

$$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} - \frac{2x}{1-x^2}\frac{dy}{dx} + \frac{2}{1-x^2}y = 0$$

Comparing this with (2), we have $a_1(x) = -2x/(1-x^2)$. After noting that

$$\int^t a_1(s)ds = \int^t -\frac{2s}{1-s^2}ds = \log(1-t^2),$$

the reduction of order formula gives

$$u_2(x) = x\int^x \frac{1}{t^2}\exp\{-\log(1-t^2)\}dt = x\int^x \frac{dt}{t^2(1-t^2)}$$

We can express the integrand in terms of its partial fractions as

$$\frac{1}{t^2(1-t^2)} = \frac{1}{t^2} + \frac{1}{1-t^2} = \frac{1}{t^2} + \frac{1}{2(1+t)} + \frac{1}{2(1-t)}$$

This gives the second solution of (2) as

$$u_2(x) = x\int^x \left\{\frac{1}{t^2} + \frac{1}{2(1+t)} + \frac{1}{2(1-t)}\right\} dt$$

$$= x\left[-\frac{1}{t} + \frac{1}{2}\log\left(\frac{1+t}{1-t}\right)\right]^x = \frac{x}{2}\log\left(\frac{1+x}{1-x}\right) - 1,$$

and hence the general solution is

$$y = Ax + B\ \left\{\frac{x}{2}\log\left(\frac{1+x}{1-x}\right) - 1\right\}.$$

Self Assessment

1. Use the reduction of order method to find the second independent solution of the equation

$$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} + \frac{2}{x}\frac{dy}{dx} + y = 0$$

with the solution $u_1(x) = x^{-1} \sin x$

7.3 The Method of Variation of Parameters

Let's now consider how to find the particular integral given the complementary function, comprising $u_1(x)$ and $u_2(x)$. As the name of this technique suggests, we take the constants in the complementary function to be variable, and assume that

$$y = c_1(x)u_1(x) + c_2(x)u_2(x)$$

Differentiating, we find that

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = c_1\frac{du_1}{dx} + u_1\frac{dc_1}{dx} + c_2\frac{du_2}{dx} + u_2\frac{dc_2}{dx}$$

We will choose to impose the condition

$$u_1\frac{dc_1}{dx} + u_2\frac{dc_2}{dx} = 0, \qquad ...(4)$$

and thus have

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = c_1\frac{du_1}{dx} + c_2\frac{du_2}{dx},$$

which, when differentiated again, yields

$$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = c_1\frac{d^2u_1}{dx^2} + \frac{du_1}{dx}\frac{dc_1}{dx} + c_2\frac{d^2u_2}{dx^2} + \frac{du_2}{dx}\frac{dc_2}{dx}$$

This form can then be substituted into the original differential equation to give

$$c_1\frac{d^2u_1}{dx^2} + \frac{du_1}{dx}\frac{dc_1}{dx} + c_2\frac{d^2u_2}{dx^2} + \frac{du_2}{dx}\frac{dc_2}{dx} + a_1\left(c_1\frac{du_1}{dx} + c_2\frac{du_2}{dx}\right) + a_0(c_1u_1 + c_2u_2) = f.$$

This can be rearranged to show that

$$c_1\left(\frac{d^2u_1}{dx^2}+a_1\frac{du_1}{dx}+a_0u_1\right)+c_2\left(\frac{d^2u_2}{dx^2}+a_1\frac{du_2}{dx}+a_0u_2\right)+\frac{du_1}{dx}\frac{dc_1}{dx}+\frac{du_2}{dx}\frac{dc_2}{dx}=f$$

Since u_1 and u_2 are solutions of the homogeneous equation, the first two terms are zero, which gives us

$$\frac{du_1}{dx}\frac{dc_1}{dx}+\frac{du_2}{dx}\frac{dc_2}{dx}=f \qquad ...(5)$$

We now have two simultaneous equations (4) and (5), for $c_1 = dc_1/dx$ and $c_2' = dc_2/dx$, which can be written in matrix form as

$$\begin{pmatrix} u_1 & u_2 \\ u_1' & u_2' \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} c_1' \\ c_2' \end{pmatrix}=\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ f \end{pmatrix}$$

These can easily be solved to give

$$c_1' = -\frac{fu_2}{W}, c_2' = \frac{fu_1}{W},$$

where

$$W = u_1u_2' - u_2u_1' = \begin{vmatrix} u_1 & u_2 \\ u_1' & u_2' \end{vmatrix}$$

is called the Wronskian. These expansions can be integrated to give

$$c_1 = \int^x -\frac{f(s)u_2(s)}{W(s)}d\dot{s}+A,\ \ c_2 = \int^x \frac{f(s)u_1(s)}{W(s)}ds+B.$$

We can now write down the solution of the entire problem as

$$y(x) = u_1(x)\int^x -\frac{f(s)u_2(s)}{W(s)}ds + u_2(x)\int^x \frac{f(s)u_1(s)}{W(s)}d\dot{s} + Au_1(x)+Bu_2(x)$$

The particular integral is therefore

$$y(x) = \int^x f(s)\left\{\frac{u_1(s)u_2(x)-u_1(x)u_2(s)}{W(s)}\right\}ds \qquad ...(6)$$

This is called the variation of parameters formula.

Example: Consider the equation

$$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2}+y = x\sin x$$

The homogeneous form of this equation has constant coefficients, with solutions

$$u_1(x) = \cos x,\ u_2(x) = \sin x$$

The variation of parameters formula then gives the particular integral as

$$y = \int^x s\sin s\left\{\frac{\cos s\sin x - \cos x\sin s}{1}\right\}ds,$$

since

$$W = \begin{vmatrix} \cos x & \sin x \\ -\sin x & \cos x \end{vmatrix} = \cos^2 x + \sin^2 x = 1$$

We can split the particular integral into two integrals as

$$y(x) = \sin x\int^x s\sin s\cos s\, ds - \cos x\int^x s\sin^2 s\, ds$$

$$= \frac{1}{2}\sin x\int^x s\sin 2s\, ds - \frac{1}{2}\cos x\int^x s(1-\cos 2s)\, ds$$

Using integration by parts, we can evaluate this, and find that

$$y(x) = -\frac{1}{4}x^2\cos x + \frac{1}{4}x\sin x + \frac{1}{8}\cos x$$

is the required particular integral. The general solution is therefore

$$y = c_1\cos x + c_2\sin x - \frac{1}{4}x^2\cos x + \frac{1}{4}x\sin x$$

Self Assessment

2. Find the general solution of the equation

$$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} + 4y = 2\sec 2x$$

7.4 The Wronskian

Before we carry on, let's pause to discuss some further properties of the Wronskian. Recall that if V is a vector space over $\mathbb{R}$, then two elements $v_1, v_2 \in V$ are linearly dependent if $\exists\ \alpha_1, \alpha_2 \in \mathbb{R}$, with α_1 and α_2 not both zero, such that $\alpha_1 v_1 + \alpha_2 v_2 = 0$.

Now let $V = C^1(a, b)$ be the set of once-differentiable functions over the interval $a < x < b$. If $u_1, u_2 \in C^1(a, b)$ are linearly dependent, $\exists\ \alpha_1, \alpha_2 \in \mathbb{R}$ such that $\alpha_1 u_1(x) + \alpha_2 u_2(x) = 0\ \forall\, x \in (a, b)$. Notice that, by direct differentiation, this also gives $\alpha_1 u_1'(x) + \alpha_2 u_2'(x) = 0$ or, in matrix form.

$$\begin{pmatrix} u_1(x) & u_2(x) \\ u_1'(x) & u_2'(x) \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} \alpha_1 \\ \alpha_2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

These are homogeneous equations of the form

$$Ax = 0$$

which only have nontrivial solutions if det(A) = 0, that is

$$W = \begin{vmatrix} u_1(x) & u_2(x) \\ u_1'(x) & u_2'(x) \end{vmatrix} = u_1u_2' - u_1'u_2 = 0.$$

Notes

In other words, the Wronskian of two linearly dependent functions is identically zero on (a, b). The contrapositive of this result is that if $W \not\equiv 0$ on (a, b), then u_1 and u_2 are linearly independent on (a, b).

Example 1: The functions $u_1(x) = x^2$ and $u_2(x) = x^3$ are linearly independent on the interval $(-1, 1)$. To see this, note that, since $u_1(x) = x^2$, $u_2(x) = x^3$, $u_1'(x) = 2x$, and $u_2'(x) = 3x^2$, the Wronskian of these two functions is

$$W = \begin{vmatrix} x^2 & x^3 \\ 2x & 3x^2 \end{vmatrix} = 3x^4 - 2x^4 = x^4$$

This quantity is not identically zero, and hence x^2 and x^3 are linearly independent on $(-1, 1)$

Example 2: The functions $u_1(x) = f(x)$ and $u_2(x) = kf(x)$, with k a constant, are linearly dependent on any interval, since their Wronskian is

$$W = \begin{vmatrix} f & kf \\ f' & kf' \end{vmatrix} = 0$$

If the functions u_1 and u_2 are solutions of (2), we can show by differentiating $W = u_1u_2' - u_1'u_2$ directly that

$$\frac{dW}{dx} + a_1(x)W = 0.$$

This first order differential equation has solution

$$W(x) = W(x_0)\exp\left\{-\int_{x_0}^{x} a_1(t)dt\right\} \qquad ...(7)$$

which is known as Abel's formula. This gives us an easy way of finding the Wronskian of the solutions of any second order differential equation without having to construct the solutions themselves.

Example 3: Consider the equation

$$y'' + \frac{1}{x}y' + \left(1 - \frac{1}{x^2}\right)y = 0$$

Using Abel's formula, this has Wronskian

$$W(x) = W(x_0)\exp\left\{-\int_{x_0}^{x} \frac{dt}{t}\right\} = \frac{x_0W(x_0)}{x} = \frac{A}{x}$$

for some constant A.

We end this section with a useful theorem.

Theorem. If u_1 and u_2 are linearly independent solutions of the homogeneous, non-singular ordinary differential equation (2), then the Wronskian is either strictly positive or strictly negative.

Proof: From Abel's formula, and since the exponential function does not change sign, the Wronskian is identically positive, identically negative or identically zero. We just need to exclude the possibility that W is ever zero. Suppose that $W(x_1) = 0$. The vectors $\begin{pmatrix} u_1(x_1) \\ u_1'(x_1) \end{pmatrix}$ and $\begin{pmatrix} u_2(x_1) \\ u_2'(x_1) \end{pmatrix}$ are then linearly dependent, and hence $u_1(x_1) = ku_2(x_1)$ and $u_1'(x) = ku_2'(x)$ for some constant k. The function $u(x) = u_1(x) - ku_2(x)$ is also a solution of (2) by linearity, and satisfies the initial conditions $u(x_1) = 0$, $u'(x_1) = 0$. Since (2) has a unique solution, the obvious solution, $u \equiv 0$, is the only solution. This means that $u_1 \equiv ku_2$. Hence u_1 and u_2 are linearly dependent – a contradiction.

The non-singularity of the differential equation is crucial here. If we consider the equation $x^2y'' - 2xy' + 2y = 0$, which has $u_1(x) = x^2$ and $u_2(x) = x$ as its linearly independent solutions, the Wronskian is $-x^2$, which vanishes at $x = 0$. This is because the coefficient of y'' also vanishes at $x = 0$.

Self Assessment

3. Find the Wronskian of x, x^2 on the interval $(-1, 1)$.

7.5 The Sturm Comparison Theorem

The theorem states that if $f(x)$ and $g(x)$ are nontrivial solutions of the differential equations

$$u'' + p(x)u = 0 \qquad ...(1)$$

and

$$v'' + q(x)v = 0 \qquad ...(2)$$

and $p(x) \geqq q(x)$, $f(x)$ vanishes at least once between any two zeros of $g(x)$ unless $p \equiv q$ and $f = \mu g$ where μ is a real number.

Proof: As $p(s) \geqq q(x)$ for all values of x within the interval of interest. For example consider the equation

$$w'' + a^2w = 0,\ a^2 > 0 \qquad ...(3)$$

This equation has an oscillatory behaviour and the solution is of the form

$$w(x) = c_1 \sin ax + c_2 \cos ax \qquad ...(4)$$

since

$$p(x) \geqq a^2 > 0$$

then (1) will have an oscillatory solution and so will have zeros. As (1) is more oscillatory then (2) it will have zeros also more frequently and hence in between zeros of (2) it have at least one zero.

7.6 The Sturm Separation Theorem

If $u_1(x)$ and $u_2(x)$ are the linearly independent solutions of a non-singular homogeneous equation (1), then the zeros of $u_1(x)$ and $u_2(x)$ occur alternately. In other words, successive zeros of $u_1(x)$ are separated by successive zeros of $u_2(x)$ and vice versa.

Proof: Suppose that x_1 and x_2 are successive zeros of $u_2(x)$; as the Wronskian W is given by

$$W(x) = \begin{vmatrix} u_1 & u_2 \\ u_1' & u_2' \end{vmatrix} = u_1(x)u_2'(x) - u_2(x)u_1'(x)$$

Notes

so that

$$W(x_i) = u_1(x_i)u_2'(x_i) \qquad \text{for } i = 1, 2$$

We also know from Abel's formula that $W(x)$ is of one sign on $x_1 < x < x_2$, since $u_1(x)$ and $u_2(x)$ are linearly independent. This means that $u_1(x_i)$ and $u_2'(x_i)$ are nonzero. Now if $u_2'(x_1)$ is positive then $u_2'(x_2)$ is negative or vice versa, since $u_2(x_2) = 0$. Since the Wronskian cannot change sign between x_1 and x_2, so $u_1(x)$ must change sign and hence u_1 has a zero in between x_1 and x_2 as we claimed.

Self Assessment

4. Consider the equation

$$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} + w^2y = 0$$

It has the solution

$y = \text{A} \sin wx + \text{B} \cos wx$

If we consider any two of the zeros of sin wx, it is immediately clear that cos wx has a zero between them.

Compare its solutions with respect to those of

$$\frac{d^2w}{dx^2} + 4w^2w = 0$$

7.7 Summary

- The comparison and separation theorems of Sturm are useful in the periodic solutions of the second order linear equation.
- These theorems are understood in a better way once the reduction method of order is set up.
- The variation of parameters help us in finding the particular integral of the non-homogeneous differential equation.

7.8 Keywords

Sturm comparison theorem helps us in telling when the solution of a differential equation has at least one zero in between the two zeros of the solution of another differential equation simply by studying their coefficients in the equation.

Whereas, the ***Sturm separation theorem*** helps us in predicting that one independent solution of the equation has at least one zero in between the two zeros of the other independent solution. This happens in the case of periodic solutions.

7.9 Review Questions

1. Find the Wronskian of e^x, e^{-x}

2. Find the general solution of $\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} + \frac{dy}{dx} - 6y = x$

3. If u_1, u_2 are linearly independent solution of $y'' + p(x)y' + q(x)y = 0$ and y is any other solution, show that Wronskian of (y, u_1, u_2)

$$W(x) = \begin{vmatrix} y & u_1 & u_2 \\ y' & u_1' & u_2' \\ y'' & u_1'' & u_2'' \end{vmatrix}$$

is zero.

Answers: Self Assessment

1. $\dfrac{\cos x}{x}$

   complete solution is $(A \sin x + B \cos x)/x$

2. $y = A \sin 2x + B \cos 2x + x \cos 2x - \sin 2x \log (\cos 2x)$

3. $-3x^2$

7.10 Further Readings

Books

Pipes, Louis A. & Lawrence R. Harvill, Applied Mathematics for Engineers & Physicists

King A.C., Billingham, J. Otto S.R., Differential Equations.

Yosida, K., Lectures on Differential and Integral Equations

Sneddon, L.N., Elements of partial differential equations

Unit 8: Orthogonality of Solutions

CONTENTS

Objectives

Introduction

8.1 Review of Some Basic Definitions

8.2 Review of Sturm–Liouville Problem - Eigenvalues and Eigenfunctions

8.3 Review of Bessel's Inequality and Completeness Relation

8.4 Orthogonality of Solutions of Some Equations

8.5 Summary

8.6 Keywords

8.7 Review Questions

8.8 Further Readings

Objectives

After studying this unit, you should be able to:

- Understand better the solutions of Bessel equations, Legendre equations, Hermite equations and Laguerre differential equations.
- See that there are solutions which are obtained for some values of the parameters known as eigenvalues. These solutions are known as eigenfunctions.
- Reduce these equations and many more differential equations of second order to Sturm-Liouville boundary value problem. Hence the solutions can be shown to be orthogonal, orthonormal and the set of various solutions of the equations form a complete set.

Introduction

Knowledge of Sturm–Liouville problem and certain methods are prerequisite to the ideas of orthogonality of the solutions of certain differential equations.

Also the solutions of these equations can be used to expand any function on an interval in terms of them in a systematic manner.

8.1 Review of Some Basic Definitions

In the last four units we had studied the properties of linear second order differential equations. By now you must have got enough inside into the solutions of the equations. It is seen that the form of self-adjoint equations as well as Sturm–Liouville's boundary value problems led to the kind of solutions of certain linear second order differential equations the orthogonal set of functions which are solutions of these equations. The most important of these solutions are the Fourier sine and cosine series, the Legendre polynomials, the Bessel functions; the Hermite polynomials and Laguerre's polynomials. In the last four chapters we had already seen that the solutions do resemble the eigenfunctions of a self-adjoint operator and also form an orthogonal set with respect to a weight factor. So it is advisable to introduce the inner product of two functions. The concept of an orthogonal set of functions arises in a natural way from an analogy with vectors in a vector space. This is a natural generalization of the concept of an orthogonal set

Notes

of vectors, i.e. a set of mutually perpendicular vectors. In fact, a function can be considered as a generalized vector so that fundamental properties of the set of functions are suggested by an analogous properties of the set of vectors.

Some Basic Definitions

Inner Product: The inner product of two functions $f(x)$ and $g(x)$ is a number defined by the equation

$$(f, g) = \int_a^b f(x)\, g(x)\, dx$$

on the interval $a \leq x \leq b$.

Norm of the function: The norm of the function $f(x)$ is defined as the non-negative number

$$\|f\| = \left\{\int_a^b |f(x)|^2 dx\right\}^{1/2}$$

Orthogonal functions: The condition that the two functions be orthogonal is written as

$$(f, g) = \int_a^b f(x)\, g(x) dx = 0.$$

Orthogonality with respect to a weight (or density) function: The concept of orthogonality can be extended as follows. Let $p(x) \geq 0$. Then the condition that the two functions $f(x)$ and $g(x)$ be orthogonal with respect to the weight function $p(x)$ is written as

$$\int_a^b p(x)\, f(x)\, g(x)\, dx = 0$$

Further the norm of the function is defined as

$$\|f\|_p = \left\{\int_a^b p(x) f^2(x) dx\right\}^{1/2}$$

Again $f(x)$ is said to be normalized when

$$\int_a^b p(x)\, f^2(x) dx = 1$$

The orthogonality with respect to weight function $p(x)$ can be reduced to the ordinary type by using the product $\sqrt{p(x)}\ f(x)$ and $\sqrt{p(x)}\ g(x)$ as two functions.

Orthogonal Set of Functions:

If we have a set $\{f_n(x)\}$, $(n = 1, 2, 3, ...)$ of real functions defined on an interval $a \leq x \leq b$, then the $\{f_n(x)\}$ is said to be an orthogonal set of functions on the interval $a \leq x \leq b$ if

$$\int_a^b f_m(x) f_n(x) dx = \}0 \text{ when } m \neq n$$

Notes

The set $\{f_n(x)\}$ is said to be orthonormal set if

$$\int_a^b f_m(x)\, f_n(x)\, dx = \delta_{mn},$$

Where the Kronecker delta,

$$\delta_{mn} = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if} \quad m \neq n \\ 1 & \text{if} \quad m = n \end{cases}$$

Orthonormal Set of Functions with Respect to a Weight Function

Let $\{\phi_n(x)\}$ ($n = 1, 2, 3, ...$) be a set of real functions defined on the interval $a \leq x \leq b$ and $p(x) \geqq 0$. Then the set $\{\phi_n(x)\}$ is said to be orthonormal set of functions on the interval $a \leq x \leq b$ if

$$\int_a^b p(x)\, \phi_m(x)\phi_n(x)\, dx = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{when} \quad m \neq n \\ 1 & \text{when} \quad m = n \end{cases}$$

i.e.,

$$\int_a^b p(x)\, \phi_m(x)\phi_n(x)\, dx = \delta_{mn}.$$

Self Assessment

1. Show that the function $f_1(x) = 1, f_2(x) = x$ are orthogonal on the interval $(-1, 1)$ and determine the constants A and B so that the function $f_3(x) = 1 + Ax + Bx^2$ is orthogonal to both $f_1(x)$ and $f_2(x)$ on the interval $(-1, 1)$.

8.2 Review of Sturm-Liouville Problem - Eigenvalues and Eigenfunctions

Various important orthogonal sets of functions arise in the solution of second-order differential equation

$$[R(x)y']' + [Q(x) + \lambda P(x)]y = 0 \qquad \text{...(i)}$$

on some interval $0 \leq x \leq b$ satisfying boundary conditions of the form

$$\left.\begin{aligned} &\text{(a)} \quad a_1 y + a_2 y' = 0 \quad \text{at} \quad x = a \\ &\text{(b)} \quad b_1 y + b_2 y' = 0 \quad \text{at} \quad x = b \end{aligned}\right\} \qquad \text{...(ii)}$$

The boundary value problem given by (i), (ii) is called a Sturm−Liouville problem. Here λ is a parameter and a_1, a_2, b_1, b_2 are given real constants at least one in each of conditions (ii) being different from zero. The equation (i) is known as the Sturm−Liouville equation.

You may recall that Bessel's differential equation, Legendre's equation, Hermite equation and other important equations can be written in the form (i).

The solution $y = 0$ is the trivial solution. The solution $y \neq 0$ are called the characteristic functions or eigenfunctions and λ are called λ characteristic values or eigenvalues of the problem.

There are a few theorems about the eigenvalues and eigenfunctions as follows:

Theorem 1: Let the functions P, Q, R in the Sturm–Liouville equation be real and continuous on the interval $a \le x \le b$. Let $y_m(x)$ and $y_n(x)$ be given functions of the Sturm–Liouville problem corresponding to different eigenvalues λ_m and λ_n respectively, and let the derivatives $y'_m(x)$, $y'_n(x)$ be also continuous on the interval. Then y_m and y_n are orthogonal on that interval with respect to the weight function P i.e.,

$$\int_a^b P(x) y_m(x) y_n(x) dx = 0 \qquad \text{for} \qquad \lambda_m \neq \lambda_n$$

Theorem 2: The eigenvalues of the Sturm–Liouville problem are all real.

Theorem 3: If $R(a) > 0$ or $R(b) > 0$, the Sturm–Liouville problem cannot have two linearly independent eigen functions corresponding to the same eigenvalue.

Example: The simpler example of a Sturm–Liouville equation is the Fourier's equation

$$y''(x,\lambda) + \lambda y(x,\lambda) = 0 \text{ subject to } y(0) = y(l) = 0$$

which has solutions cos $(x\sqrt{\lambda})$ and sin $(x\sqrt{\lambda})$. Using the boundary conditions, we have for y (0) = 0, only sin $(x\sqrt{\lambda})$ term is present. From the second consideration we have

$$l\sqrt{\lambda} = n\pi, \qquad n = 0,1,2,...$$

So the eigenfunctions are given by

$$y_n(x) = A_n \sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{l}\right), \text{ for } n = 1, 2, 3,...$$

The eigenvalues are given by

$$\lambda_n = \frac{n^2\pi^2}{l^2}, n = 0,1,2,3,....$$

Self Assessment

2. Find the eigenvalues ad eigenfunctions of the equation

$$y''(x) + k^2 y(x) = 0$$

with the boundary conditions

$$y(0) = 0 \text{ and } y'(1) = 0$$

8.3 Review of Bessel's Inequality and Completeness Relation

Let $\{\Psi_n(x), [n = 1, 2, 3, ...]\}$ be an orthonormal set of functions on an interval (a, b) and let an arbitrary function on the same interval be a linear combination of these functions, in the form

$$f(x) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} C_n \Psi_n(x) \qquad a \le x \le b$$

If the series converges and represents $f(x)$, it is called a generalized Fourier series of $f(x)$. The coefficient C_ν, $\nu = 1, 2, ...$ given by

$$C_\nu = \left(f, \Psi_\nu(x)\right) = \int_a^b f(x)\, \Psi_\nu(x) dx \qquad ...(i)$$

Notes

are called the expansion coefficients of $f(x)$ with respect to the given orthonormal system.

Obviously $$\int \left(f - \sum_{\nu=1}^{n} C_\nu \Psi_\nu \right)^2 dx \geq 0 \qquad \text{...(ii)}$$

By writing out the square and integrating term by term, we get

$$0 \leq \int f^2 \, dx - 2\sum_{\nu=1}^{n} C_\nu \int f . \Psi_\nu dx + \sum_{\nu=1}^{n} C_\nu{}^2$$

or $$0 \leq (Nf)^2 - 2\sum_{\nu=1}^{n} C_\nu{}^2 + \sum_{\nu=1}^{n} C_\nu{}^2 \qquad [Nf \text{ means norm of } f]$$

or $$0 \leq (Nf)^2 - \sum_{\nu=1}^{n} C_\nu{}^2$$

or $$\sum_{\nu=1}^{n} C_\nu{}^2 \leq (Nf)^2 \qquad \text{...(iii)}$$

Since the number on right is Independent of n, it follows that

$$\sum_{\nu=1}^{n} C_\nu{}^2 < (Nf)^2.$$

This fundamental inequality is known as *Bessel's inequality* and is true for every orthonormal system. It proves that the *sum of the squares of the expansion coefficients always converges*.

For systems of functions with complex values the corresponding relation is

$$\sum_{\nu=1}^{n} |C_\nu|^2 \leq (Nf)^2 = (f, \bar{f}) \qquad \text{...(iv)}$$

holds, where C_ν is the expansion coefficient $C_\nu = (\bar{f}, \Psi_\nu)$.

This relation may be obtained from the inequality

$$\int \left| f(x) - \sum_{\nu=1}^{n} C_\nu \Psi_\nu \right|^2 dx = (Nf)^2 - \sum_{\nu=1}^{n} |C_\nu|^2 \geq 0$$

The significance of the integral in (ii) is that it occurs in the problem of approximating the given function $f(x)$ by a linear combination $\sum_{\nu=1}^{n} \lambda_\nu \Psi_\nu$ with λ_ν as constant coefficient and fixed n, in such a way that the *mean square error*

$$M = \int \left(f - \sum_{\nu=1}^{n} \lambda_\nu \Psi_\nu \right)^2 dx$$

is as small as possible.

An approximation of this type is known as an approximation by the method of least squares, or an *approximation in the mean*.

If, for a given orthonormal system $\Psi_1, \Psi_2 ...,$ any piecewise continuous function f, can be approximated in the mean to any desired degree of accuracy by choosing n large enough, i.e., if n may be so chosen that the mean square error.

$$\int\left(f - \sum_{\nu=1}^{n} C_\nu \Psi_\nu\right)^2 dx$$

is less than a given arbitrary small positive number, then the system of functions $\Psi_1, \Psi_2 ...,$ is said to be *complete*.

For a complete or orthonormal system of functions Bessel's inequality becomes an equality for every function f

i.e. $$\sum_{\nu=1}^{n} C_\nu^2 = (Nf)^2$$

or $$\sum_{\nu=1}^{n} (f, \Psi_\nu)^2 = \|f\|^2$$

The relation is known as the *completeness relation* or ***Parseval's equation.***

Definitions

Closed Set: The set $\{\phi_n\}$ is closed in the sense of mean convergence if for each function f of the function space

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (f, \phi_n)^2 = \|f\|^2$$

Complete Set: An orthonormal set $\{\phi_n\}$ is complete in the function space if there is no function in that space, with positive norm which is to orthogonal to each of the functions.

Theorem: If an orthonormal set $\{\phi_n (x)\}$ is closed it is complete.

If an orthonormal set is closed then for each function f of the function space

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (f, \phi_n)^2 = \|f\|^2 \qquad ...(i)$$

Now, let us suppose a function $\Psi(x)$ in the space which is orthogonal to each function $\{\phi_n(x)\}$ of the closed orthonormal set such that

$$\|\phi\| \neq 0$$

$$(f, \phi_n) \neq 0,$$

Therefore from (i), we have $\|f\| = 0$, which is a contradiction.

Therefore there is no function in space, with positive norm which is orthogonal to each of the functions $\phi_n(x)$.

Hence the closed orthonormal set $\{\phi_n(x)\}$ is complete also.

8.4 Orthogonality of Solutions of Some Equations

(a) Orthogonality of Bessel's Functions

We know that $J_n(x')$ is the solution of Bessel's equation

$$x'^2 \frac{d^2 J_n(x')}{dx'^2} + x' \frac{d J_n(x')}{dx'} + (x'^2 - n^2)\, J_n(x') = 0$$

where n is a positive integer. Putting $x' = \lambda x$, we have

$$\frac{d J_n}{dx'} = \frac{1}{\lambda} \frac{d J_n}{dx}$$

and

$$\frac{d^2 J_n}{dx'^2} = \frac{1}{\lambda^2} \frac{d^2 J_n}{dx^2},$$

where λ is a constant,

$$x^2 \frac{d^2 J_n(\lambda x)}{dx^2} + x \frac{d J_n(\lambda x)}{dx} + (\lambda^2 x^2 - n^2) J_n(\lambda x) = 0 \qquad ...(i)$$

which may be rewritten as

$$\frac{d}{dx}\left[x \frac{d J_n(x\lambda)}{dx}\right] + \left[\lambda^2 x - \frac{n^2}{x}\right] J_n(\lambda x) = 0$$

which is Sturm–Liouville equation for each fixed n i.e.

$$\frac{d}{dx}\left[p(x) \frac{d}{dx} J_n(\lambda x)\right] + [q(x) + \lambda_1 r(x)] y = 0$$

with

$$p(x) = x,\ q(x) = -\frac{n^2}{x} \text{ and } r(x) = x \text{ and } \lambda_1 = \lambda^2.$$

Since $p(x) = 0$ for $x = 0$, it follows that the solution of (i) on an interval $0 \le x \le a$ satisfying the boundary conditions

$$J_n(\lambda a) = 0 \qquad ...(ii)$$

form an orthogonal set with respect to the weight $p(x) = x$.

Let $\alpha_{1n} < \alpha_{2n} < \alpha_{3n}$ ... denote the positive zeros of $J_n(x_1)$, therefore (ii) holds for

$$\lambda a = \lambda_{mn} \text{ or } \lambda = \lambda_{mn} = \frac{\alpha_{mn}}{a} \qquad (m = 1, 2, \ldots n \text{ fixed})$$

and since $\frac{d}{dx} J_n(x)$ is continuous also at $x = 0$, therefore for each fixed $n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$, the Bessel's function $J_n(\lambda_{mn} x)$ ($m = 1, 2, \ldots$) with $\lambda_{mn} = \frac{\alpha_{mn}}{a}$, form a orthogonal set on an interval $0 \le x \le a$ with respect to weight function $p(x) = x$,

$$\int_0^a x J_n(\lambda_{mn} x) J_n(\lambda_{pn} x) = 0 \qquad \text{if } p \ne m$$

Notes

Thus we have obtained infinity many orthogonal sets corresponding to each fixed value of n.

If a function is represented by generalized Fourier Bessel series

$$f(x) = \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} C_m J_n\left(\lambda_{mn} x\right), \text{ for } n \text{ fixed} \qquad \text{...(iii)}$$

then

$$C_{\text{m}} = \frac{1}{\left\|J_n\left(\lambda_{mn} x\right)\right\|^2} \int_a^b x\, f(x)\, J_n\left(\lambda_{mn} x\right) dx,\ m = 1, 2\ldots$$

Since

$$p(x) = x, \qquad \lambda_{mn} = \frac{\alpha_{mn}}{a}$$

where

$$\left\|J_n\left(\lambda_{mn} x\right)\right\|^2 = \int_0^a x\, J_n^2\left(\lambda_{mn} x\right) dx \qquad \text{...(iv)}$$

To bind $\left\|J_n\left(\lambda_{mn} x\right)\right\|^2$,

let us proceed as follows:

Multiplying (i) by $2x\, J_n'(\lambda x)$, we have

$$2x\, J_n^1(\lambda x)\left[x\, J_n^1(\lambda x)\right]' + \left(\lambda^2 x - \frac{n^2}{x^2}\right) 2x\, J_n(\lambda x) J_n^1(\lambda x) = 0$$

or

$$\left\{\left[x\, J_n^1(x)\right]^2\right\}' + \left(\lambda^2 x^2 - n^2\right)[J_n(\lambda x)]' = 0$$

Integrating over the limits 0 to a, we have

$$\left\{\left[x\, J_n^1(\lambda x)\right]^2\right\}_0^a = -\int\left(\lambda^2 x^2 - n^2\right)\left[J_n^2(\lambda x)\right]' dx$$

Integrating R.H.S. by parts, we have

$$\left\{\left[x\, J_n^1(\lambda x)\right]^2\right\}_0^a = -\left[\left(\lambda^2 x^2 - n^2\right) J_n^2(\lambda x)\right]_0^a + 2\lambda^2 \int_0^a x\, J_n^2(\lambda x)\, dx \qquad \text{...(v)}$$

From the following recurrence formulas for $J_n(\mu)$, we have

$$\frac{d}{d\mu}\left[\mu^{-n} J_n(\mu)\right] = -\mu^{-n} J_{n+1}(\mu)$$

or

$$\mu^{-n} \frac{d}{d\mu} J_n(\mu) - n\, \mu^{-n-1} J_n(\mu) = -\mu^{-n} J_{n+1}(\mu)$$

Multiplying both sides by μ^{n+1}

$$\mu \frac{d}{d\mu} J_n(\mu) - n J_n(\mu) = -\mu\, J_{n+1}(\mu)$$

Notes

Putting μ = λ*x*,

$$\lambda x \frac{d}{d(\lambda x)} J_n(\lambda x) - n\, J_n(\lambda x) = -\lambda x\, J_{n+1}(\lambda x)$$

or
$$x\, J_n^1(\lambda x) - n\, J_n(\lambda x) = -\lambda x\, J_{n+1}(\lambda x)$$

Substituting in (v), we have

$$\left[\left[n\, J_n(\lambda x) - \lambda x\, J_{n+1}(\lambda x)\right]^2\right]_0^a = -\left[\left(\lambda^2 x^2 - n^2\right) J_n^2(\lambda x)\right]_0^a + 2\,\lambda^2 \int_0^a x\, J_n^2(\lambda x)\, dx$$

If $\lambda = \lambda_{mn}$, then $J_n(\lambda a) = J_n\left(\lambda_{mn} a\right) = 0$, and

Since $J_n(0) = 0$, for n = 1, 2, ...,

then we have

$$\lambda_{mn}^2\, a^2\, J_{n+1}^2\left(\lambda_{mn}\, a\right) = 2\,\lambda_{mn}^2 \int_0^a x\, J_n^2\left(\lambda_{mx} x\right) dx$$

$$= 2\,\lambda_{mn}^2 \left\| J_n(\lambda_{mn} x) \right\|^2 \qquad \{\text{since weight} = x\}$$

Thus

$$\left\| J_n(\lambda_{mn} x) \right\|^2 = \frac{a^2}{2} J_{n+1}^2\, (\lambda_{mn} a)$$

$$= \frac{a^2}{2} J_{n+1}^2\, (\alpha_{mn})$$

where
$$\alpha_{\text{mn}} = \lambda_{\text{mn}} a$$

So
$$C_{\text{n}} = \frac{2}{a^2\, J_{n+1}^2(\alpha_{mn})} \int_0^a x\, J_n(\lambda_{mn}\, x) f(x)\, dx \qquad ...(vi)$$

and
$$\lambda_{\text{mn}} = \frac{\alpha_{mn}}{a}, \text{ for } m = 1, 2, 3....$$

Thus generalized Fourier Bessel series is given by (iii) with the coefficient C_n given by (vi).

(b) Orthogonality of Legendre Polynomials

The Legendre's differential equation

$$(1 - x^2) y'' - 2xy' + n(n+1) y = 0$$

may be written as

$$[(1 - x^2) y']' + \lambda y = 0 \qquad ...(i)$$

where λ = *n* (*n* + 1),

and is therefore a Sturm-Liouville equation with

$$R(x) = 1-x^2,\ P(x)=1 \text{ and } Q(x)=0$$

Here no boundary conditions are needed to form a Sturm-Liouville problem on the internal (−1, 1) since $R = 0$ when $x = \pm 1$.

Further we know that Legendre Polynomials

$$P_n(x),\ (n=0,1,2,...)$$

are the solutions of the problem, hence they are the eigenfunctions and since they have continuous derivatives, therefore it follows that $\{P_n(x)\}$, $n = 0, 1, 2, ...$ are orthogonal on the interval −1, $\le x \le 1$ with respect to the weight function

$$p = 1, \text{ i.e., } \int_{-1}^{1} P_m(x)\, P_n(x)\, dx = 0 \text{ if } (m \neq n)$$

and
$$\|P_m\|^2 = \int_{-1}^{1} P_m{}^2(x)\, dx = \frac{1}{2m+1},\ m=0,1,2,...$$

If $g_0(x), g_1(x), ...$ are eigenfunctions which are orthogonal on the interval $a \le x \le c$ with respect to the weight function $p(x)$, and if a given function $f(x)$ can be represented by a generalised Fourier series

$$f(x) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} C_n\, g_n(x)$$

then,
$$c_n = \frac{1}{\|g_n\|^2} \int_a^b p(x)\, f(x)\, g_m(x)\, dx \qquad (m=0,1,2,...)$$

where
$$\|g_m\|^2 = \int_a^b p(x)\, g_m^2(x)\, dx$$

(c) Orthogonality of Hermite Polynomials

The Hermite polynomials $H_n(x)$, given by

$$H_n(x) = (-1)^n e^{x^2} \frac{d^n e^{-x^2}}{dx^n}$$

are orthogonal with respect to the weight function $p(x) = e^{-x^2}$ on the interval $-\infty \le x \le \infty$.

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} H_m(x) H_n(x) e^{-x^2} dx = (-1)^n \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} H_m(x) \frac{d^n e^{-x^2}}{dx^n} dx$$

$$= (-1)^n \left[H_m(x) \frac{d^{n-1} e^{-x^2}}{dx^{n-1}} \right]_{-\infty}^{+\infty}$$

$$-(-1)^n \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} H_m'(x) \frac{d^{n-1}}{dx^{n-1}} e^{-x^2} dx$$

$$= -(-1) \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} 2m H_{m-1}(x) \frac{d^{n-1}}{dx^{n-1}} e^{-x^2} dx$$

[since e^{-x^2} and all its derivatives vanish for infinite x and $H_n' = 2n\, H_{n-1}$]

$$= (-1)^{n-1} 2m \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} H_{m-1}(x) \frac{d^{n-1}}{dx^{n-1}} e^{-x^2} dx \qquad n > m$$

proceeding similarly again and again

$$= (-1)^{n-m} 2^m m! \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} H_0(x) \frac{d^{n-m}}{dx^{n-m}} e^{-x^2} dx \qquad n > m$$

$$= (-1)^{n-m} 2^m m! \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{d^{n-m}}{dx^{n-m}} e^{-x^2} dx \qquad [\because H_0(x) = 1]$$

$$= (-1)^{n-m} 2^m m! \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \left[\frac{d^{n-m-1}}{dx^{n-m-1}} e^{-x^2} \right]_{-\infty}^{\infty}$$

$$= 0$$

Now $$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} H_n^2(x) e^{-x^2} dx = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} H_n(x) \frac{d^n}{dx^n} e^{-x^2} dx$$ integrating as above n times

$$= 2^n n \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} H_0(x) e^{-x^2} dx$$

$$= 2^n n! \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-x^2} dx$$

$$= 2^n n! 2 \int_{0}^{\infty} e^{-x^2} dx$$

$$= 2^n n! \sqrt{\pi}.$$

The functions of the orthogonal system are

$$\Psi_n(x) = \frac{H_n(x) e^{-x^2/2}}{\sqrt{\{2^n n! \sqrt{\pi}\}}}, (n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots)$$

(d) Orthogonality of Laguerre Polynomials

The Laguerre Polynomials $L_n(x)$ given by

$$L_n(x) = e^x \frac{d^n}{dx^n} (x^n e^{-x})$$

are orthogonal w.r.t. the weight function $p(x) = e^{-x}$ on the interval $0 \le x \le \infty$

Notes

$$\int_0^\infty L_m(x).L_n(x)\, e^{-x} dx$$

$$= \int_0^\infty L_m(x) \frac{d^n}{dx^n}(x^n e^{-x})\, dx$$

$$= \left[L_m(x) \frac{d^{n-1}}{dx^{n-1}}(x^n e^{-x}) \right]_0^\infty - \int_0^\infty L'_m(x) \frac{d^{n-1}}{dx^{n-1}}(x^n e^{-x}) dx$$

$$= \int_0^\infty L'_m(x) \frac{d^{n-1}}{dx^{n-1}}(x^n e^{-x}) dx$$

proceeding similarly

$$= (-1)^m \int_0^\infty L_m^{m'}(x) \frac{d^{n-m}}{dx^{n-m}}(x^n \; e^{-x})\; dx \;\; n \le m$$

$$= (-1)^m \int_0^\infty (-1)^m \; m! \frac{d^{n-m}}{dx^{n-m}}(x^n \; e^{-x})\; dx \;\; n \le m$$

$$= m! \left[\frac{d^{n-m-1}}{dx^{n-m-1}}(x^n e^{-x}) \right]_0^\infty = 0$$

Now,

$$\int_0^\infty L_n^2(x).\; e^{-x} dx$$

$$= \int_0^\infty L_n(x) \frac{d^n}{dx^n}(x^n \; e^{-x})\; dx$$

$$= (-1)^n \int_0^\infty L_n^{n!}(x)(x^n \; e^{-x})\; dx$$

$$= (-1)^n (-1)^n n! \int_0^\infty x^n e^{-x} dx = (n!)^2$$

Thus the functions of the orthogonal system are

$$\Psi_v(x) = \frac{e^{-x/2} L_n(x)}{n!} \qquad (n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots)$$

Self Assessment

3. Find the eigenvalues and eigenfunctions of the equation

$$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} + \lambda y = 0$$

when $y(0) = 0$, $y(\pi) = 0$

Show that the eigenfunctions are orthogonal to each other.

8.5 Summary

- In this unit we have review some of the properties of the solutions of equations like Bessel equations, Legendre equations, Hermite equations and Laguerre equations which are of Sturm-Liouville's form.
- This way we can construct the eigenfunctions for certain eigenvalues of other equations which resemble Sturm-Liouville problem with certain boundary conditions.

8.6 Keywords

Eigenfunctions are solutions of Sturm-Liouville problem corresponding to certain values of the parameter called the eigenvalues.

Sturm-Liouville boundary value problem helps us to find eigenvalues and eigenfunctions in a systematic way and their properties are well understood.

8.7 Review Questions

1. Find the eigenvalues and eigenfunctions of the Sturm-Liouville problem

$$y'' + \lambda y = 0, \qquad y(0) = y'\left(\frac{\pi}{2}\right) = 0$$

2. Show that the given set is orthogonal on the given interval and determine the corresponding orthonormal set

$1, \cos x, \cos 2x, \cos 3x, \ldots, 0 \le x \le \pi$

Answers: Self Assessment

1. A = 0, B = – 3

2. $K = \left(n + \frac{1}{2}\right)\pi,\ y_n(x) = A_n \sin\left[\left(n + \frac{1}{2}\right)\pi x\right],\ n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots.$

3. $\lambda = n^2,\ y_n(x) = \sin nx,\ n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots.$

8.8 Further Readings

Books

Yosida, K., Lectures in Differential and Integral Equations

King A.C., Billingham, J. and Otto S.R., Differential Equations

Unit 9: Classification of Partial Differential Equations

Notes

CONTENTS

Objectives

Introduction

9.1 Types of Differential Equations

9.2 Derivation of Partial Differential Equations

9.3 Various Classes of Partial Differential Equations

9.4 Summary

9.5 Keyword

9.6 Review Questions

9.7 Further Readings

Objectives

After studying this unit, you should be able to:

- Know before hand the type of the equation to be solved.
- Know that there are various methods based on the structure of the partial differential equations.
- See that the partial differential equations of the first order are generally solved by methods to get either complete solution or general solution.
- See that in the case of second order partial differential equations there are three types of equations, i.e. hyperbolic type, parabolic type or elliptic type.
- Deal with the methods of dealing with various partial differential equations.

Introduction

The classification of the partial differential equations is quite different than those of ordinary differential equations.

Some of the most important partial differential equations fall into one of the three categories i.e., the hyperbolic type, the parabolic type or elliptic type.

9.1 Types of Differential Equations

In dealing with any differential equation involving a number of variables, we first of all classify the variables into two categories. A variable may be such that it depends upon a number of other variables. Such a variable is called dependent variable and the other variables on which it is dependent are termed as independent variables.

In the case of ordinary differential equations we have to deal with one dependent and one independent variable. So the derivative of dependent variable is denoted as $\frac{dy}{dx}$, where y is a dependent variable and x is an independent variable. So the differential equation may be of the form

$$F\left(x, y, \frac{dy}{dx}, \frac{d^2y}{dx^2}, ..., \frac{d^ny}{dx^n}\right) = 0 \qquad ...(1)$$

involving up to nth derivative of y.

In contrast to the above we may sometimes have to deal with a dependent variable and more than one independent variables. Thus we may have partial derivatives of the dependent variable u with respect to independent variable x, y, z,.... So we have partial derivatives of u in the differential equation like $\frac{\partial u}{\partial x}, \frac{\partial u}{\partial y}, \frac{\partial u}{\partial z}$ etc. We may have a higher partial derivatives also present in the differential equations i.e. $\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2}, \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x \partial y}, \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial z^2}, ...$ Such a differential equations involving one dependent variable u and a number of independent variables x, y, z, ... along with the partial derivatives of u with respect to x, y, z, .. is known as partial differential equation i.e.

$$f\left(x, y, z, ...u, \frac{\partial u}{\partial x}, \frac{\partial u}{\partial y}, \frac{\partial u}{\partial z}, ... \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2}, ...\right) = 0 \qquad ...(2)$$

We may have a situation in which the partial differential equation involves only first derivatives only. Such an equation is known as first order partial differential equation i.e.

$$f_1\left(x, y, z, ...u, \frac{\partial u}{\partial x}, ... \frac{\partial u}{\partial x_n}\right) = 0 \qquad ...(3)$$

Here the order of the equation is one and it is known as first order partial differential equation. Let us denote independent variables, as x, y and z as dependent variable. Also let us put

$$\left.\begin{aligned} p &= \frac{\partial z}{\partial x} \\ q &= \frac{\partial z}{\partial y} \end{aligned}\right\} \qquad ...(4)$$

So the partial differential equation involving x, y, z, $\frac{\partial z}{\partial x}, \frac{\partial z}{\partial y}$ will be of the form

$$f_2(x, y, z, p, q) = 0 \qquad ...(4)$$

Example: The equation

$$\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x^2} = \frac{\partial z}{\partial y}$$

is a partial differential equation of *second order*. The equation

$$\left(\frac{\partial z}{\partial x}\right)^2 + \frac{\partial z}{\partial y} = 0$$

is a first order partial differential equation and of second degree involving two independent variables x and y. The equation

$$x\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} - y\frac{\partial u}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial u}{\partial z} = 0$$

is a first order partial differential equation involving three variables. So in these units involving partial differential equations we may have to deal with first order, second order or higher order partial differential equations.

9.2 Derivation of Partial Differential Equations

Example 1: Let us form the differential equation from the relation

$$lx + my + nz = \phi\,(x^2 + y^2 + z^2) \quad \text{...(5)}$$

Differentiating equation partially with respect to x and y

$$l + n\frac{\partial z}{\partial x} = \phi'(x^2 + y^2 + z^2)\left(2x + 2z\frac{dz}{dx}\right) \quad \text{...(6)}$$

and

$$m + n\frac{\partial z}{\partial y} = \phi'(x^2 + y^2 + z^2)\left(2y + 2z\frac{\partial z}{\partial y}\right) \quad \text{...(7)}$$

Eliminating ϕ'

$$\frac{\left(l + n\frac{\partial z}{\partial x}\right)}{\left(m + n\frac{\partial z}{\partial y}\right)} = \frac{x + z\frac{\partial z}{\partial x}}{y + z\frac{\partial z}{\partial y}}$$

or

$$(l + np)y - \left(m + n\frac{\partial z}{\partial y}\right)x + z\frac{\partial z}{\partial y}\left(l + n\frac{\partial z}{\partial x}\right) - z\frac{\partial z}{\partial x}\left(m + n\frac{\partial z}{\partial y}\right) = 0$$

or

$$(l + np)y - (m + nq)x + z(lq - mp) = 0 \quad \text{...(8)}$$

Notes When the relation like (6) contains more than one function partial differential equations of the higher order will be obtained.

Example 2: Find the partial differential equation from the relation

$$\frac{x}{z} = \phi\left(\frac{y}{z}\right) \quad \text{...(9)}$$

by treating z as dependent variable and x, y as independent variables.

Solution: Differentiating (9) with respect to x, we have

$$\frac{1}{z} - \frac{x}{z^2}p = \phi'\left[-\frac{y}{z^2}p\right] \quad \text{...(10)}$$

Notes

Again differentiating with respect to y, we obtain

$$-\frac{x}{z^2}q = \phi'(1/z - yq/z^2) \qquad ...(11)$$

Eliminating ϕ' from (10) and (11) we have

$$\frac{z-xp}{(-xq)} = \frac{(-yp)}{z-yq}$$

or $$z^2 - zxp - zyq\ xypq = xypq$$

or $$z^2 - z\,(px + qy) = 0$$

or $$z = px + qy \qquad ...(12)$$

Example 3: Find the partial differential equation from the relation

$$x^2 - z^2 = \phi\,(x^2 - y^2) \qquad ...(13)$$

Solution: Differentiate (13) partially with respect to x keeping y fixed we have

$$2x - 2z\frac{\partial z}{\partial x} = 2x\phi' \qquad ...(14)$$

Again differentiate (13) partially with respect to y keeping x fixed.

$$-2z\frac{\partial z}{\partial y} = -2y\phi' \qquad ...(15)$$

Eliminating ϕ' from (14) and (15) we have

$$\frac{2(x-zp)}{(-2zq)} = \frac{2x}{(-2y)}$$

or $$-xy + zpy = xzq$$

or $$xzy + zpy = xy \qquad \text{Ans} \qquad ...(16)$$

Example 4: Find the partial differential equation from the relation

$$z = \phi_1(y-2x) + \phi_2(2y-x) \qquad ...(17)$$

Solution:

Differentiating (17) partially with respect to x keeping y fixed and z a dependent variable.

$$\frac{\partial z}{\partial x} = \phi_1'(-2) + \phi_2'(-1) \qquad ...(18)$$

Now differentiate (17) with respect to y,

$$\frac{\partial z}{\partial y} = \phi_1' + 2\phi_2' \qquad ...(19)$$

Eliminating ϕ_2' from (18) and (19) we have

Notes

$$2\frac{\partial z}{\partial x}+\frac{\partial z}{\partial y} = -3\phi_1' \qquad ...(20)$$

Now differentiating (20) by x

$$2\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x^2}+\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x\partial y} = -3\phi_1''(-2)=6\phi_1'' \qquad ...(21)$$

And differentiating (20) by y

$$2\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x\partial y}+\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial y^2} = -3\phi_1''\ (1) \qquad ...(22)$$

Now eliminating ϕ_1'' from (21) and (22) we have

$$2\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x^2}+\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x\partial y}+4\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x\partial y}+2\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial y^2} = 0$$

or
$$2\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x^2}+5\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x\partial y}+2\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial y^2} = 0 \qquad ...(23)$$

Notes One can see that if there are two unknown functions in the relation between x, y and z then we obtain second order partial differential equation.

Self Assessment

1. Set up the partial differential equation by treating z as dependent variable and x, y as independent variables from the following relation

$$z = f_1(y+x)+f_2(y-x)$$

2. Set up the partial differential equation from the following relation by treating z as dependent variable and x, y as independent variable

$$\phi\left[e^{-5x}\left\{5z+\tan(y-3x)\right\},(y-3x)\right]=0$$

9.3 Various Classes of Partial Differential Equations

In this section we shall discuss some partial differential equations that occur in problems or propagation of waves in metals or strings, in electrostatics and gravitation, conduction of heat and diffusion of things in certain media. The partial differential equations discussed in the last two sections are generally partial differential equations. There are certain partial differential equations which are of second order in nature or of higher order. Let us define the partial derivatives of the dependent variable z of two independent variables x and y as

$$\frac{\partial z}{\partial x}=p,\ \frac{\partial z}{\partial y}-q,\ \frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x^2}=r,\ \frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x\partial y}=s \text{ and } \frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial y^2}=t.$$

up to second order partial differential equations i.e.

$$a_1 \frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x^2} + a_2 \frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x \partial y} + a_3 \frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial y^2} + a_4 \frac{\partial z}{\partial x} + a_5 \frac{\partial z}{\partial y} + z = f(x, y)$$

or

$$a_1 r + a_2 s + a_3 t + a_4 p + a_5 q + z = f(x, y)$$

(a) Depending upon the values of a_1, a_2 and a_3 we can have:

1. ***Hyperbolic type*** of partial differential equations in which $4 a_1 a_3 < a_2^2$.

   Such equations are found in wave motion as well as in vibration of strings etc.

   The example is wave motion

   $\frac{\partial^2 V}{\partial x^2} = \frac{1}{c^2} \frac{\partial^2 V}{\partial t^2}$, here y is replaced by time variable

2. ***Parabolic type:*** Partial differential equations in which

   $$a_2^2 - 4 a_1 \, a_3 = 0$$

   Examples of such type of equations are diffusion problems as well as conduction of heat problems i.e.

   $K \frac{\partial^2 V}{\partial x^2} = \frac{\partial V}{\partial t}$, here y is replaced by time t.

3. ***Elliptic type*** partial differential equation in which

   $$a_2^2 - 4 a_1 \, a_3 < 0.$$

   We come across such differential equations in electrostatics or gravitational potential problems. Such equations are Laplace equations i.e.

   $$\frac{\partial^2 V}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 V}{\partial y^2} = 0$$

   The signification of these equations is that if we transform from x, y co-ordinate to another co-ordinate system by canonical transformation these three properties do not change.

(b) Homogeneous Partial Differential Equations

In these equations the coefficients of differential equations of any order is a constant multiple of the variables of the same degree i.e.

$$x \frac{\partial z}{\partial x} + y \frac{\partial z}{\partial y} + x^2 \frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x^2} - y^2 \frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial y^2} = 0$$

(c) Linear Partial Differential Equations with Constant Coefficients

In these equations the coefficients of the partial derivatives are constant i.e.

$$c_1 r + c_2 s + c_3 t + c_4 p + c_5 q + c_6 z = f(x, y)$$

where $c_1, c_2, \ldots c_6$ are constant of x and y.

By means of transformations we can reduce the homogeneous partial differential equations into those with constant coefficients.

Self Assessment

3. Classify the equation

$$\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x^2} + 3\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x \partial y} + \frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial y^2} = 0$$

into one of the categories i.e. elliptical, hyperbolic or parabolic type.

4. Reduce the equation

$$x^2 \frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x^2} + 2xy\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x \partial y} + y^2 \frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial y^2} = 0$$

to equation with constant coefficients.

9.4 Summary

- Like ordinary differential equations partial differential equations play an important part in understanding certain processes.
- There are various types of partial equations like partial differential equations of first order. It involves only first partial derivatives of the dependent variable.
- Then there are partial differential equations of second or higher order and involve higher order than the first one, derivatives of the dependent variables.
- The most important second order partial differential equations can be either elliptic or parabolic or hyperbolic and play important role in most physical problems.
- In the subsequent units various methods will be given to tackle these types of equations.

9.5 Keyword

The classification of ***partial differential equations*** help us to choose appropriate method for solving these partial differential equations.

9.6 Review Questions

1. Set up partial differential equations by eliminating the constants a and b:

$$y^2\left\{(x-a)^2 + y^2 + 2z\right\} = b$$

2. Set up partial differential equation by eliminating b and a from the following equation

$$z = ax + 3a^2y + b$$

3. Reduce the following equation to an equation having constant coefficients of its derivatives

$$x^2 \frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x^2} - 4xy\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x \partial y} + 4y^2 \frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial y^2} + 6y\frac{\partial z}{\partial y} = x^3y^4$$

Answers: Self Assessment

1. $$\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x^2} - \frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial y^2} = 0$$

2. $p + 3q = 5z + \tan(y - 3x)$

3. Hyperbola

4. $$\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial u^2} + \frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial u \partial v} + \frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial v^2} - \frac{\partial z}{\partial u} - \frac{\partial z}{\partial v} = 0$$

   where $u = \log x$, $v = \log v$

9.7 Further Readings

Books

Piaggio, H.T.H., Differential Equations

Sneddon, L.N., Elements of Partial Differential Equations

Yosida, K., Lectures in Differential and Integral Equations

Unit 10: Cauchy's Problem and Characteristics for First Order Equations

Notes

CONTENTS

Objectives

Introduction

10.1 Cauchy's Problem for First Order Equations

10.2 Cauchy's Method of Characteristics

10.3 Summary

10.4 Keywords

10.5 Review Questions

10.6 Further Readings

Objectives

After studying this unit, you should be able to:

- See that in the differential equation p and q may be of any degree also.
- Understand whether the solution exists for certain types of conditions or not.
- Understand that the partial differential equations can be solved by introducing certain characteristic curves.

Introduction

The method of solution involves the ideas of integral surfaces or curves through which the solution passes.

Thus one can introduce certain parameters and set up the characteristic equations for x, y, z, p and q in terms of these parameters. After solving these equations and eliminating the parameters we can get the solutions.

10.1 Cauchy's Problem for First Order Equations

We know that z is a dependent variable and x, y being independent variables. So the first order partial differential equation can be put into the form

$$\phi(x, y, z, p, q) = 0 \qquad ...(1)$$

Here $p = \dfrac{\partial z}{\partial x}$ and $q = \dfrac{\partial z}{\partial y}$ are partial derivatives. We are interested in seeking the solution of the partial differential equation (1). Before we attempt to find a solution we want to understand whether the solution exists or not. What is meant by the existence theorem which establishes conditions under which we can assert whether or not a given partial differential equation has a solution at all. Also further whether the solution if it exists is unique or not. The conditions to be satisfied in the case of first order partial differential equation are boiled down to the

Notes

classic problem of Cauchy, which in the case of two independent variables may be stated as follows:

Cauchy's Problem

Cauchy's problem is stated as follows:

(a) $x(t)$, $y(t)$, and $z(t)$ are functions which together with their first derivatives $\frac{\partial z}{\partial x}, \frac{\partial z}{\partial y}$ are continuous in the interval M defined by $t_1 < t < t_2$,

(b) And if $\phi(x, y, z, \frac{\partial z}{\partial x}, \frac{\partial z}{\partial y})$ is continuous function of $x, y, z, p = \frac{\partial z}{\partial x}, q = \frac{\partial z}{\partial y}$ in a certain region U of the *xyz pq* space, then it is required to establish the existence of the function $z = f(x, y)$ with the following properties:

(1) $f(x, y)$ and its partial derivatives with respect to x and y are continuous functions of x and y in a region R of the xy space.

(2) For all values of x and y lying in R the point $\{x, y, f(x, y), f_x(x, y), f_y(x, y)\}$ lies in U and

$\phi[x, y, f(x, y), f_x(x, y), f_y(x, y)] = 0$

(3) For all t belonging to the interval M, the point $\{x_0(t), y_0(t)\}$ belongs to the region R and

$$f\{x_0(t), y_0(t)\} = z_0$$

Geometrically stated, what we wish to prove is that there exists a surface $z = f(x, y)$ which passes through the curve Γ whose parametric equations are

$$x = x_0(t),\ y = y_0(t) \text{ and } z = z_0(t) \quad \text{...(1)}$$

and at every point of which the direction $(p, q, -1)$ of the normal is such that

$$\phi\{x, y, z, p, q\} = 0 \quad \text{...(2)}$$

The Cauchy's problem stated above can be formulated in seven other ways. For details you are referred to D. Berstein. To prove the existence of a solution it is necessary to make some more assumptions about the form of the functions and the curve. There are a whole class of existence theorems depending on the nature of these assumptions. However we shall be contented ourselves by quoting one of them as follows.

Theorem: If $g(y)$ and all its derivatives are continuous for $|y - y_0| < \delta$, if x_0 is a given number and $z_0 = g(y_0)$, $q_0 = g'(y_0)$ and if (x, y, z, q) and all its partial derivatives are continuous in a region S defined by

$$|x - x_0| < \delta,\ |y - y_0| < \delta,\ |q - q_0| < \delta$$

then there exists a unique function $\phi(x, y)$ such that:

(a) $\phi(x, y)$ and all its partial derivatives are continuous in a region R defined by $|x - x_0| < \delta_1$, $|y - y_0| < \delta_2$.

(b) For all (x, y) in R, $z = \phi(x, y)$ is a solution of the equation

$$\frac{\partial z}{\partial x} = f(x, y, z, \frac{\partial z}{\partial y})$$

(c) For all values of y in the interval $|y - y_0| < \delta_1$, $\phi(x_0, y) = g(y)$.

At this point we want to say a few words about different kinds of solutions. We may get a relation of the type

$$F(x, y, z, a, b) = 0$$

for the solution of the first order partial differential equation.

Any such relation containing two arbitrary constants a and b and a solution of the partial differential equation of the first order is said to be a complete solution or a complete integral of that equation.

On the other hand any relation of the type

$$F(u, v) = 0$$

involving an arbitrary function F connecting two known functions u and v of x, y and z and providing a solution of the first order partial differential equation is called a general solution or a general integral of that equation.

We shall be dealing with the classifications of the integrals of the first order partial differential equations in the unit 16 in more details.

Self Assessment

1. Eliminate constants a and b from the equation

$$z = (x + a)(y + b)$$

2. Eliminate the arbitrary function f from the equation

$$z = xy + f(x^2 + y^2)$$

10.2 Cauchy's Method of Characteristics

We should now consider a method due to Cauchy for solving the non-linear partial differential equation

$$F(x, y, z, \frac{\partial z}{\partial x}, \frac{\partial z}{\partial y}) = 0 \qquad ...(1)$$

The method is based on geometrical ideas. Equation (1) can be theoretically solved to obtain an expression.

$$q = G(x, y, z, p) \qquad ...(2)$$

from which q is calculated in terms of x, y, z and p. Before proceeding further let us consider a plane passing through a point $P(x_0, y_0, z_0)$ with its normal parallel to the direction n defined by the direction cosines $(p_0, q_0, -1)$. This plane is uniquely specified by the set of numbers $D(x_0, y_0, z_0, p_0, q_0)$. Conversely any such set of five numbers defines a plane in three dimensional space. We now define

A plane element: A set of five numbers $D(x, y, z, p, q)$ is called a plane element of the space.

An integral element: If the plane element (x, y, z, p, q) satisfies an equation

$$F(x, y, z, p, q) = 0 \qquad ...(3)$$

it is called an integral element of the equation (3) at the point (x_0, y_0, z_0).

Thus keeping x_0, y_0 and z_0 fixed and varying p, we obtain a set of plane elements $\{x_0, y_0, z_0, p, G(x_0, y_0, z_0, p)\}$ which depend on the single parameter p. As p varies we obtain a set of plane

Notes

elements, all of which pass through the point P and which therefore envelope a Cone with vertex P; the cone so generated is called **elementary Cone** of equation (3) at the point P (Figure 15.1). Consider now a surface S whose equation is

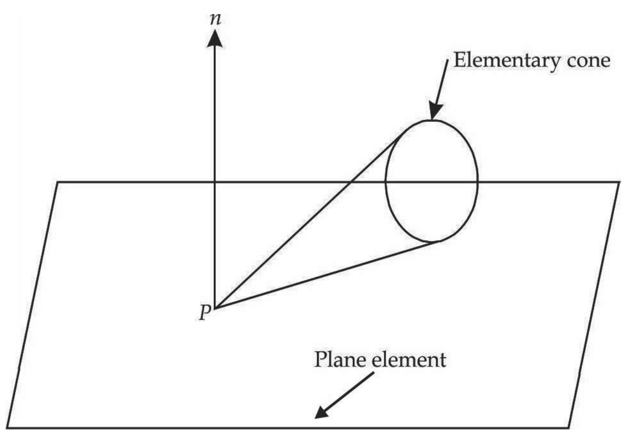
$$z = g(x, y) \qquad ...(4)$$

If the function $g(x, y)$ and its first partial derivatives $g_x(x, y)$, $g_y(x, y)$ are continuous in a certain region R of the xy plane, then the **tangent plane** at each point of S determines a plane element of the type

$$\{x_0, y_0, g(x_0, y_0), g_x(x_0, y_0), g_y(x_0, y_0)\} \qquad ...(5)$$

which we shall call the **tangent element** of the surface S at the point $(x_0, y_0, g(x_0, y_0))$.

Figure 10.1



We now state the following theorem on geometrical ground.

Theorem 1: A necessary and sufficient condition that a surface be an integral surface of a partial differential equation is that at each point its tangent element should touch the elementary cone of the equation.

A curve C with parametric equation

$$x = x(t), y = y(t), z = z(t) \qquad ...(6)$$

lies on the surface (4) if

$$z(t) = g(x(t), y(t));$$

for all values of t in the appropriate interval l. If P_0 is a point on this curve determined by the parameter t_0, then the direction ratios of the tangent line $P_0 P_1$ (See Figure 15.2) are $(x'(t_0), y'(t_0), z'(t_0))$, where $x'(t_0)$ denotes the values of $\frac{dx}{dt}$ when $t = t_0$, etc. This direction will be perpendicular to the direction $(p_0, q_0, -1)$ if

$$z'(t_0) = p_0 x'_0(t_0) + q_0 y'_0(t_0).$$

For this reason we say that any set

$$\{x(t), y(t), z(t), p(t), q(t)\} \qquad ...(7)$$

of five real functions satisfying the conditions

$$z'(t) = p(t) x'(t) + q(t) y'(t) \qquad ...(8)$$

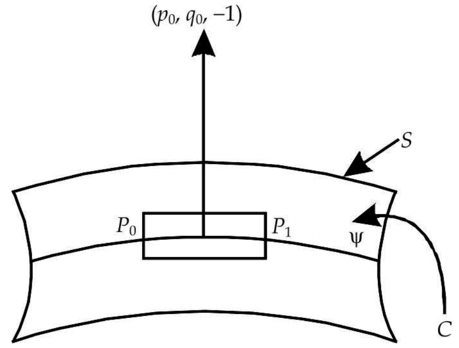
Notes

defines a strip at the point (x, y, z) of the curve C. If such a strip is also an integral element of equation (3), we say that it is an integral strip of equation (3) i.e., the set of functions (7) is an integral strip of equation (3) provided they satisfy condition (8) and the condition

$$F(x(t), y(t), z(t), p(t), q(t)) = 0 \qquad \text{...(9)}$$

for all t in l.

Figure 10.2



If at each point, the curve (6) touches a generator of the elementary cone, we say that the corresponding strip is a characteristic strip. We shall now derive the equations determining a characteristic strip for the point $(x + dx, y + dy, z + dz)$ that lies in the tangent plane to the elementary cone at P.

If $$dz = p\,dx + q\,dy \qquad \text{...(10)}$$

where p and q satisfy (3). Differentiating (10) with respect to p we obtain

$$0 = dx + \frac{dq}{dp}\,dy. \qquad \text{...(11)}$$

Also from (3)

$$\frac{\partial F}{\partial p} + \frac{\partial F}{\partial q}\frac{dq}{dp} = 0 \qquad \text{...(12)}$$

solving the equations (10), (11) and (12) for the ratios of dx, dy, dz and by putting the values of $\frac{dq}{\partial p}$ from (10) into (11), we have

$$\frac{dq}{dp} = -\frac{dx}{dy} = -\frac{\dfrac{\partial F}{\partial p}}{\dfrac{\partial F}{\partial q}}$$

or $$\frac{dx}{\dfrac{\partial F}{\partial p}} = \frac{dy}{\dfrac{\partial F}{\partial q}}$$

Also $$\frac{p\,dx}{p\dfrac{\partial F}{\partial p}} = \frac{q\,dq}{q\dfrac{\partial F}{\partial p}} = \frac{p\,dx + q\,dy}{p\dfrac{\partial F}{\partial p} + q\dfrac{\partial F}{\partial p}} = \frac{dz}{p\dfrac{\partial F}{\partial p} + q\dfrac{\partial F}{\partial p}}$$

Hence $$\frac{dx}{\dfrac{\partial F}{\partial p}} = \frac{dy}{\dfrac{\partial F}{\partial p}} = \frac{dz}{p\dfrac{\partial F}{\partial p} + q\dfrac{\partial F}{\partial p}} \quad ...(13)$$

that means that along a characteristic strip, $x'(t)$, $y'(t)$, $z'(t)$ must be proportional to F_p, F_q, $p\,F_p + q\,F_q$ respectively. If we choose the parameter t in such a way that

$$x'(t) = F_p, \quad y'(t) = F_q \quad ...(14)$$

then $$z'(t) = p\,F_p + q\,F_q$$

along a characteristic strip p is a function of t so that

$$p'(t) = \frac{\partial p}{\partial x}x'(t) + \frac{\partial p}{\partial y}y'(t)$$

$$= \frac{\partial p}{\partial x}\frac{\partial F}{\partial p} + \frac{\partial p}{\partial y}\frac{\partial F}{\partial q}$$

$$= \frac{\partial p}{\partial x}\frac{\partial F}{\partial p} + \frac{\partial q}{\partial x}\frac{\partial F}{\partial q}. \qquad \left(\text{Since } \frac{\partial p}{\partial y} = \frac{\partial q}{\partial x}\right)$$

Differentiating equation (3) with respect to x, we find that

$$\frac{\partial F}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial F}{\partial z}p + \frac{\partial F}{\partial p}\frac{\partial p}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial F}{\partial q}\frac{\partial q}{\partial x} = 0$$

so that on a characteristic strip

$$p'(t) = -(F_x + p\,F_z) \quad ...(16)$$

and it can be shown similarly that

$$q'(t) = -(F_y + q\,F_z) \quad ...(17)$$

Collecting equations (14) to (17), we see that we have the following system of five ordinary differential equations for the determination of the characteristic strip

$$x'(t) = F_p,\ y'(t) = F_q,\ z'(t) = p\,F_p + q\,F\,q'$$

$$p'(t) = -(F_x + p\,F_z),\ q'(t) = -(F_y + q\,F_z) \quad ...(18)$$

These equations are known as the characteristic equations of the differential equation (3).

The main theorem about characteristic strip is:

Theorem 2: Along every characteristic strip of the equation $F(x, y, z, p, q) = 0$, the function $F(x, y, z, p, q)$ is a constant.

The proof is a matter simply of calculation. Along a characteristic strip we have

$$\frac{d}{dt}F(x(t), y(t), z(t), p(t), q(t)) = F_x x' + F_y y' + F_z z' + F_p p' + F_q q'$$

$$= F_x F_p + F_y F_q - F_z(p F_p + q F_q) - F_p(F_x + p F_z) - F_q(F_y + q F_z) = 0$$

So that $F(x, y, z, p, q) = k$, is a constant along the strip.

Theorem 3: If a characteristic strip contains at least one integral element of $F(x, y, z, p, q) = 0$, it is an integral strip of the equation $F(x, y, z, p, q) = 0$.

We are now in a position to solve Cauchy's problem. Suppose we want to find the solution of the partial differential equation (1) which passes through a curve Γ whose freedom equations are

$$x = \theta(\nu),\ y = \phi(\nu),\ z = \chi(\nu) \qquad ...(19)$$

then in the solution

$$x = x(p_0, q_0, x_0, y_0, z_0, t_0, t) \text{ etc.,} \qquad ...(20)$$

and in the characteristic equations (18) we may take

$$x_0 = \theta(\nu),\ y_0 = \phi(\nu),\ z_0 = \chi(\nu)$$

as the initial values of x, y, z. The corresponding initial values of θ, ϕ, χ are determined by the relations

$$\chi' = p_0\,\theta'(\nu) + q_0\,\phi'(\nu)$$

$$F(\theta(\nu), \phi(\nu), \chi(\nu), p_0, q_0) = 0$$

We substitute these values of x_0, y_0, z_0, p_0, q_0 and the appropriate value of t_o in equation (20), and find that x, y, z can be expressed in terms of two parameters t, ν to give

$$x = X(\nu, t),\ y = Y(\nu, t),\ z = Z(\nu, t) \qquad ...(21)$$

Eliminating ν, t from these equations, we get a relation

$$\psi(x, y, z) = 0$$

which is the equation of the integral surface of equation (1) through the curve Γ. We shall illustrate this procedure by an example.

Example: Find the solution of the equation

$$F = \frac{1}{2}(p^2 - q^2) + (p - x)(q - y) - z \qquad ...(1)$$

that passes through the x-axis.

It is readily shown that the initial values are

$$x_0 = \nu,\ y_0 = 0,\ z_0 = 0,\ p_0 = 0,\ q_0 = 2\nu,\ t_0 = 0, \qquad ...(2)$$

The characteristic equations of this partial differential equations are

$$x'(t) = F_p,\ \ y'(t)\ F_q,\ \ z'(t) = p\,F_p + q\,F_q$$

$$p'(t) = -F_x - p\,F_z,\ \ q'(t) = -F_y - q\,F_z \qquad ...(3)$$

$$F_p = \frac{\partial F}{\partial p} = p + q - y,\ \ F_q = \frac{\partial F}{\partial q} = -q + p - x$$

$$F_x = \frac{\partial F}{\partial x} = -q + y,\ \ F_y = \frac{\partial F}{\partial y} = -p + x,\ F_z = -1 \qquad ...(4)$$

Substituting these values of partial derivatives of F in equations (3) we have

Notes

$$x'(t) = p + q - y,\ y'(t) = p - q - x,\ z'(t) = p(p + q - y) + q(p - q - x)$$

$$p'(t) = q - y + p,\ \ q'(t) = p - x + q \qquad ...(5)$$

Now $\quad x'(t) = p'(t)$, which gives $x = p + \alpha$, so that $t = 0$

$$x = \nu,\ p = 0, \text{ so } x = \nu + p \qquad ...(6)$$

similarly $\quad y = q - 2\nu \qquad ...(7)$

Also, it is readily shown that

$$\frac{d}{dt}(p + q - x) = q - y + p + p - x + q - p - q + y$$

$$= p + q - x$$

So $\quad \dfrac{d(p+q-x)}{p+q-x} = dt$

On integrating we get

$$\log(p + q - x) = t + \log c_1$$

or $\quad p + q - x = c_1 e^t \qquad ...(8)$

At $\quad t = 0, p = 0, q = 0, x = \nu$ we get $c_1 = +\nu$

therefore $\quad p + q - x = +\nu e^t \qquad ...(9)$

Similarly

$$\frac{d}{dt}(p+q-y) = p + q - y + p + q - p - x - p - q + x = p + q - y$$

or $\quad \dfrac{d}{dt}(p+q-y) = p + q - y \qquad ...(10)$

On integrating (10) we get

$$p + q - y = 2\nu e^t \qquad ...(11)$$

the constant of integration being 2ν.

From (6) and (9) we have

$$q = \nu e^t - p + x$$

or $\quad q = \nu e^t + \nu = \nu (e^t + 1) \qquad ...(12)$

From (7) we have

$$y = q - 2\nu = \nu (e^t - 1) \qquad ...(13)$$

From (11) we have

$$p = 2\nu e^t - q + y$$

$$= 2\nu e^t - \nu (e^t + 1) + \nu (e^t - 1)$$

or $\quad p = 2\nu (e^t - 1) \qquad ...(14)$

Finally from (6)

$$x = p + \nu = 2\nu\,(e^t - 1) + \nu$$

or $$x = \nu\,(2e^t - 1) \qquad ...(15)$$

Substituting these values of x, y, p, q in the equation for $z'(t)$, we have

$$\frac{dz}{dt} = 2\nu\,(e^t - 1)\,(2\nu\, e^t) + \nu\,(e^t + 1)\,(\nu e^t)$$

or $$\frac{dz}{dt} = 5\nu^2\, e^{2t} - 3\nu^2\, e^t \qquad ...(16)$$

on Integration of (16) we have

$$z = \frac{5\nu^2}{2}\,(e^{2t} - 1) - 3\nu^2\,(e^t - 1) \qquad ...(17)$$

From (13) and (15)

$$x - 2y = \nu\,(2e^t - 1) - 2\nu\,(e^t - 1)$$

or $$x - 2y = \nu, \qquad ...(18)$$

and $$y - x = \nu\,(e^t - 1) - \nu\,(2e^t - 1)$$

$$y - x = -\,\nu\, e^t$$

so using (18) we have by eliminating ν, we get

$$e^t = \frac{y-x}{2y-x} \qquad ...(19)$$

Substituting these values of e^t and ν into equation (17) we have

$$z = \frac{5}{2}(x-2y)^2\left(\left(\frac{y-x}{2y-x}\right)^2 - 1\right) - 3(x-2y)^2\left(\frac{y-x}{2y-x} - 1\right)$$

$$= \frac{5}{2}(y-x)^2 - \frac{5}{2}(x-2y)^2 + 3(y-x)(x-2y) + 3(x-2y)^2$$

$$= \frac{5}{2}(y-x)^2 + \frac{1}{2}(x-2y)^2 - 3(y-x)^2 - 3y(y-x)$$

$$= -\frac{1}{2}(y^2 - 2yx + x^2) + \frac{1}{2}(x^2 - 4xy + 4y^2) - 3y^2 + 3xy$$

$$= -\frac{3}{2}y^2 + 2xy = \frac{1}{2}y(4x - 3y)$$

or $$z = \frac{y}{2}(4x - 3y) \qquad ...(20)$$

is the solution of the equation (1).

Self Assessment

3. Find the characteristics of the equation

   $pq = z,$

   and determine the integral surface which passes through the parabola $x = 0$, $y^2 = z$.

10.3 Summary

- Cauchy's problem is the question to be asked, if the given differential equation solution exists.
- The conditions are given in which the solution does exist.
- Cauchy's characteristics equations are set up which help in the solution of the partial differential equations.

10.4 Keywords

Depending upon the values of the parameters the solution of a particular ***partial differential equation*** represents various integral surfaces as well as certain curves.

The characteristic method of Cauchy helps in finding a particular solution passing through certain curves or surfaces.

10.5 Review Questions

1. Eliminate b and c from the equation

   $z = b^2(x + y) + b\,xy + c$

2. Eliminate the function ϕ from the equation

   $\phi(x^2 - y^2, x^2 - z^2) = 0$

Answers: Self Assessment

1. $pq = z$
2. $yp - xq + x^2 - y^2 = 0$
3. $x = 2\nu\,(e^t - 1)$, $y = 1/2\,\nu\,(e^t + 1)$, $z = \nu^2 e^{2t}$, $16z = (4y + x)^2$

10.6 Further Readings

Books

Piaggio H.T.H., Differential Equations

Sneddon L.N., Elements of Partial Differential Equations

Unit 11: Classifications of Integrals of the First Order Partial Differential Equations

Notes

CONTENTS

Objectives

Introduction

11.1 Geometrical Theorems

11.2 Classes of Integrals of a Partial Differential Equation

11.3 General Integrals

11.4 Singular Integrals

11.5 Summary

11.6 Keyword

11.7 Review Questions

11.8 Further Readings

Objectives

After studying this unit, you should be able to:

- Know various methods of finding the solution of the first order partial differential equation.
- See that the solution may consists of two arbitrary constants and this type of solution is called complete integral of the solution.
- Come to know that there are solutions which can be written in terms of an arbitrary function. Such a solution is called a general integral. There is a typical solution also that is called a singular solution.

Introduction

The types of integrals can be complete integrals that depend upon two arbitrary constants.

There is a general integral of the solution of partial differential equation that is expressed in terms of one arbitrary constant or function.

Then there is a singular integral which is an other solution of the partial differential equation.

11.1 Geometrical Theorems

In this unit we shall be concerned mainly with equations of geometrical interest and seek the solutions of various partial differential equations as integrals of various forms, general integrals, complete integrals, particular integrals and singular integrals and their geometrical interpretation.

For this purpose it is advisable to revise the following two geometrical theorems.

Theorem 1: The direction-cosines of the normal to the surface $f(x, y, z) = 0$ at the point (x, y, z) are in the ratio

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x} : \frac{\partial f}{\partial y} : \frac{\partial f}{\partial z}$$

Also $\quad \dfrac{\partial f}{\partial x}\Big|\dfrac{\partial f}{\partial z} = \dfrac{\partial z}{\partial x} = p$

and $\quad -\dfrac{\partial f}{\partial y}\Big|\dfrac{\partial f}{\partial z} = \dfrac{\partial z}{\partial y} = q$

The symbols p, q are to be understood as here defined.

Theorem 2: The envelope of the system of surfaces

$$f(x, y, z, a, b) = 0,$$

where a, b are variable parameters, is found by eliminating a and b by using the given relation and $\dfrac{\partial f}{\partial a} = 0, \dfrac{\partial f}{\partial b} = 0.$

Example 1: Let us consider the equation

$$x^2 + y^2 + (z - c)^2 = a^2 \qquad ...(1)$$

which contains two constants a and c. This equation represents the set of all spheres whose centers lie along the z-axis. If we differentiate the equation (1) with respect to x, we obtain the relation

$$2x + 2(z - c)\frac{\partial z}{\partial x} = 0 \qquad ...(2)$$

And if we differentiate the equation (1) with respect to y. We obtain the relation

$$2y + 2(z - c)\frac{\partial z}{\partial y} = 0 \qquad ...(3)$$

Eliminating (c) from equations (2) and (3) we have

$$2x\frac{\partial z}{\partial y} - 2y\frac{\partial z}{\partial x} = 0$$

or

$$xq - yp = 0 \qquad ...(4)$$

where $p = \dfrac{\partial z}{\partial x}$ and $q = \dfrac{\partial z}{\partial y}$. The equation (4) is a first order partial differential equation and is linear.

We can show that there are other geometrical entities other than the set of all spheres with centers along the z-axis which can be described by the equation (4).

Let us consider the equation

$$x^2 + y^2 = (z - c)^2 \tan^2 \alpha \qquad ...(5)$$

in which the constants c and α are arbitrary. Differentiating (5) with respect to x and y, we get the relations

$$p(z - c)\tan^2 \alpha = x,\ q(z - c)\tan^2 \alpha = y \qquad ...(6)$$

Eliminating the constant c and α we get the equation (4).

We see that the common things among these two surfaces of revolution (1) and (5) is that they have the line OZ as the axis of symmetry. So if we simply take the equation

$$z = f(x^2 + y^2) \qquad \text{...(7)}$$

where the function f is arbitrary and again differentiate (7) with respect to x and y separately we get

$$\frac{\partial z}{\partial x} = p = 2xf', \frac{\partial z}{\partial y} = 2yf' \qquad \text{...(8)}$$

where $f' = \dfrac{\partial f}{\partial u}$ and $u = x^2 + y^2$. So after eliminating f from (8)

we get $$py - qx = 0 \qquad \text{...(4)}$$

Thus we see that the function z defined by each of the equations (1), (5) and (7), is in some sense a solution of the equation.

We now interpret the argument slightly. The relation (1) and (5) are both of the type

$$F(x, y, z, a, b) = 0 \qquad \text{...(9)}$$

where a and b denote arbitrary constants. If we differentiate this equation with respect to x and y respectively. We obtain the relations

$$\frac{\partial F}{\partial x} + p\frac{\partial F}{\partial z} = 0, \quad \frac{\partial F}{\partial y} + q\frac{\partial F}{\partial z} = 0 \qquad \text{...(10)}$$

The set of equations (9) and (10) constitute three equations involving two arbitrary constants a and b. It will be possible to eliminate a and b from these equations to obtain a relation of the kind

$$f(x, y, z, p, q) = 0 \qquad \text{...(11)}$$

showing that the system of surfaces gives rise to a partial differential equation (11) of the first order.

The obvious generalization of the equation (7) is a relation between x, y, z of the type

$$F(u, v) = 0 \qquad \text{...(12)}$$

where u and v are functions of x, y and z and F is an arbitrary function of u and v. If we differentiate (12) with respect to x and y respectively, we obtain the relations

$$\frac{\partial F}{\partial u}\left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial u}{\partial z}p\right) + \frac{\partial F}{dv}\left(\frac{\partial \text{v}}{\partial x} + p\frac{\partial v}{\partial z}\right) = 0$$

$$\frac{\partial F}{\partial u}\left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial y} + q\frac{\partial u}{\partial z}\right) + \frac{\partial F}{dv}\left(\frac{\partial v}{\partial y} + q\frac{\partial v}{\partial z}\right) = 0$$

and if we eliminate $\dfrac{\partial F}{\partial u}$ and $\dfrac{\partial F}{dv}$ from these equations, we obtain the equation

$$\frac{\partial F}{\partial u}\left\{\left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial u}{\partial z}p\right)\left(\frac{\partial v}{\partial y} + q\frac{\partial v}{\partial z}\right) - \left(\frac{\partial v}{\partial x} + p\frac{\partial v}{\partial z}\right)\left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial y} + q\frac{\partial u}{\partial y}\right)\right\} = 0$$

Notes

or $$p\left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial z}\frac{\partial v}{\partial y}-\frac{\partial v}{\partial z}\frac{\partial u}{\partial y}\right)+q\left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial x}\frac{\partial v}{\partial z}-\frac{\partial v}{\partial x}\frac{\partial u}{\partial z}\right)+\frac{\partial u}{\partial x}\frac{\partial v}{\partial y}-\frac{\partial v}{\partial x}\frac{\partial u}{\partial y}=0$$

$$p\frac{\partial(u,v)}{\partial(y,z)}+q\frac{\partial(u,v)}{\partial(z,x)}=\frac{\partial(u,v)}{\partial(x,y)} \qquad ...(13)$$

which is partial differential equation of the type (11). It should be noted that equation (13) is a linear partial differential equation i.e. the powers of p and q are both unity. Whereas the partial differentiation equation (11) need not be linear. To see that consider the equation

$$(x-a)^2+(y-b)^2+z^2 = 1 \qquad ...(14)$$

Differentiating (14) with respect to x and y separately, we have

$$2(x-a)+2zp=0, \quad 2(y-b)+2zq=0$$

Substituting the values of $(x-a)$ and $(y-b)$ in equation (14) we have

$$z^2p^2+z^2q^2+z^2=1 \text{ or } z^2(p^2+q^2+1)=1. \qquad ...(15)$$

So powers of p and q are not one.

Example 2: Eliminate the constants a and b from

$$2z = (ax+y)^2+b \qquad ...(1)$$

Solution: Differentiate with respect to x we have

$$2\frac{\partial z}{\partial x} = 2p=2a(ax+y)$$

Differentiating (1) with respect to y we have

$$2\frac{\partial z}{\partial y} = 2q=2(ax+y)$$

or
$$p = a(ax+y) \qquad ...(2)$$
$$q = (ax+y) \qquad ...(3)$$
$$px+qy = ax(ax+y)+y(ax+y)$$
$$= (ax+y)^2=q^2$$

or $$px+qy = q^2$$

is the answer.

Example 3: Eliminate the arbitrary function f from the equation

$$z = f\left(\frac{xy}{z}\right) \qquad ...(4)$$

Differentiating with respect to x and y respectively we have

$$\frac{\partial z}{\partial x}=p = f'\left(\frac{y}{z}-\frac{xy}{z^2}p\right) \qquad ...(15)$$

and $$q = \frac{dz}{dy} = f'\left(\frac{x}{z} - \frac{xy}{z^2}q\right) \qquad ...(16)$$

so $$\frac{p}{q} = \frac{yz - xyp}{xz - xyq}$$

or $$pxz - xypq = yzq - xypq$$

or $$z(px - qy) = 0$$

is the answer.

Self Assessment

1. Eliminate the constants a and b from the equation

   $ax^2 + by^2 + z^2 = 1$

2. Eliminate the arbitrary function from the equation

   $F(x^2 + y^2 + z^2, z^2 - 2xy) = 0$

11.2 Classes of Integrals of a Partial Differential Equation

Let us consider the partial differential equation of the form

$$F(x, y, z, p, q) = 0 \qquad ...(1)$$

in which the function F is not necessarily linear in p and q. We saw earlier that the solution involving two parameter system of equation can be of the form

$$f(x, y, z, a, b) = 0 \qquad ...(2)$$

Any envelope of the system (2) must also be a solution of the differential equation (1). In this way we are led to three classes of integrals of a partial differential equation of type (1):

(a) Two parameter systems of surfaces $f(x, y, z, a, b) = 0$.

Such an integral is called **complete integral**.

(b) If we take any one parameter subsystem

$$f(x, y, z, a, \phi(a)) = 0$$

of the system (2) and form its envelope, we obtain a solution of equation (1). When the function $\phi(a)$ which defines the subsystem is arbitrary, the solution obtained is called general integral of (1) corresponding to the complete integral (2).

When a definite function $\phi(a)$ is used we obtain a particular case of the general integral.

(c) If the envelope of the two parameter system (2) exists, it is also a solution of the equation (1), it is called the singular integral of the equation.

Example 1: Show that

$$z = ax + by + a^2 + b^2 \qquad ...(1)$$

is the complete integral of partial differential equation

$$z = px + qy + p^2 + q^2 \qquad ...(2)$$

Differentiate (1) with respect to x we have

$$p = a \quad \text{...(3)}$$

Also differentiate (1) with respect to y we have

$$\frac{\partial z}{\partial y} = q = b \quad \text{...(4)}$$

Substituting the values of a and b from (3) and (4) into the equation (1) we have

$$z = px + qy + p^2 + q^2 \quad \text{...(2)}$$

so equation (1) having two arbitrary constants a and b is the complete integral of partial differential equation (2).

Differentiating (1) with respect to a and b respectively,

we get

and
$$\left.\begin{matrix} 0 = x + 2a \\ 0 = y + 2b \end{matrix}\right\} \quad \text{...(5)}$$

Substituting the values of a and b in (1) we have

$$Z = -\frac{x^2}{2} - \frac{y^2}{2} + \frac{x^2}{4} + \frac{y^2}{4}$$

$$4Z = -(x^2 + y^2) \quad \text{...(6)}$$

To see whether equation (6) satisfies (2) we have

$$\left.\begin{matrix} 4p = -2x \\ 4q = -2y \end{matrix}\right\}$$

Substituting in R.H.S. of (2) we have

$$-\frac{x^2}{2} - \frac{y^2}{2} + \frac{x^2}{4} + \frac{y^2}{4} = -\frac{(x^2 + y^2)}{4} = z = \text{L.H.S.}$$

So equation (6) satisfies equation (2).

Equation (6) represents a paraboloid of revolution, the envelops of all the planes represented by the complete integral. Equation (6) represents singular integral.

Example 2: Show that

$$Z = be^{ax + a^2y} \quad \text{...(1)}$$

is the complete integral of partial differential equation

$$p^2 = zy \quad \text{...(2)}$$

Differentiating (1) w.r.t. x, y respectively

$$\frac{\partial z}{\partial x} = p = bae^{ax+a^2y} \quad \text{...(3)}$$

$$\frac{\partial z}{\partial y} = q = ba^2e^{ax+a^2y} \quad \text{...(4)}$$

Notes

$$p^2 = b^2a^2e^{2ax+2a^2y}$$

$$qz = b^2a^2e^{2ax+2a^2y}$$

Thus $$p^2 = qz \quad ...(2)$$

So (1) is the complete integral of partial differential equation (2) since it has two arbitrary constants.

Differentiating (2) w.r.t. p and q, we get

$$2p = 0 \quad ...(5)$$

and $$z = 0 \quad ...(6)$$

Eliminating p, q from (2), (5) and (6) we have

$$z = 0$$

It satisfies equation (2). So it is a singular integral. Also if we put $b = 0$ in (1) we get

$$z = 0$$

So $z = 0$ is both a singular as well as a particular solution.

Self Assessment

3. Show that $F = ax + by + a^2 + ab + b^2 - z = 0$

   is the complete integral of the partial differential equation

   $Z = px + qy + p^2 + pq + q^2$

   and find the singular integral

4. Show that

   $F = ax + by + \frac{1}{2}a^2b^2 - Z = 0$

   is the complete integral of the partial differential equation

   $Z = px + qy + \frac{1}{2}p^2q^2$

   Find the singular integral of this partial differential equation.

11.3 General Integrals

Consider the partial differential equation of the first order

$$F(x, y, z, p, q) = 0 \quad ...(1)$$

If on integration we get a solution of the form

$$f(u, v) = 0 \quad ...(2)$$

where u and v are functions of x, y, z we call it a general integral. This will be illustrated by means of the following example.

Notes

Example: Find the partial differential equation for the general integral

$$f(x^2 + y^2, z) = 0 \quad ...(3)$$

Let $u = x^2 + y^2 = \text{constant}$

$v = z = \text{constant}$

Now differentiating (3) with respect to x

We have $$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x} = \frac{\partial f}{\partial u}.\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial f}{\partial v}.\frac{\partial v}{\partial x}$$

$$= \frac{\partial f}{\partial u}.(2x) + \frac{\partial f}{\partial v}\left(\frac{\partial z}{\partial x}\right)$$

or $$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x} = 2x\frac{\partial f}{\partial u} + p\frac{\partial f}{\partial v} = 0 \qquad (\text{where } p = \frac{\partial z}{\partial x}) \quad ...(4)$$

Again differentiating (3) with respect to y, we have

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial y} = \frac{\partial f}{\partial u}.\frac{\partial u}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial f}{\partial v}.\frac{\partial v}{\partial y} = 0$$

or $$\frac{\partial f}{\partial y} = 2y\frac{\partial f}{\partial u} + q\frac{\partial f}{\partial v} = 0 \qquad (\text{where } q = \frac{\partial z}{\partial y}) \quad ...(5)$$

To solve (4) and (5) we get a condition on the coefficients of the partial derivatives $\frac{\partial f}{\partial u}, \frac{\partial f}{\partial v},$ as

$$2xq - 2yp = 0$$

or $$xq - yp = 0 \quad ...(6)$$

which is the required partial differential equation.

Now from (3) we can write the

$$z = \alpha(x^2 + y^2 + \beta) \quad ...(7)$$

We now show that (7) is also the solution of (3). To show this let us eliminate α and β from (7). Now

$$\frac{\partial z}{\partial x} = p = 2\alpha x$$

$$\frac{\partial z}{\partial y} = q = 2\alpha y$$

$\therefore$ $$\frac{p}{q} = \frac{x}{y}$$

or $$xq - yp = 0$$

The solution (7) of (6) has two unknown constants and so (7) is the complete solution of the equation (6).

Equation (7) denotes the surfaces all of whose normals intersect the axis of z.

To find singular solution let us put $\beta = \alpha^2$ in equation (7) and put

$$Z = a(x^2 + y^2) + \alpha^2 \quad ...(8)$$

To find α differentiate (8) with respect to α, i.e.

$$0 = (x^2 + y^2) + 2\alpha$$

or
$$\alpha = -\frac{(x^2+y^2)}{2} \qquad ...(9)$$

Eliminating α from (8) we have

$$4Z = -(x^2 + y^2)^2 \qquad ...(10)$$

Self Assessment

5. Eliminate the arbitrary function ϕ from the equation

$$\phi\left(\frac{y}{2}, (x^2+y^2+z^2)/z\right) = 0$$

11.4 Singular Integrals

The complete integral of a partial differential equation represents a family of surfaces. If these surfaces have an envelope, its equation is called a singular integral. To see that this is really an integral we have merely to notice that at any point of the envelope there is a surface of the family touching it. Therefore the normals to the envelope and this surface coincide, so the values of p and q at any point of the envelope are the same as that of some surface of the family and therefore it satisfies the same equation.

The working rule for finding out the singular integral is to start with the complete integral of the form

$$f(x, y, z, p, q, a, b) = 0 \qquad ...(1)$$

Differentiate (1) with respect to a and b i.e.

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial a} = 0 \qquad ...(2)$$

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial b} = 0 \qquad ...(3)$$

and eliminate a, b, from (1), (2) and (3) to get the envelope.

or by eliminating p and q from the differential equation.

$$F(x, y, z, p, q) = 0 \qquad ...(4)$$

And two derived equations

$$\frac{\partial F}{\partial p} = 0 \qquad ...(5)$$

$$\frac{\partial F}{\partial q} = 0 \qquad ...(6)$$

One should test whether the singular integral obtained really satisfies the differential equation.

Example: Verify that

$$Z = ax + by + a - b - ab \qquad ...(7)$$

is a complete integral of the partial differential equation

$$Z = px + qy + p - q - pq \qquad ...(8)$$

Also find the singular integral.

Solution: Differentiate (7) with respect to a and b respectively, i.e.,

$$0 = x + 1 - b \qquad ...(9)$$

$$0 = y - 1 - a \qquad ...(10)$$

So $\quad a = y - 1, b = x + 1$

Substituting values of a and b in (7) we have

$$z = x(y-1) + y(x+1) + y - 1 - x - 1 - (y-1)(x+1)$$

Simplifying, we have

$$z = xy - x + y - 1$$

as singular integral. Differentiating (7) with respect to x and y separately we have $\frac{\partial Z}{\partial x} = p = a, \frac{\partial Z}{\partial y} = q = b,$ substituting in (7)

we have

$$z = px + qy + p - q - pq$$

which is just equation (8). So (7) is the complete integral of (8).

Self Assessment

6. Find the singular integral for the differential equation

   $Z = px + qy + p/q$

11.5 Summary

- The partial differential equation of the first order can be a function of x, y, z and the partial derivatives of z i.e., $\frac{\partial z}{\partial x} = p$ and $\frac{\partial z}{\partial y} = q$.
- The differential equation can have a solution depending upon two unknown constants. Such a solution is called complete integral.
- If we substitute some fixed values for the constants we get particular integral.
- On the other hand if we get the solution of the equation in the form

  $$\phi(u, v) = 0$$

  where u, v are known functions of x, y, z then we get a general solution.

11.6 Keyword

By varying the two ***arbitrary constants*** we can get various integrals or solutions of the partial differential equations. It is advisable to visualize geometrically the integral surfaces or integral curves.

11.7 Review Questions

1. Eliminate the arbitrary constants a, b from the equation

   $zx = ax + by - a^2b$

2. Show that

   $z^2 = ax^2 + by^2 - 3a^2 + b^2$

   is the complete integral of the equation

   $(z - px - qy)x^3y^2 = q^2zx^3 - 3p^2z^2y^2$

   Find the singular integral.

Answers: Self Assessment

1. $z(px - qy) - z^2 + 1 = 0$

2. $z(q - p) + y - x = 0$

5. $(y^2 + z^2 - x^2)p - 2xyq + 2xz = 0$

6. $zx = -y$

11.8 Further Readings

Books

Piaggio, H.T.H., Differential Equations

Sneddon, L.N., Elements of Partial Differential Equations

Yosida, K., Lectures in Differential and Integral Equations

Unit 12: Lagrange's Methods for Solving Partial Differential Equations

CONTENTS

Objectives

Introduction

12.1 Linear Partial Differential Equations of the First Order

12.2 Lagrange's Method of Solutions

12.3 Illustrative Examples

12.4 Some Special Types of Equations

12.5 Summary

12.6 Keywords

12.7 Review Questions

12.8 Further Readings

Objectives

After studying this unit, you should be able to:

- Understand that Lagrange's method involves one dependent variable and two or more independent variables in the differential equation.
- See that in the method the technique involved is similar to that which occurs in total differential equation.
- Know how to study some special methods of solving non-linear partial differential equations.

Introduction

Lagrange's method is quite suitable to linear differential equations involving more than two independent variables.

Four different methods are also listed to deal with special types of differential equations.

12.1 Linear Partial Differential Equations of the First Order

Let $p = \frac{\partial z}{\partial x}$ and $q = \frac{\partial z}{\partial y}$.

Then the linear partial differential equations involving z as dependent and x, y as independent variables are of the form

$$Pp + Qq = R \qquad \text{... (1)}$$

where P, Q and R are given functions of x, y and z and they do not involve p and q. The first systematic theory of equations of this type was given by Lagrange. Equation (1) is frequently referred to as *Lagrange's equation*.

Notes

Note: If generalised to n independent variables, obviously the equation is

$$P_1p_2 + P_2p_2 + P_3p_3 + ... + P_np_n = R \quad ... (2)$$

where $P_1, P_2, ... P_n, R$ are functions of n independent variables $x_1, x_2, ... x_n$ and a dependent variable f; $p_i = \frac{\partial f}{\partial x_i}$, ($i = 1, 2, ... n$).

It should be noted that the term 'linear' in the section means that p and q (or, in general case p_1, ... p_n) appear to the first degree only, but P, Q and R may be any functions of x, y and z.

12.2 Lagrange's Method of Solutions

The Lagrange's equation is

$$Pp + Qq = R \quad ... (1)$$

where P, Q, R are functions of x, y, z. Suppose

$$u = f(x, y, z) = a \quad ... (2)$$

is a relation that satisfies (1). Differentiating (2) with respect to x, y,

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial u}{\partial z}\frac{\partial z}{\partial x} = 0,$$

And $$\frac{\partial u}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial u}{\partial z}\frac{\partial z}{\partial y} = 0$$

or $$\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial u}{\partial z}p = 0$$

and $$\frac{\partial u}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial u}{\partial z}q = 0$$

Hence $$p = -\frac{\frac{\partial u}{\partial x}}{\frac{\partial u}{\partial z}} \text{ and } q = -\frac{\frac{\partial u}{\partial y}}{\frac{\partial u}{\partial z}}$$

Substituting these values of p and q in (1) changes it to

$$P\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + Q\frac{\partial u}{\partial y} + R\frac{\partial u}{\partial z} = 0 \quad ... (2)$$

Therefore, if $u = a$ be an integral of (1), $u = a$ also satisfies (2). Conversely if $u = a$ be an integral of (2), it is also an integral of (1). This can be seen by dividing by $\frac{\partial u}{\partial z}$ and substituting p and q for the values above. Therefore equation (2) can be taken as equivalent to equation (1).

We have shown in unit (8) that $u = a$ and $v = b$ are independent solution of the system of equations

$$\frac{dx}{P} = \frac{dy}{Q} = \frac{dz}{R} \quad ... (3)$$

Notes

then $\phi(u, v) = 0$ is a general integral.

Hence we have the following rule:

To obtain an integral of the linear equation of the form (1), find two independent integrals of equation (3). Let they be denoted by $u = a$ and $v = b$, then $\phi(u, v) = 0$, where ϕ is an arbitrary function, is an integral of the partial differential equation. Equations (3) are called subsidiary equations.

The solution may also be written in the form

$$u = f(\nu) \qquad \text{... (4)}$$

where f denotes an arbitrary function of v.

This is known as Lagrange's solution of the linear equation.

The method given above can be extended to the general equation of the form

$$P_1 \frac{\partial z}{\partial x_1} + P_2 \frac{\partial z}{\partial x_2} + \ldots\ldots + P_n \frac{\partial_z}{\partial x_n} = R \qquad \text{... (5)}$$

where $P_1, P_2, \ldots P_n, R$ are functions of $(x_1, x_2, \ldots x_n, z)$. To solve equation (5) we write the subsidiary equations

$$\frac{dx_1}{P_1} = \frac{dx_2}{P_2} = \ldots\ldots = \frac{dx_n}{P_n} \qquad \text{... (6)}$$

and find n independent integrals of this system of these subsidiary equations, in the form

$$u_1 = c_1, u_2 = c_2, u_3 = c_3, \ldots u_n = c_n \qquad \text{... (7)}$$

then the integral of the given equation (5) is

$$\phi\,(u_1, u_2, \ldots u_n) = 0 \qquad \text{... (8)}$$

12.3 Illustrative Examples

Example 1: Solve

$$(mz - ny)\, p + (nx - lz)\, q = ly - mx \qquad \text{... (1)}$$

Solution:

Here $P = mz - ny$

$Q = nx - lz$

$R = ly - mx$

The subsidiary equations are

$$\frac{dx}{mz - ny} = \frac{dy}{nx - lz} = \frac{dz}{ly - mx} \qquad \text{... (2)}$$

or $$\frac{\ell\, dx}{\ell(mz - ny)} = \frac{mdy}{m(nx - \ell z)} = \frac{ndz}{n(\ell y - mx)}$$

or $$\frac{\ell dx + mdy + ndz}{\ell mz - \ell ny + mnx - m\ell z + n\ell y - nmx} = \frac{\ell dx + mdy + ndz}{O}$$

Notes

So $\ell\, dx + m\, dy + n\, dz = 0$ ... (3)

On integrating (3) we have

$$\ell x + my + nz = a = u \text{ (say)} \quad \text{... (4)}$$

Again from (2)

$$\frac{xdx}{x(mz-ny)} = \frac{ydy}{y(nx-\ell z)} = \frac{zdz}{z(\ell y - mx)}$$

or $$\frac{xdx+ydy+zdz}{mxz-nxy+nxy-\ell yz+\ell zy-mxz} = \frac{xdx+ydy+zdz}{O}$$

So $xdx + ydy + zdz = 0$

or $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = b = \nu$ (say) ... (5)

Hence the integral of (1) is

$$\phi(u, \nu) = 0 \quad \text{... (6)}$$

Example 2: Solve

$$\frac{p}{x^2} + \frac{q}{y^2} = \frac{1}{zx}$$

Solution:

The subsidiary equations are

$$\frac{dx}{(1/x^2)} = \frac{dy}{(1/y^2)} = \frac{dz}{(1/zx)}$$

or $x^2dx = y^2dy = zxdz$

From the first two equations we have on integration

$$x^3 = y^3 + a$$

or $x^3 - y^3 = a$ (say u)

From the first and third equations

$$x^2dx = xzdz$$

or $xdx = zdz$

On integrating it

$$x^2 = z^2 + b$$

or $x^2 - z^2 = b = \nu$ (say $b = \nu$)

So the solution of the above equation is

$$\phi(u, \nu) = 0$$

$$\phi(x^3 - y^3, x^2 - z^2) = 0$$

Notes

Example 3: Solve: $(z^2 - 2yz - y^2)\, p + (xy + zx)\, q = xy - zx$.

Solution:

The auxiliary equations are

$$\frac{dx}{z^2 - 2yz - y^2} = \frac{dy}{xy + zx} = \frac{dz}{xy - zx}$$

or $$\frac{xdx}{xz^2 - 2xyz - xy^2} = \frac{ydy}{xy^2 + xyz} = \frac{zdz}{xyz - z^2x}$$

$\therefore$ $x\,dx + y\,dy + z\,dz = 0.$

$\therefore$ $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = c_1.$

Also from second and third terms,

$$\frac{dy}{y+z} = \frac{dz}{y-z}$$

or $y\,dy - z\,dy - y\,dz - z\,dz = 0$

or $y\,dy - z\,dz - (z\,dy + y\,dz) = 0$

or $y^2/2 - z^2/2 - yz = c_2.$

$\therefore$ The general solution is

$\phi\,(x^2 + y^2 + z^2,\ y^2 - z^2 - 2yz) = 0.$

Example 4: Solve: $(y^2 + z^2 - x^2)\, p - 2xyq + 2zx = 0.$

Solution:

The auxiliary equations are

$$\frac{dx}{y^2 + z^2 - x^2} = \frac{dy}{-2xy} = \frac{dz}{-2zx}.$$

From second and third terms,

$$\frac{dy}{y} = \frac{dz}{z},\ \ i.e., \frac{y}{z} = c_1.$$

Also $$\frac{2x\,dx}{2xy^2 + 2xz^2 - 2x^3} = \frac{2y\,dy}{-4xy^2} = \frac{2z\,dz}{-4xz^2}.$$

$$\therefore \quad \frac{2x\,dx + 2y\,dy + 2z\,dz}{-2x(x^2 + y^2 + z^2)} = \frac{dz}{-2zx}.$$

$$\therefore \quad \frac{2x\,dx + 2y\,dy + 2z\,dz}{x^2 + y^2 + z^2} = \frac{dz}{z}.$$

Notes

∴ $\log(x^2 + y^2 + z^2) = \log z + \log c_2$

∴ $(x^2 + y^2 + z^2) = c_2 z.$

∴ The solution is

$$x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = z\phi\left(\frac{y}{z}\right).$$

Example 5: Solve: $(y + z)\, p + (z + x)\, q = (x + y)$.

Solution:

The auxiliary equations are

$$\frac{dx}{y+z} = \frac{dy}{z+x} = \frac{dz}{x+y}.$$

∴ $$\frac{dx+dy+dz}{2(x+y+z)} = \frac{dx-dy}{-(x-y)} = \frac{dy-dz}{-(y-z)}$$

or $$\frac{1}{2}\log(x + y + z) = -\log c_1 (x - y)$$

and $\log(x - y) = \log c_2 (y - z)$

Hence the solution is

$$(x - y)\sqrt{(x + y + z)} = f\left(\frac{x-y}{y-z}\right).$$

Example 6: Solve: $(y^3x - 2x^4)\, p + (2y^4 - x^3y)q = 9z(x^3 - y^3)$.

Solution:

The auxiliary equations are

$$\frac{dx}{y^3x-2x^4} = \frac{dy}{2y^4-x^3y} = \frac{dz}{9z\left(x^3-y^3\right)}.$$

∴ $$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{2y^4-x^3y}{y^3x-2x^4}.$$

Put $y = \nu x, \frac{dy}{dx} = \nu + x\frac{dv}{dx},$ $\quad v + x\frac{dv}{dx} = \frac{2v^4-v}{v^3-2}.$

∴ $$x\frac{dv}{dx} = \frac{2v^4-v-v^4+2v}{v^3-2}$$

or $$\frac{v^2-2}{v^4+v} = \frac{dx}{x}$$

or $$\frac{v^3-2}{v(v+1)(v^2-v+1)}dv = \frac{dx}{x}$$

or $$\int\left[-\frac{2}{v}+\frac{1}{v+1}+\frac{2v-1}{v^2-v+1}\right]dv = \log cx$$

or $$\log\frac{(v+1)(v^2-v+1)}{v^2} = \log cx$$

or $$\frac{(y+x)\left(y^2-xy+x^2\right)}{x^3\,\frac{y^2}{x^2}} = cx$$

or $$\frac{x^2y^2}{x^3+y^3} = k.$$

Also $$\frac{dx/x}{y^3-2x^3} = \frac{dy/y}{2y^3-x^3} = \frac{dz}{9z\left(x^3-y^3\right)}.$$

$\therefore$ $$\frac{dx/x+dy/y}{1} = \frac{dz}{-3z}.$$

$\therefore$ $3\log x + 3\log y = -\log cz$

or $x^3y^3 = 1/cz.$

$\therefore$ $$z = \frac{1}{x^3y^3}\phi\left(\frac{x}{y^2}+\frac{y}{x^2}\right).$$

Example 7: Solve: $\frac{(y-z)p}{yz}+\frac{(z-x)q}{zx} = \frac{x-y}{xy}.$

Solution:

$(xy-zx)\,p + (yz-yx)\,q = zx - zy.$

$\therefore$ $$\frac{dx}{y-zx} = \frac{dy}{yz-yx} = \frac{dz}{zx-zy}.$$

$\therefore$ $dx + dy + dz = 0$

or $x + y + z = c_1.$

Also $yz\,dx + zx\,dy + xy\,dz = 0.$

or $$\frac{dx}{x}+\frac{dy}{y}+\frac{dz}{z} = 0.$$

$\therefore$ $\log x + \log y + \log z = \log c_2.$

$\therefore$ $xyz = c_2.$

Notes

$\therefore$ The general solution is

$(x + y + z) = f(xyz)$

Example 8: Solve: $p \cos (x + y) + q \sin (x + y) = z$.

Solution:

The auxiliary equations are

$$\frac{dx}{\cos(x+y)} = \frac{dy}{\sin(x+y)} = \frac{dz}{z}.$$

From first two terms,

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{\sin(x+y)}{\cos(x+y)}.$$

Put $x + y = t$,

$$1 + \frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{dt}{dx},$$

$\therefore$ $$\frac{dt}{dx} - 1 = \tan t$$

or $$\frac{dt}{1+\tan t} = dx$$

or $$\frac{\cos t}{\sin t + \cos t} dt = dx$$

or $$\frac{1}{2}\left[\frac{(\cos t + \sin t) + (\cos t - \sin t)}{\sin t + \cos t}\right] dt = dx$$

or $$\frac{1}{2}\int \frac{\cos t + \sin t}{\cos t + \sin t} dt + \frac{1}{2}\int \frac{\cos t - \sin t}{\sin t + \cos t} dt = x + c_1$$

or $$t/2 + \frac{1}{2}\log\,(\sin t + \cos t) = x + c_1$$

or $(x + y) + \log [\sin (x + y) + \cos (x + y)] = 2x + \log k_1$.

$\therefore$ $[\sin (x + y) + \cos (x + y)] = ae^{x-y}$

Again $$\frac{dx+dy}{\sin(x+y)+\cos(x+y)} = \frac{dz}{z}.$$

or $$\frac{dt}{\sin t + \cos t} = \frac{dz}{z}.$$

or $$\frac{dt}{\sqrt{2}\sin\left(\frac{3\pi}{4} - t\right)} = \frac{dz}{z}$$

or $$-\log\tan\left(\frac{3\pi}{8}-\frac{t}{2}\right)=\sqrt{2}\log c_2 z.$$

$\therefore$ $$z^{\sqrt{2}}\tan\left(\frac{3\pi}{8}-\frac{x+y}{2}\right)=b.$$

Hence the general solution is

$$[\sin(x+y)+\cos(x+y)]e^{x-y}=\phi\left[z^{\sqrt{2}}\tan\left(\frac{3\pi}{8}-\frac{x+y}{2}\right)\right]$$

Example 9: Solve:

$$(t+y+z)\frac{\partial t}{\partial x}+(t+z+x)\frac{\partial t}{\partial y}+(t+x+y)\frac{\partial t}{\partial z}=x+y+z.$$

Solution:

The auxiliary equations are

$$\frac{dx}{t+y+z}=\frac{dy}{t+z+x}=\frac{dz}{t+x+y}=\frac{dt}{x+y+z}$$

or $$\frac{dx+dy+dz+dt}{3(x+y+z+t)}=\frac{dx-dt}{-(x-t)}=\frac{(dt-dt)}{-(y-t)}=\frac{dz-dt}{-(z-t)}$$

$\therefore$ $\log (x + y + z + t)^{1/3} = -\log c_1 (x - t)$

$\log (x + y + z + t)^{1/3} = -\log c_2 (y - t)$

and $\log (x + y + z + t)^{1/3} = -\log c_3 (z - t)$

Hence the solution is

$$\phi\,[x + y + z + t]^{1/3} (x - t), (x + y + z + t)^{1/3} (y - t), (x + y + z + t)^{1/3} (z - t)] = 0$$

Example 10: Solve:

$$x\frac{\partial z}{\partial x}+y\frac{\partial z}{\partial y}+t\frac{\partial z}{\partial t}=az+\frac{xy}{t}.$$

Solution:

The auxiliary equations are

$$\frac{dx}{x}=\frac{dy}{y}=\frac{dt}{t}=\frac{dz}{az+\frac{xy}{t}}.$$

From (1) and (2),

$\log c_1x = \log y$, *i.e.*, $y = c_1x$.

From (1) and (3), $t = c_2x$

Now from (1) and (4),

Notes

$$\frac{dx}{x} = \frac{dz}{az + \frac{x.c_1 x}{c_2 x}} = \frac{dz}{az + \frac{c_1}{c_2}x}$$

or $$\frac{az + \frac{c_1}{c_2}x}{x} = \frac{dz}{dx} \quad or \quad \frac{dz}{dx} = \frac{az}{x} + \frac{c_1}{c_2}$$

which is linear in z.

$\therefore$ I.F. = $\exp.\left(-\int \frac{a}{x}dx\right) = \exp.(-a\log x) = \frac{1}{x^a}.$

$\therefore$ The solution is

$$z \times \frac{1}{x^a} = \frac{c_1}{c_2}\int \frac{dx}{x^a} = \frac{c_1}{c_2}\frac{x^{1-a}}{(1-a)} + c_3$$

or $$\frac{z}{x^a} = \frac{y}{t}\frac{x^{1-a}}{(1-a)} + c_3 \text{ since } \frac{c_1}{c_2} = \frac{y}{t}$$

Thus the solution is

$$\frac{z}{x^a} = \frac{x^{1-a}}{(1-a)} \times \frac{y}{t} = c_3 = \phi\left(\frac{y}{t}, \frac{t}{x}\right)$$

Self Assessment

1. Solve

   $x\,(y - z)\,p + (y)\,(z - x)\,q = z(x - y)$

2. $x^2p + y^2q = z^2$

3. $p + q = z/a$

4. $zp - zq = z^2 + (x + y)^2$

5. $x\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + y\frac{\partial u}{\partial y} + z\frac{\partial u}{\partial z} = xyz$

6. $\tan x\, p + \tan y\, q = \tan z$

12.4 Some Special Types of Equations

We have so far studied the method of solving the equations of the type

Pp + Qq = R.

Now, before we take up the general method of Charpit to solve the partial differential equations of the first order but of any degree, we will deal with some special types of equations which can be solved by methods other than the general method. We give here four simple standard forms for which "complete Integral" can be obtained.

Notes

Standard I

In this form of the equation only p and q are present. The partial differential equation will be of the form

$$f(p, q) = 0 \quad \text{... (1)}$$

in which x, y, z do not appear. The complete integral is

$$z = ax + by + c \quad \text{... (2)}$$

where a and b are connected by the relation

$$f(a, b) = 0 \quad \text{... (3)}$$

Since $p = \frac{\partial z}{\partial x} = a$ and $q = \frac{\partial z}{\partial y} = b$, which on substitution becomes the given equation (1).

To find the general solution, let from (3) put $b = \phi(a)$ and replacing c by $\Psi(a)$, we have

$$z = ax + \phi(a)y + \Psi(a) \quad \text{... (4)}$$

Differentiating (4) with respect to a,

$$0 = x + y\,\phi'(a) + \Psi'(a) \quad \text{... (5)}$$

The general solution is obtained by eliminating a between (4) and (5).

Suppose from (2), $b = \phi(a)$ and replacing c by $\Psi(a)$ the general solution is obtained by eliminating 'a' between the following equations:

$$z = ax + \phi(a)\,y + \Psi(a). \quad \text{... (6)}$$

Differentiating (3) with respect to a,

$$0 = x + y\phi'(a) + \Psi'(a) \quad \text{... (7)}$$

Now to find the singular integral, differentiate

$$z = ax + \phi(a)\,y + c$$

with respect to a and c,

$$0 = x + y\phi'(a)$$

and $$0 = 1.$$

Now the last equation shows that there is no singular integral.

Illustrative Examples

Example 1: Solve: $q = \exp.(-p/a)$.

Solution:

The complete integral is

$$z = \alpha x + \beta y + \gamma$$

where $\beta = \exp.(-\alpha/a)$

i.e., the complete integral is

$$z = \alpha x + \{\exp.(-\alpha/a\}\,y + \gamma$$

Notes

The general integral is obtained by eliminating α between

$$z = \alpha x + \{\exp. (-\alpha/a)\}\, y + f(\alpha)$$

and $$0 = x - \{\exp. (-\alpha/a)\} \frac{y}{a} + f(a)$$

Example 2: Find the complete integral of

$$x^2p^2 + y^2q^2 = z^2$$

Solution:

Now put $z = e^Z$, $x = e^X$, $y = e^Y$

$$p = \frac{\partial z}{\partial x} = \frac{\partial z}{\partial X}.\frac{\partial X}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial z}{\partial Y}.\frac{\partial Y}{\partial x} = \frac{1}{x}.\frac{\partial z}{\partial X}$$

$\therefore$ $$xp = \frac{\partial z}{\partial X}.$$

and now $$\frac{\partial Z}{\partial X} = \frac{\partial Z}{\partial z}.\frac{\partial z}{\partial X} = \frac{1}{z}.\frac{\partial z}{\partial X}$$

$\therefore$ $$xp = z\frac{\partial Z}{\partial X}.$$

Similarly,

$$yq = z\frac{\partial Z}{\partial Y}$$

$\therefore$ The equation becomes

$$z^2\left(\frac{\partial Z}{\partial X}\right)^2 + z^2\left(\frac{\partial Z}{\partial Y}\right)^2 = z^2$$

or $$\left(\frac{\partial Z}{\partial X}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{\partial Z}{\partial Y}\right)^2 = 1.$$

The complete integral is

$$Z = aX + bY + c$$

where $a^2 + b^2 = 1$

i.e., $$\log z = a \log x - \sqrt{(1-a^2)}\log y + c.$$

Example 3: $p^m \sec^{2m} x + z^l q^n \operatorname{cosec}^{2n} y = z^{lm/(m-n)}$.

Solution:

Put $\cos^2 x\, dx = dX$, $\sin^2 y\, dy = dY$ and $z^{-1/(m-n)}\, dz = dZ$.

Write the given equation as

$$\left(\frac{z^{-1/(m-n)}}{\cos^2 x}.\frac{dz}{dx}\right)^m + \left(\frac{z^{-1/(m-n)}}{\sin x}.\frac{\partial z}{\partial y}\right)^n = 1$$

Notes

which on substitution becomes

$$\left(\frac{\partial Z}{\partial X}\right)^m + \left(\frac{\partial Z}{\partial X}\right)^n = 1.$$

$\therefore$ The complete integral is

Z = aX + bY + c

where

$a^m + b^n = 1$

and $$Z = \frac{m-n}{m-n-a}.z^{(m-n-l)/(m-n)}$$

$$X = \frac{1}{2}(x + \frac{1}{2}\sin 2x).$$

$$Y = \frac{1}{2}(y - \frac{1}{2}\sin 2y).$$

Example 4: Solve: $(y - x)(qy - px) = (p - q)^2$.

Solution:

Put $x + y = X$, $xy = Y$

$$p = \frac{\partial z}{\partial x} = \frac{\partial z}{\partial X}.\frac{\partial X}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial z}{\partial Y}.\frac{\partial Y}{\partial x}$$

$$= \frac{\partial z}{\partial X}.1 + \frac{\partial z}{\partial Y}.y;$$

$$q = \frac{\partial z}{\partial y} = \frac{\partial z}{\partial X}.\frac{\partial X}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial z}{\partial Y}.\frac{\partial Y}{\partial y}$$

$$= \frac{\partial z}{\partial X}.1 + \frac{\partial z}{\partial Y}.x.$$

The given equation by this substitution becomes

$$(y-x)\left[\left(\frac{\partial z}{\partial X} + x\frac{\partial z}{\partial Y}\right)y - \left(\frac{\partial z}{\partial X} + y\frac{\partial z}{\partial Y}\right)x\right]$$

$$= \left[\frac{\partial z}{\partial X} + y\frac{\partial z}{\partial Y} - \frac{\partial z}{\partial X} - x\frac{\partial z}{\partial Y}\right]^2.$$

$\therefore$ $$(y-x)^2\left(\frac{\partial z}{\partial X}\right)^2 = (y-x)^2\left(\frac{\partial z}{\partial Y}\right)^2$$

or $$\frac{\partial z}{\partial X} = \left(\frac{\partial z}{\partial Y}\right)^2$$

which is of the form F $(p, q) = 0$, [Standard I]

$\therefore$ Solution is $z + aX + bY + c$

where $a = b^2$.

$\therefore$ $z = b^2 (x + y) + bxy + c$.

Self Assessment

Find the complete integrals of:

7. $p^2 + q^2 = m^2$.
8. $pq = k$.
9. $p^2 + q^2 = npq$.
10. $\sqrt{p} + \sqrt{q} = 1$.

Standard II

The equation

$$z = px + qy + f(p, q),$$

which is analogous to Clairaut's form, has for its complete integral

$$z = ax + by + f(a, b) \quad \text{... (1)}$$

for $\frac{\partial z}{\partial x} = p = a$ and $\frac{\partial z}{\partial y} = q = b$

In order to obtain the general integral put $b = \phi(a)$.

$\therefore$ $z = ax + y\phi(a) + f\{a, \phi(a)\}$.

Differentiating with respect to a,

$0 = x + y\phi'(a) + f'(a)$

and eliminate a between these equations.

In order to obtain the singular integral, differentiate (1) with respect to a and b, *i.e.*,

$$0 = x + \partial f/\partial a, \quad \text{... (2)}$$

$$0 = y + \partial f/\partial b \quad \text{... (3)}$$

and eliminate a and b between the equations (1), (2) and (3).

Illustrative Examples

Example 1: Solve $z = px + qy - 2\sqrt{(pq)}$.

Solution:

The complete integral is

$$z = ax + by - 2\sqrt{(ab)} \quad \text{... (1)}$$

Notes

Differentiating with respect to a and b,

$$0 = x - 2\sqrt{b}.\frac{1}{2\sqrt{a}},$$

$$0 = y - \frac{2\sqrt{a}}{2\sqrt{b}},$$

$$\frac{\sqrt{b}}{\sqrt{a}} = x \text{ and } \sqrt{\left(\frac{a}{b}\right)} = y$$

Eliminating a and b, the singular integral is

$$xy = 1.$$

Example 2: Solve $z - px - qy = c\sqrt{(1 + p^2 + q^2)}$.

Solution:

The complete integral is

$$z = ax + by + c\sqrt{(1 + a^2 + b^2)} \quad \text{... (1)}$$

Differentiating with respect to a and b,

$$0 = x + \frac{ca}{\sqrt{(1+a^2+b^2)}}, \quad \text{... (2)}$$

$$0 = y + \frac{bc}{\sqrt{(1+a^2+b^2)}}. \quad \text{... (3)}$$

$$\therefore \quad x^2 + y^2 = \frac{c^2(a^2+b^2)}{1+a^2+b^2}.$$

$$\therefore \quad c^2 - x^2 - y^2 = c^2 - \frac{c^2(a^2+b^2)}{1+a^2+b^2}$$

$$= \frac{c^2}{1+a^2+b^2}.$$

$$\therefore \quad 1 + a^2 + b^2 = \frac{c^2}{c^2-x^2-y^2}.$$

Putting in (2), (3),

$$\therefore \quad a = -\frac{x\sqrt{(1+a^2+b^2)}}{c} = \frac{-x}{\sqrt{(c^2-x^2-y^2)}}$$

and $$b = \frac{-y}{\sqrt{(c^2-x^2-y^2)}}.$$

Put the values of a and b, the singular integral is

$$z = -\frac{x^2}{\sqrt{(c^2 - x^2 - y^2)}} - \frac{y^2}{\sqrt{(c^2 - x^2 - y^2)}} + \frac{c^2}{\sqrt{(c^2 - x^2 - y^2)}},$$

or $$z^2 (c^2 - x^2 - y^2) = (c^2 - x^2 - y^2)^2$$

or $$x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = c^2.$$

Self Assessment

Find a complete integral of following equations:

11. $z = px + qy + pq$.
12. $z = px + qy + p^2 + q^2$.
13. $z = px + qy + \sqrt{(\alpha p^2 + \beta q^2 + \gamma)}$.

Standard III

The equations which do not contain x and y, *i.e.*, which are of the form

$$F(z, p, q) = 0 \qquad \text{... (1)}$$

can be solved in the following way.

Write $x + ay = X$ where 'a' is an arbitrary constant and assume z to be a function of $(x + ay)$ *i.e.* of X alone.

$\therefore \quad z = f(X) \quad$ when $X = (x + ay)$;

$$\therefore \quad p = \frac{\partial z}{\partial x} = \frac{dz}{dX}\frac{\partial X}{\partial x} = \frac{dz}{dX}.1,$$

$$q = \frac{\partial z}{\partial y} = \frac{dz}{dX}.\frac{\partial X}{\partial y} = a.\frac{dz}{dX}.$$

Now the equation (1) becomes

$$F\left(z, \frac{dz}{dX}, a\frac{dx}{dX}\right) = 0$$

which is an ordinary differential equation of the first order and can be integrated. So the complete integral will be known.

The general and singular integrals can be found as in first two cases.

Illustrative Examples

Example 1: Find a complete integral of: $9(p^2z + q^2) = 4$.

Solution:

Put $z = f(x + ay) = f(X)$

$$\therefore \quad p = \frac{\partial z}{\partial x} = \frac{dz}{dX}.\frac{\partial X}{\partial x} = \frac{dz}{dX}$$

Notes

$$q = \frac{\partial z}{\partial y} = \frac{dz}{dX}.\frac{\partial X}{\partial y} = \frac{dz}{dX}a.$$

Therefore the equation becomes

$$9\left[\left(\frac{dz}{dX}\right)^2 z + a^2\left(\frac{dz}{dX}\right)^2\right] = 4$$

$$\left(\frac{dz}{dX}\right)^2 \{9z + 9a^2\} = 4$$

$$\frac{dz}{dX} = \frac{2}{3\sqrt{(z+a^2)}}$$

or $\int \sqrt{(z+a^2)}dz = \int \frac{2}{3}dY$

or $\frac{(z+a^2)^{3/2}}{(3/2)} = \frac{2}{3}X + C$

or $(z + a^2)^3 = (X + k)^2$

or $(z + a^2)^3 = (x + ay + k)^2$.

Example 2: Find a complete integral of: $p^3 + q^3 - 3pqz = 0$.

Solution:

Put $z = f(x + ay) = f(X)$

$$\left(\frac{dz}{dX}\right)^2 + a^3\left(\frac{dz}{dX}\right)^3 - 3a\frac{dz}{dX}\left(\frac{dz}{dX}\right)z = 0$$

$$\frac{dz}{dX}(1 + a^3) = az$$

or $\frac{dz}{3az} = \frac{dx}{1+a^3}$

∴ $\frac{1}{3a}\log z = \frac{X}{1+a^3} + c$

or $3a\,(x + ay) + k = (1 + a^3)\log z$.

Example 3: Find a complete integral of: $q^2y^2 = z(z - px)$.

Solution:

Put $dY = \frac{dy}{y}$, *i.e.* $y = e^Y$

and $dX = \dfrac{dx}{x}$, *i.e.* $x = e^X$,

The equation becomes

$$\left(\frac{\partial z}{\partial Y}\right)^2 = z\left(z - \frac{\partial z}{\partial X}\right),$$

$$z = f(X + aY) = f(\xi).$$

$$\therefore \quad a^2\left(\frac{dz}{d\xi}\right)^2 = z\left(z - \frac{dz}{d\xi}\right)$$

$$\therefore \quad a^2\left(\frac{dz}{d\xi}\right)^2 + z\frac{dz}{d\xi} + z^2 = 0.$$

$$\therefore \quad \frac{dz}{d\xi} = \frac{-z \pm \sqrt{(z^2 + 4a^2z^2)}}{2a^2}$$

$$\text{or} \quad \frac{dz}{-z[1 \pm \sqrt{(1+4a^2)}]} = \frac{1}{2a^2}d\xi.$$

$$\therefore \quad \log z = \frac{[1 \pm \sqrt{(1+4a^2)} - 1]}{2a^2}\xi + c_1$$

$$\therefore \quad 2a^2 \log z = [\pm \sqrt{(1 + 4a^2)} - 1]\,[X + aY] + k$$

$$= [\pm \sqrt{(1 + 4a^2)} - 1]\,(\log x + a \log y) + k.$$

Example 4: Find complete integral of: $pq = x^m y^n z^l$.

Solution:

Put $\dfrac{x^{m+1}}{m+1} = X, \dfrac{y^{n+1}}{n+1} = Y,$

$$\frac{\partial z}{\partial x} = \frac{\partial z}{\partial X}\cdot\frac{\partial X}{\partial x}, \frac{\partial z}{\partial y} = \frac{\partial z}{\partial Y}\cdot\frac{\partial Y}{\partial y},$$

$$p = \frac{\partial z}{\partial x} = x^m\frac{\partial z}{\partial X}, q = \frac{\partial z}{\partial Y}y^n.$$

$\therefore$ The given equation becomes $\dfrac{\partial z}{\partial X}\cdot\dfrac{\partial z}{\partial Y} = z^l,$

which is of the form $f(p, q, z) = 0$.

Putting $\dfrac{\partial z}{\partial X} = \dfrac{dz}{d\xi}, \dfrac{dz}{dy} = a\dfrac{\partial z}{d\xi},$

$$\frac{dz}{d\xi}a\frac{dz}{d\xi} = z^l;$$

$\therefore \qquad \left(\frac{dz}{d\xi}\right)^2 = \frac{z^l}{a}.$

$\therefore \qquad \frac{z^{-(l/2+1)}}{1-(l/2)} = \frac{\xi}{\sqrt{a}} + c,$

$$\frac{1}{2-l} z^{1-(l/2)} = \frac{aY+X}{\sqrt{a}} + c = -\frac{x^{m+1}}{\sqrt{a(m+1)}} + \sqrt{a}\frac{y^{n+1}}{n+1} + c.$$

Example 5: Solve: $z^2 (p^2 + q^2 + 1) = c^2$

Solution:

Put $z\, dz = dZ$ *i.e.* $Z = \frac{z^2}{2}$

$$\frac{\partial Z}{\partial x} = \frac{dZ}{dz}.\frac{\partial Z}{\partial x} = zp = P \text{ (say)}$$

$$\frac{\partial z}{\partial Y} = \frac{dZ}{\partial z} \times \frac{\partial z}{\partial Y} = zq = Q \text{ (say)}$$

$\therefore$ The given equation becomes

$2Z + P^2 + Q^2 = c^2$

now let $Z = f(x + ay) + f(X)$

$$P = \frac{\partial Z}{\partial x} = \frac{dZ}{\partial X}.\frac{\partial X}{\partial x} = \frac{dP}{dx}$$

$$Q = \frac{\partial Z}{\partial Y} = \frac{dZ}{\partial X}.\frac{\partial X}{\partial y} = a\frac{dZ}{dX}$$

$\therefore \qquad \left(\frac{dZ}{dx}\right)^2 (1 + a^2) = c^2 - 2Z$

or $\qquad \frac{dZ\sqrt{(1+a^2)}}{\sqrt{(c^2 - a^2 z)}} = dx$

or $\qquad -\sqrt{[(1 + a^2)]}\sqrt{[(c^2 - 2Z)]} = X + c$

or $\qquad -\sqrt{(1 + a^2)}\sqrt{(c^2 - z^2)} = (x + ay) + c$

or $\qquad (1 + a^2)(c^2 - z^2) = (x + ay + c)^2.$

Self Assessment

Solve

14. $p(1 + q^2) = q(z - a)$
15. $p^2 = z^2 (1 - pq)$

16. $p^2 - q^2 = pz.$
17. $pz = 1 + q^2$
18. $p\ (1 + q) = qz.$

Standard IV

If the equation is of the type

$$f_1\ (x, p) = f_2\ (y, q), \qquad \text{... (1)}$$

write

$$f_1\ (x, p) = f_2\ (y, q) = c_1 \qquad \text{... (2)}$$

Solving equations (2) for q and p, we have

$$\partial z/\partial x = p = \Psi_1\ (x, c_1)$$

and

$$\partial z/\partial y = q = \Psi_2\ (y, c_1).$$

Now

$$\begin{aligned} dz &= p\ dx + q\ dy \\ &= \Psi_1\ (x, c_1)\ dx + \Psi_2\ (y, c_1)\ dy, \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore \qquad z = \int \Psi_1(x, c_1)dx + \int \Psi(y, c_1)dy + b.$$

The general integral may be obtained from the above complete integral and as in Standard I, there is no singular integral.

Illustrative Examples

Example 1: Find complete integral of:

$$\sqrt{p} + \sqrt{q} = 2x.$$

Solution:

$$\sqrt{p} - 2x = -\sqrt{q} = a \ \text{ (say)},$$

$p = (2x + a)^2$ and $q = a^2$,

$$\begin{aligned} dz &= p\ dx + q\ dy \\ &= (2x + a)^2\ dx + a^2\ dy \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore \qquad z = \frac{(2x+a)^3}{3.2} + a^2 y + b$$

$\therefore$ the complete integral is

$$6z - 6b = (2x + a)^3 + 6a^2 y.$$

Example 2: Solve: $z^2\ (p^2 + q^2) = x^2 + y^2.$

Solution:

Put $z\ dz = dZ$; *i.e.* $Z = z^2/2.$

$$\frac{\partial Z}{\partial x} = \frac{\partial Z}{\partial z}.\frac{\partial z}{\partial x} \quad = \quad zp = \text{P (say)}$$

$$\frac{\partial Z}{\partial y} = \frac{\partial Z}{\partial z}.\frac{\partial z}{\partial y} \quad = \quad zq = \text{Q (say)}$$

$\therefore$ The given equation becomes

$P^2 + Q^2 = x^2 + y^2.$

$\therefore$ $P^2 - x^2 = y^2 - Q^2.$

Let $P^2 - x^2 = y^2 - Q^2 = a^2$

or $P = \sqrt{(a^2 + x^2)}$ and $Q = \sqrt{(y^2 - a^2)}$.

$\therefore$ $dZ = P\,dx + Q\,dy = \sqrt{(x^2 + a^2)}\,dx + \sqrt{(y^2 - a^2)}\,dy$

$$Z = \frac{x}{2}\sqrt{(x^2+a^2)} + \frac{a^2}{2}\log[x+\sqrt{(x^2+a^2)}] + \frac{y}{2}\sqrt{(y^2-a^2)} - \frac{a^2}{2}\log[y+\sqrt{(y^2-a^2)}] + c.$$

$\therefore$ Complete integral is

$$z^2 = x\sqrt{(x^2 + a^2)} + a^2 \log[x + \sqrt{(x^2 + a^2)}] + y\sqrt{(y^2 - a^2)} - a^2 \log[y + \sqrt{(y^2 - a^2)}] + k.$$

Example 3: Solve: $(x^2 + y^2)(p^2 + q^2) = 1$.

Solution:

Put $x = r\cos\theta$, $y = r\sin\theta$,

i.e. $r^2 = x^2 + y^2$, $\theta = \tan^{-1}\dfrac{y}{x}$.

$$\therefore \quad p = \frac{\partial z}{\partial x} = \frac{\partial z}{\partial r}.\frac{\partial r}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial z}{\partial \theta}.\frac{\partial \theta}{\partial x} = \cos\theta\frac{\partial z}{\partial r} - \frac{\sin\theta}{r}.\frac{\partial z}{\partial \theta},$$

$$q = \frac{\partial z}{\partial y} = \frac{\partial z}{\partial r}.\frac{\partial r}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial z}{\partial \theta}.\frac{\partial \theta}{\partial y} = \sin\theta\frac{\partial z}{\partial r} + \frac{\cos\theta}{r}.\frac{\partial z}{\partial \theta}.$$

On substitution the equation becomes

$$r^2\left[\left(\frac{\partial z}{\partial r}\right)^2 + \frac{1}{r^2}\left(\frac{\partial z}{\partial \theta}\right)^2\right] = 1$$

or
$$r^2\left[\left(\frac{\partial z}{\partial r}\right)^2 = 1 - \left(\frac{\partial z}{\partial \theta}\right)^2\right]$$

which is of the form $f_1(q, x) = f_2(p, y)$.

Putting

$$r^2\left(\frac{\partial z}{\partial r}\right)^2 = a^2 = 1 - \left(\frac{\partial z}{\partial \theta}\right)^2,$$

Notes

$$\frac{\partial z}{\partial r} = \frac{a}{r}, \frac{\partial z}{\partial \theta} = \sqrt{(1-a^2)}.$$

$z = a \log r + a$ quantity independent of r

and $z = \sqrt{(1 - a^2)}\ \theta + a$ quantity independent of θ.

∴ General solution is

$z = a \log r + \sqrt{(1 - a^2)}\ \theta + c$

$= a \log (x^2 + y^2) + \sqrt{(1-a^2)}\ \tan^{-1} \frac{y}{x} + c.$

Example 4: Solve: $(x + y)(p + q)^2 + (x - y)(p - q)^2 = 1$.

Solution:

Put $(x + y) = X$, $(x - y) = Y$,

$$p = \frac{\partial z}{\partial x} = \frac{\partial z}{\partial X}.\frac{\partial X}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial z}{\partial Y}.\frac{\partial Y}{\partial x} = \frac{\partial z}{\partial X} + \frac{\partial z}{\partial Y}.$$

$$q = \frac{\partial z}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial z}{\partial X}.\frac{\partial X}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial z}{\partial Y}.\frac{\partial Y}{\partial y} = \frac{\partial z}{\partial X} + \frac{\partial z}{\partial Y}(-1).$$

On substitution the given equation becomes

$$X\left(\frac{\partial z}{\partial X}\right)^2 + Y\left(\frac{\partial z}{\partial Y}\right)^2 = \frac{1}{4}$$

or $$X\left(\frac{\partial z}{\partial X}\right)^2 = \frac{1}{4} - Y\left(\frac{\partial z}{\partial Y}\right)^2,$$

which is of the form $f_1(x, p) = f_2(q, y)$.

Putting $X\left(\frac{\partial z}{\partial X}\right)^2 = a$ and $\frac{1}{4} - Y\left(\frac{\partial z}{\partial Y}\right)^2 = a$, we get

$\partial z/\partial X = \sqrt{(a/X)}$

and $(\partial z/\partial Y) = \sqrt{\left[\left(\frac{1}{4} - a\right)/X\right]}.$

$z = 2\sqrt{(aX)}$ + a quantity independent of x

and $z = 2\sqrt{\left[\left(\frac{1}{4} - a\right)Y\right]}$ + a quantity independent of y.

∴ Complete integral is

$$z = 2\sqrt{(aX)} + 2\sqrt{\left[\left(\frac{1}{4} - a\right)Y\right]} + b$$

$$= 2\sqrt{\left[a(x+y)\right] + 2 + \sqrt{\left(\frac{1}{4} - a\right)(x-y)}} + b.$$

Example 5: Solve: $z\,(p^2 - q^2) = x - y$.

Solution:

Putting $Z = \frac{2}{3} z^{3/2}$

$$\frac{\partial Z}{\partial x} = \frac{2}{3} \times \frac{3}{2} z^{1/2} \frac{\partial z}{\partial x}.$$

$\therefore$ $$z\left(\frac{\partial z}{\partial x}\right)^2 = \left(\frac{\partial Z}{\partial x}\right)^2 = P^2 \quad \text{(say)}$$

Similarly,

$$z\left(\frac{\partial z}{\partial y}\right)^2 = \left(\frac{\partial Z}{\partial y}\right)^2 = Q^2 \quad \text{(say)}$$

$\therefore$ $P^2 - Q^2 = x - y$.

Let $P - x = Q^2 - y = c$.

$\therefore$ $P = \sqrt{(c + x)}$ and $Q = \sqrt{(c + y)}$.

$\therefore$ $dZ = P\,dx + Q\,dy$

$= \sqrt{(c + x)}\,dx + \sqrt{(c + y)}\,dy$.

$$Z = \frac{(c+x)^{3/2}}{\frac{3}{2}} + \frac{(c+y)^{3/2}}{\frac{3}{2}} + k_1$$

or $z^{3/2} = (c + x)^{3/2} + (c + y)^{3/2} + k$.

is the required solution.

Self Assessment

Solve the following:

19. $q = 2yp^2$.
20. $x^2p^2 = yq^2$.

12.5 Summary

- Lagrange method is quite famous. It is used also in the theory of total differential equations as well as simultaneous differential equations.
- It can be easily extended to the theory of partial differential equations involving more than two independent variables.

12.6 Keywords

The geometrical interpretation of the ***Lagrange's equation***

$$Pp + Qq = R$$

where P, Q and R are functions of Z, is that the normal to a certain surface is perpendicular to a line whose direction cosines are in the ratio P : Q : R.

The ***subsidiary equations*** help us in finding the solution of Lagrange's equation. If $u = a$, $v = b$ where u, v are functions of x, y, z and a, b being arbitrary constants but the statement that $\Psi(u, v)$ are solutions of the Lagrange equations.

12.7 Review Questions

1. Solve the following $x(y - z)p + y(z - x)q - (x - y)z = 0$
2. Solve the following $p + q = z/a$
3. Solve the following by Lagrange's method $xzp - yzq = xy$
4. $p^2 + q^2 = x + y$
5. $zp = -x$
6. $p^2q^3 = 1$

Answers: Self Assessment

1. $(x + y + z) = \phi(xyz)$
2. $\left(\frac{1}{x} - \frac{1}{y}\right) = \phi\left(\frac{1}{x} - \frac{1}{z}\right)$
3. $z = e^{y/a} f(x - y)$
4. $\phi[y + x, \log(x^2 + y^2 + 2xy + z^2) - 2x] = 0$
5. $xyz - 3u = \phi\left(\frac{y}{x}, \frac{x}{z}\right)$
6. $\frac{\sin z}{\sin y} = f\left(\frac{\sin x}{\sin y}\right)$
7. $z = ax + \sqrt{(m^2 - a^2)}y + c$
8. $z = ax + \frac{k}{a}y + c$
9. $z = ax + \frac{a}{2}\left[n \pm \sqrt{n^2 - 4}\right]y + c$
10. $z = ax + \left(1 - \sqrt{a}\right)^2 y + c$
11. $z = ax + by + ab$

Notes

12. $z = ax + by + a^2 + b^2$

13. $z = ax + by + \sqrt{\alpha a^2 + \beta b^2 + Y}$

14. $4c\,(z - a) = (x + cy + b)^2 + 4$

15. $\frac{1}{\sqrt{a}}\log\left[z\sqrt{a} + (1 + az^2)^{1/2}\right] + (1 + az^2)^{1/2} = z + ay + b$

16. $(z - c)\,[z - c \exp\{x + ay/(1 - a^2)\}] = 0$

17. $z^2 \pm \left[z\sqrt{(z^2 - 4a^2)} - 4a^2 \log\left[z + (z^2 + 4a^2)^{1/2}\right]\right] = 4x + 4ay + k$

18. $\log(az - 1) = x + ay + c$

19. $z = ax + a^2y^2 + b$

20. $(z - a \log x - b)^2 = 4a^2y$

12.8 Further Readings

Books

Piaggio H.T.H., Differential Equations

Sneddon L.N., Elements of Partial Differential Equations

Unit 13: Charpit's Method for Solving Partial Differential Equations

Notes

CONTENTS

Objectives
Introduction
13.1 General Method of Solution
13.2 Illustrative Examples
13.3 Special Types of First Order Equations
13.4 Summary
13.5 Keywords
13.6 Review Questions
13.7 Further Readings

Objectives

After studying this unit, you should be able to see that:

- Charpit's method is used to find the general integral of the partial differential equation.
- This method introduces a second partial differential equation of the first order that contains an arbitrary constant.
- With the help of this second equation and the original equation the partial derivatives $\frac{\partial z}{\partial x} = p$ and $\frac{\partial z}{\partial y} = q,$ can be found.
- After finding these p and q, the solution can be found involving two arbitrary constants.

Introduction

With the help of the second equation and the original equation Charpit's subsidiary equations are setup. Only those equations are to be solved that involve p or q.

Charpit's method helps in finding the general solution of the partial differential equations with two arbitrary constants.

13.1 General Method of Solution

After discussing Lagrange's method and some special methods of solving partial differential equation we now turn to an other general method due to Charpit in dealing with non-linear partial differential equations involving two independent variables x and y. Here again we denote $p = \frac{\partial z}{\partial x}$ and $q = \frac{\partial z}{\partial y}$. Let the given equation be of the first order only. So the equation to be sold will be of the form

$$F(x, y, z, p, q) = 0 \quad \text{... (1)}$$

Notes

The Charpit method of solving this equation is as follows:

Charpit's Method

Here in addition to equation (1), another equation involving the same variables, is sought i.e.

$$f(x, y, z, p, q) = 0 \qquad \text{... (2)}$$

With the help of equations (2) and (1), we solve for p and q and then substitute p and q in the equation

$$dz = p\,dx + q\,dy \qquad \text{... (3)}$$

Clearly the integral of (3) will satisfy the given equation for the values of p and q derived from it are the same as the values of p and q in (1). Now differentiating (1) and (2) w.r.t. x and y, we get

$$\frac{\partial F}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial F}{\partial z}\frac{\partial z}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial F}{\partial p}\frac{\partial p}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial F}{\partial q}\frac{\partial q}{\partial x} = 0$$

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial f}{\partial z}\frac{\partial z}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial f}{\partial p}\frac{\partial p}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial f}{\partial q}\frac{\partial q}{\partial x} = 0$$

$$\frac{\partial F}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial F}{\partial z}.\frac{\partial z}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial F}{\partial p}.\frac{\partial p}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial F}{\partial q}.\frac{\partial q}{\partial y} = 0$$

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial f}{\partial z}.\frac{\partial z}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial f}{\partial p}.\frac{\partial p}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial f}{\partial q}.\frac{\partial q}{\partial y} = 0$$

Eliminating $\partial p/\partial x$ from the first pair and $\partial q/\partial y$ from the second pair, we have

$$\left(\frac{\partial F}{\partial x}.\frac{\partial f}{\partial p} - \frac{\partial F}{\partial p}.\frac{\partial f}{\partial x}\right) + \frac{\partial z}{\partial x}\left(\frac{\partial F}{\partial z}.\frac{\partial f}{\partial p} - \frac{\partial F}{\partial p}.\frac{\partial f}{\partial z}\right) + \frac{\partial q}{\partial x}\left(\frac{\partial F}{\partial q}.\frac{\partial f}{\partial p} - \frac{\partial F}{\partial p}.\frac{\partial f}{\partial q}\right) = 0 \qquad \text{... (4)}$$

$$\left(\frac{\partial F}{\partial y}.\frac{\partial f}{\partial q} - \frac{\partial F}{\partial q}.\frac{\partial f}{\partial y}\right) + \frac{\partial z}{\partial y}\left(\frac{\partial F}{\partial z}.\frac{\partial f}{\partial q} - \frac{\partial F}{\partial q}.\frac{\partial f}{\partial p}\right) + \frac{\partial p}{\partial y}\left(\frac{\partial F}{\partial p}.\frac{\partial f}{\partial q} - \frac{\partial F}{\partial q}.\frac{\partial f}{\partial p}\right) = 0 \qquad \text{... (5)}$$

Now since $\dfrac{\partial q}{\partial x} = \dfrac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x\,\partial y} = \dfrac{\partial p}{\partial y}$

and $\partial z/\partial x = p$, $\partial z/\partial y = q$,

adding (4) and (5) and rearranging,

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial p}\left(\frac{\partial F}{\partial x} + p\frac{\partial F}{\partial z}\right) + \frac{\partial f}{\partial y}\left(\frac{\partial F}{\partial q} + q\frac{\partial F}{\partial z}\right) + \frac{\partial f}{\partial z}\left(-p\frac{\partial F}{\partial p} - q\frac{\partial F}{\partial q}\right) + \left(-\frac{\partial F}{\partial p}\right)\frac{\partial f}{\partial x} + \left(-\frac{\partial F}{\partial q}\right)\frac{\partial f}{\partial y} = 0 \qquad \text{... (6)}$$

The terms involving $\dfrac{\partial p}{\partial y}$ and $\dfrac{\partial q}{\partial x}$ cancel.

Now (6) is a linear equation of the first order, which the function f must satisfy and its integrals are integrals of

$$\frac{dp}{\dfrac{\partial F}{\partial x} + p\dfrac{\partial F}{\partial z}} = \frac{dq}{\dfrac{\partial F}{\partial y} + q\dfrac{\partial F}{\partial z}} = \frac{dz}{-p\dfrac{\partial F}{\partial p} - q\dfrac{\partial F}{\partial q}} = \frac{dx}{-\partial F/\partial p} = \frac{dy}{-\partial F/\partial q} = \frac{df}{0}. \qquad \text{... (7)}$$

Any of the integrals of (7) will satisfy (6). The simplest relation involving p or q or both should be taken and that will be the required relation.

Notes

13.2 Illustrative Examples

Example 1: Solve by Charpit's method $z = pq$.

Solution:

Applying Charpit's method,

$$\frac{dp}{p\,.\,1} = \frac{dp}{q} = \frac{dz}{(-p)(-q)+(-q)(-p)} = \frac{dx}{q} = \frac{dy}{p} = \frac{df}{0}$$

From first two terms,

$$\frac{p}{q} = c.$$

$\therefore$ $z = cq^2$ or $q = \sqrt{(z/c)}$ and $p = \sqrt{(cz)}$.

Now $dz = p\,dx + q\,dy$

$= \sqrt{(cz)}\,dx + \sqrt{(z/c)}\,dy$

$z^{-1/2}dz = \sqrt{c}\,dx + (1/\sqrt{c})\,dy$, on integration, we have

$2z^{1/2} = \sqrt{c}x + (y/\sqrt{c}) + b$

Example 2: Solve by Charpit's method $(p^2 + q^2)\,y = qz$.

Solution:

$$\frac{dp}{0+p(-q)} = \frac{dq}{(p^2+q^2)+q(-q)} = \frac{dz}{-p(2py)-q(2qy-z)} = \frac{dx}{-2py} = \frac{dy}{-2py+z} = \frac{df}{0}$$

From first two terms,

$$\frac{dp}{-qp} = \frac{dq}{p^2}$$

or $p\,dp = -q\,dq$ *i.e.* $p^2 + q^2 = c$

$\because$ $q = cy/z$ and $p = \sqrt{(c - c^2y^2/z^2)}$

$\therefore$ $dz = p\,dx + q\,dy$

$= \sqrt{(c - c^2y^2/z^2)}\,dx + cy/z\,dy$

or $z\,dz = (cz^2 - c^2y^2)^{1/2}\,dx + cy\,dy$

or $$\frac{2(z\,dz - cy\,dy)}{\sqrt{(z^2 - cy^2)}} = 2\sqrt{c}\,.\,dx,$$

$\therefore$ $(z^2 - cy^2)^{1/2} = \sqrt{c}.x + b$

$\therefore$ The complete integral is

$$(z^2 - cy^2) = (\sqrt{c}x + b)^2$$

Example 3: Solve by Charpit's method:

$q = xp + p^2$.

Solution:

Charpit's auxiliary equations are

$$\frac{dp}{p+0} = \frac{dq}{0} = \frac{dz}{-p(x+2p)-q(-1)} = \frac{dx}{-(x+2p)} = \frac{dy}{+1} = \frac{\partial f}{0}$$

i.e. $q = c$ from second term.

$\therefore$ $px + p^2 = c$

$$p = \frac{-x \pm \sqrt{(x^2+4c)}}{2}.$$

$\therefore$ $$dz = \frac{-x \pm \sqrt{(x^2+4c)}}{2}dx + c\,dy.$$

$$z = -\frac{x^2}{4} \pm \left[\frac{1}{2}.\frac{x}{2}\sqrt{(x^2+4c)} + \frac{4c}{4}\log\{x + \sqrt{(x^2+4c)}\}\right] + cy + b.$$

Aliter. Also $\frac{dp}{p} = \frac{dy}{1}$, *i.e.*, $p = ae^y$

$\therefore$ $q = axe^y + a^2e^{2y}$

$\therefore$ $dz = ae^y\,dx + axe^y\,dy + a^2e^{2y}\,dy$.

$\therefore$ $z = axe^y + \frac{a^2}{2}e^{2y} + b$.

Example 4: Solve by Charpit's method:

$(p + q)(px + qy) - 1 = 0$.

Solution:

By Charpit's method, auxiliary equations are

$$\frac{dp}{p(p+q)+0} = \frac{dq}{(p+q)q} = \ldots$$

$\therefore$ $\frac{dp}{p} = \frac{dq}{q}$ or $\frac{p}{q} = c$

$q^2(1 + c)(cx + y) - 1 = 0$

or $$q = \sqrt{\left[\frac{1}{(1+c)(cx+y)}\right]}$$

Notes

$\therefore \quad dz = p\,dx + q\,dy$

$$= \frac{c\,dx + dy}{\sqrt{[(1+c)(cx+y)]}}$$

$\therefore \quad z\sqrt{(1 + c)} = 2\,(cx + y)^{1/2} + b.$

Example 5: Solve by Charpit's method:

$$pq = px + qy.$$

Solution:

The auxiliary equations are

$$\frac{dp}{p} = \frac{dq}{q} = \frac{dz}{-p(x-q)-q(y-p)} = \frac{dx}{-(x-q)} = \frac{dy}{-(y-q)}.$$

From first two ratios,

$$p/q = a \quad i.e., p = aq.$$

Putting the value of p in the given equation,

$$aq^2 = aqx + qy$$

or $\quad q = (y + ax)/a.$

Therefore

$$p = (y + ax).$$

Now $\quad dz = p\,dx + q\,dy$

$$= (y + ax)\,dx + \frac{y+ax}{a}\,dy.$$

$\therefore \quad adz = (y + ax)\,(dy + a\,dx).$

$\therefore \quad az = (y + ax)^2/2 + c.$

Writing c as $f(a)$,

$$az = (y + ax)^2/2 + f(a). \qquad \text{... (1)}$$

Differentiating with respect to a,

$$z = x\,(y + ax) + f'(a). \qquad \text{... (2)}$$

Eliminating a between (1) and (2) the general integral will be obtained.

Example 6: Solve by Charpit's method:

$$2zx - px^2 - 2qxy + pq = 0.$$

Solution:

Applying Charpit's method,

$$\frac{dx}{x^2-q} = \frac{dy}{2xy-p} = \frac{dz}{px^2+2xyq} = \frac{dp}{2z-2qy} = \frac{dq}{0} = \frac{df}{0}.$$

$\therefore \quad q = a.$

Notes

Putting this value in the given equation,

$$2zx - px^2 - 2axy + ap = 0.$$

$$\therefore \quad p = 2x\,(z - ay) \,/\, (x^2 - a).$$

Also $\quad dz = p\,dx + q\,dy$

$$= \frac{2x(z-ay)}{(x^2-a)}\,dx + a\,dy$$

or $$\frac{dz - a\,dy}{z - ay} = \frac{2x}{x^2 - a}\,dx$$

or $$\log\,(z - ay) = \log c(x^2 - a).$$

$$\therefore \quad (z - ay) = c\,(x^2 - a).$$

$\therefore \quad z = ay + c(x^2 - a)$ is the general solution.

Example 7: Solve by Charpit's method:

$$p^2 + q^2 - 2px - 2qy + 1 = 0.$$

Solution:

Applying Charpit's method,

$$\frac{dp}{\dfrac{\partial F}{\partial x} + p\dfrac{\partial F}{\partial z}} = \frac{dq}{\dfrac{\partial F}{\partial y} + q\dfrac{\partial F}{\partial z}}$$

i.e. $\quad \dfrac{dp}{-2p} = \dfrac{dq}{-2q} \qquad$ *i.e.* $\quad p = qa.$

Substituting in the given equation,

$$q^2\,(a^2 + 1) - 2q\,(ax + y) + 1 = 0.$$

$$\therefore \quad q = \frac{2(ax+y) + \sqrt{[4(ax+y)^2 - 4(a^2+1)]}}{2(a^2+1)}$$ [taking +ve sign with the radical].

$$\therefore \quad q = \frac{(ax+y) + \sqrt{[(ax+y)^2 - (a^2+1)]}}{(a^2+1)}$$

Now $dz = p\,dx + q\,dy$

$$= \frac{1}{(a+1)}\,(ax + y)\,(a\,dx + dy) + \frac{1}{(a+1)}\sqrt{[(ax+y)^2 - (a^2+1)]}\,(a\,dx + dy).$$

Now putting $ax + y = t$

$$a\,dx + dy = dt$$

$$\therefore \quad (a^2 + 1)\,dz = dt + \sqrt{[t^2 - (a^2 + 1)]}\,dt.$$

Notes

$(a^2 + 1)\ z = t + \frac{1}{2}\ \sqrt{[t^2 - (a^2+1)]} - \frac{a^2+1}{2}\ \log\ [t + \sqrt{(t^2 - (a^2 + 1)}]] + b$

which is the required solution where $t = ax + y$.

Example 8: Solve by Charpit's method:

$$q = (z + px)^2.$$

Solution:

Applying Charpit's method,

$$\frac{dp}{\frac{\partial F}{\partial x} + p\frac{\partial F}{\partial y}} = \frac{dq}{\frac{\partial F}{\partial y} + q\frac{\partial F}{\partial z}} = \frac{dz}{\frac{\partial F}{\partial p} - q\frac{\partial F}{\partial q}}$$

$$= \frac{dx}{-\frac{\partial F}{\partial p}} = \frac{dy}{-\frac{\partial F}{\partial q}} = \frac{df}{0}.$$

We have

$$\frac{dp}{2p(z+px)+p\times 2(z+px)} = \frac{dq}{2q(z+px)} = \frac{dx}{-2x(z+px)}$$

or $\quad \frac{dq}{q} = \frac{dx}{-x}$

or $\quad qx = a$

Putting this value of q in the given equation $\frac{a}{x} = (z+px)^2$

or $\quad p = \frac{1}{x}\left[\sqrt{\frac{a}{x}} - z\right].$

Now $dz = p\ dx + q\ dy$

$$= \frac{1}{x}\left(\sqrt{\frac{a}{x}} - z\right)dx + \frac{a}{x}dy$$

or $\quad (x\ dz + z\ dx) = \sqrt{\frac{a}{x}}dx + a\ dy$

or $\quad zx = 2\sqrt{(ax)} + ay + b.$

Example 9: Solve $p^2 + q^2 - 2px - 2qy + 2xy = 0$.

Solution:

Applying Charpit's method,

$$\frac{dp}{\frac{\partial F}{\partial x} + p\frac{\partial F}{\partial z}} = \frac{dq}{\frac{\partial F}{\partial y} + q\frac{\partial F}{\partial z}} = \frac{dz}{-p\frac{\partial F}{\partial p} - q\frac{\partial F}{\partial q}} = \frac{dx}{-\frac{\partial F}{\partial p}} = \frac{dy}{-\frac{\partial F}{\partial q}}$$

Notes

or $$\frac{dp}{-2p+2y} = \frac{dq}{-2q+2x} = \frac{dx}{2x-2p} = \frac{dy}{2y-2q}$$

or $$\frac{dp+dq}{-2(p+q-x-y)} = \frac{dx+dy}{-2(p+q-x-y)}$$

or $p + q = x + y + c$

or $(p - x) + (q - y) = c$ ...(1)

Also the given equation can be written as

$$(p-x)^2 + (q-y)^2 = (x-y)^2 \quad ...(2)$$

Putting the value of $(p - x)$ from (1) in (2)

$$\{c - (q-y)\}^2 + (q-y)^2 = (x-y)^2$$

or $$2(q-y)^2 - 2c\,(q-y) + c^2 - (x-y)^2 = 0$$

$$\therefore \quad q - y = \frac{2c \pm \sqrt{[4c^2 - 8\{c^2 - (x-y)^2\}]}}{2\times 2}$$

$$= \frac{c}{2} \pm \frac{1}{2}\sqrt{\{2(x-y)^2 - c^2\}},$$

$$\therefore \quad q = y + \frac{1}{2}[c + \sqrt{\{2(x-y)^2 - c^2\}}]$$

$$\therefore \quad p - x = c - (q-y)$$

$$= c - \frac{1}{2}[c + \sqrt{2\{(x-y)^2 - c^2\}}]$$

$$\therefore \quad p = x + \frac{1}{2}\{c - \sqrt{\{2(x-y)^2 - c^2\}}]$$

Also we know that $dz = p\,dx + q\,dy$.

$$= [x + \frac{1}{2}\{c - \sqrt{\{(2(x-y)^2 - c^2\}}]dx + [y + \frac{1}{2}\{c + \sqrt{\{2(x-y)^2 - c^2\}}\}]dy$$

$$= x\,dx + y\,dy + \frac{c\,dx}{2} + \frac{c\,dy}{2} - \frac{1}{2}[\sqrt{2(x-y)^2 - c^2}\}\,\{dx - dy\}$$

$$\therefore \quad Z = \frac{x^2}{2} + \frac{y^2}{2} + \frac{cx}{2} + \frac{cy}{2} - \frac{1}{2}\int (t^2 - c^2)\frac{dt}{\sqrt{2}} \qquad \text{if } 2(x-y)^2 = t^2$$

or $$2Z = x^2 + y^2 + cx + cy - \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\left[\frac{t}{2}\sqrt{(t^2c^2)} - \frac{c^2}{2}\log\{t + \sqrt{t} + \sqrt{(t^2 - c^2)}\}\,k\right]$$

Example 10: Solve by Charpit's method:

$pxy + pq + qy = yz$.

Solution: **Notes**

Here $f = pxy + pq + qy - yz = 0$ ... (1)

Charpit's auxiliary equations are

$$\frac{dp}{py + p(-y)} = \frac{dq}{(px+q) - qy} = \ldots$$

or $dp = 0$ or $p = a$ ... (2)

From (1) and (2), we get

$$p = a,\ q = \frac{y(z-ax)}{a+y}$$

Putting these values of p and q in $dz = p\,dx + q\,dy$, we get

$$dz = a\,dx + \frac{y(z-ax)}{a+y}\,dy$$

or
$$\frac{dz - a\,dx}{z - ax} = \frac{y\,dy}{a+y} = \left(1 - \frac{a}{a+y}\right) dy$$

Integrating, $\log(z - ax) = y - a\log(a + y) + \log b$

or $(z - ax)(y + a)^a = be^y$.

Example 11: Solve by Charpit's method:

$px + qy = z(1 + pq)^{1/2}$.

Solution:

$$f = px + qy - z(1 + pq)^{1/2} = 0 \quad \ldots (1)$$

Charpit's auxiliary equations are

$$\frac{dp}{p - p(1+pq)^{1/2}} = \frac{dq}{q - q(1+pq)^{1/2}} = \ldots$$

or $\dfrac{dp}{p} = \dfrac{dq}{q}$ $\therefore p = aq$ ... (2)

Putting in (1), we get

$$q(ax + y) = z(1 + aq^2)^{1/2}$$

or $q^2[(ax + y^2) - az^2] = z^2$

$\therefore$ $q = \dfrac{z}{[(ax+y^2) - az^2)]^{1/2}}$ and $p = aq = \dfrac{az}{[(ax+y^2) - az^2]^{1/2}}$

putting these values of p and q in $dz = p\,dx + q\,dy$,

$$dz = \frac{z(a\,dx + dy)}{\sqrt{\{(ax+y)^2 - az^2\}}} \text{ or } \frac{dz}{z} = \frac{a\,dx + dy}{\sqrt{\{(ax+y)^2 - az^2\}}}$$

Notes

Let $ax + y = \sqrt{(a)}u \therefore a\,dx + dy = \sqrt{(a)}\,.\,du$

$$\therefore \quad \frac{dz}{z} = \frac{\sqrt{a}\,du}{\sqrt{(au^2 - az^2)}} \text{ or } \frac{du}{dz} = \frac{\sqrt{(u^2 - z^2)}}{z}$$

This is homogeneous equation. To solve it put $u = vz$, then

$$v + z\frac{dv}{dz} = \frac{1}{z}\sqrt{(v^2z^2 - z^2)}$$

$$\text{or} \quad z\frac{dv}{dz} = \{\sqrt{(v^2-1)} - v\}$$

$$\text{or} \quad \frac{dz}{z} = \frac{dv}{\sqrt{(v^2-1)} - v}$$

$$\text{or} \quad \frac{dz}{z} = -\{\sqrt{(v^2-1)} + v\}dv$$

$$\therefore \quad \log z = -\left[\frac{v}{2}\sqrt{[(v^2-1)]} - \frac{1}{2}\log\{v + \sqrt{(v^2-1)}\}\right] - \frac{v^2}{2} + b$$

$$\text{or} \quad \log z + \frac{v^2}{2} + \frac{v}{2}\sqrt{(v^2-1)} - \frac{1}{2}\log\{v + \sqrt{(v^2-1)}\} = b.$$

This is a complete integral, where $v = \frac{u}{z} = \frac{ax+y}{z\sqrt{a}}$

Example 12: Solve by Charpit's method:

$$(x^2 - y^2)\,pq - xy\,(p^2 - q^2) - 1 = 0. \quad \text{... (1)}$$

Solution:

$$f = (x^2 - y^2)\,pq - xy\,(p^2 - q^2) - 1 = 0$$

Charpit's auxiliary equations are

$$\frac{dp}{2pqx - z(p^2-q^2)} = \frac{dq}{-2ypq - x(p^2-q^2)} = \frac{dx}{-(x^2-y^2)y + 2pxy} = \frac{dy}{-(x^2-y^2)p - 2pxy} = \ldots$$

from which it follows that each fraction

$$= \frac{x\,dp + y\,dq + p\,dx + q\,dy}{0}$$

$$\therefore \quad (x\,dp + p\,dx) + (q\,dy + y\,dq) = 0$$

Integrating, $px + qy = a$

$$\therefore \quad p = \frac{a - qy}{x} \quad \text{... (2)}$$

Putting this value of p in (1), **Notes**

$$(x^2 - y^2)\left(\frac{a - qy}{x}\right)q - xy\left\{\frac{(a - qy)^2}{x^2} - q^2\right\} - 1 = 0$$

or $$\frac{a - qy}{x}\{(x^2 - y^2)q - (a - qy)y\} + xyq^2 - 1 = 0$$

or $$\frac{a - qy}{x}(x^2 q - ay) + xyq^2 - 1 = 0$$

or $$(a - qy)\,(x^2 q - ay) + x^2 yq^2 - x = 0$$

or $$aq\,(x^2 + y^2) = a^2 y + x.$$

$\therefore$ $$q = \frac{a^2 y + x}{a(x^2 + y^2)}$$

and $$p = \frac{1}{x}\left[a - \frac{(a^2 y + x)y}{a(x^2 + y^2)}\right] = \frac{a^2 x - y}{a(x^2 + y^2)}$$

Putting values of p and q in $dz = p\,dx + q\,dy$, we get

$$dz = \frac{(a^2 x - y)dx + (a^2 y + x).dy}{a(x^2 + y^2)}$$

or $$dz = a\frac{(x\,dx + y\,dy)}{x^2 + y^2} + \frac{x\,dy - y\,dx}{a(x^2 + y^2)}$$

Integrating,

$$z = \frac{a}{2}\log(x^2 + y^2) + \frac{1}{a}\tan^{-1}\frac{y}{x} + b.$$

Self Assessment

Apply Charpit's method to find the complete integrals of:

1. $pxy + qp + qy = y^2$.
2. $q = 3p^2$.
3. $p - 3x^2 = q^2 - y$.
4. $z = px + qy + p^2 + q^2$.
5. $2\,(pq + py + qx) + x^2 + y^2 = 0$.
6. $Zxp^2 - q = 0$

13.3 Special Types of First Order Equations

In the section we shall consider some special types of first-order partial differential equations whose solutions may be obtained easily by Charpit's Method.

Notes

(a) The equations involving only $p = \frac{\partial z}{\partial x}$ and $q = \frac{\partial z}{\partial y}$. In this case the equation to be solved will be of the type

$$f(p, q) = 0 \qquad \text{... (1)}$$

From the subsidiary equations

$$\frac{dp}{\frac{\partial f}{\partial x} + p\frac{\partial f}{\partial z}} = \frac{dq}{\frac{\partial f}{\partial z} + q\frac{\partial f}{\partial z}} = \frac{dz}{-p\frac{\partial f}{\partial p} - p\frac{\partial f}{\partial q}} = \frac{dx}{-\frac{\partial f}{\partial p}} = \frac{dy}{-\frac{\partial f}{\partial q}} = \frac{df}{0} \qquad \text{... (2)}$$

or

$$\frac{dp}{0} = \frac{dq}{0} = \frac{dz}{-p\frac{\partial f}{\partial p} - q\frac{\partial f}{\partial q}} = \frac{dx}{-\frac{\partial f}{\partial q}} = \frac{dy}{-\frac{\partial f}{\partial q}} \qquad \text{... (3)}$$

Now from first equation

$$dp = 0$$

or

$$p = a = \text{constant} \qquad \text{... (4)}$$

Substituting this value of p in (1) we have

$$f(a, q) = 0 \qquad \text{... (5)}$$

Solving for q from (5) we have

$$q = \phi(a) \qquad \text{... (6)}$$

So from the equation

$$dz = p\,dx + q\,dy = a\,dx + \phi(a)\,dy \qquad \text{... (7)}$$

We have on integration

$$z = ax + \phi(a)\,y + b$$

which is the general solution.

Example 1: Solve:

$pq = 1$

Solution:

Here again $p = a$ so $q = \frac{1}{a}$

Thus on integrating

$$dz = p\,dx + q\,dy$$

$$= a\,dx + \frac{1}{a}\,dy$$

$$z = ax + \frac{1}{a}y + b \qquad \text{where } a, b \text{ are constants}$$

Notes

Example 2: Solve:

$$p + q = pq \quad \text{... (1)}$$

Solution:

$$p = a \text{ (constant)}$$

so from (1)

$$a + q = aq$$

or $$q = \frac{a}{a-1}$$

Thus $$dz = a\,dx + \frac{a}{a-1}dy$$

given $$z = ax + \frac{a}{a-1}y + b$$

which is the general solution.

(b) Equations not involving independent variables consider the partial equation of the following type

$$f(z, p, q) = 0 \quad \text{... (1)}$$

which does not involve independent variables x, y.

From the subsidiary equations:

$$\frac{dp}{f_x + pf_z} = \frac{dq}{f_y + q\,f_z} = \frac{dz}{-pf_p - qf_q} = \frac{dx}{-f_p} = \frac{dy}{-f_q} = \frac{df}{0} \quad \text{... (2)}$$

Here the symbols used are

$$f_x = \frac{\partial f}{\partial x}, f_p = \frac{\partial f}{\partial p}, f_z = \frac{\partial f}{\partial z}, f_q = \frac{\partial f}{\partial q}, f_y = \frac{\partial f}{\partial y} \quad \text{... (3)}$$

So from the first two fractions of (2) we have

$$\frac{dp}{pf_z} = \frac{dq}{qf_z}$$

Integrating, we have

$$p = aq \quad \text{... (4)}$$

From equations (1) and (4) we can find p and q and the complete integral follows from the relation.

$$dz = pdx + q\,dy \quad \text{... (5)}$$

Example 3: Find the complete integral of the equation

$$p^2z^2 + q^2 = 1 \quad \text{... (6)}$$

As (6) does not involve x, y. So from the above method

$$q = pa_1 \quad \text{... (7)}$$

Notes

Substituting in (6) we have

$$p^2z^2 + a^2, q^2 = 1$$

$$p^2 = \frac{1}{z^2 + a_1^2}$$

or $$p = \pm \left(z^2 + a_1^2\right)^{-1/2} \quad \text{... (8)}$$

Substituting in

$$dz = p\,dx + q\,dy$$

$$dz = \pm \frac{dx}{\left(z^2 + a_1^2\right)^{-1/2}} \pm \frac{a_1 dy}{\left(z^2 + a_1^2\right)^{1/2}}$$

we have

$$\left(z^2 + a_1^2\right)^{1/2} dz = dx + a_1\,dy$$

so $$\int \left(z^2 + a_1^2\right)^{1/2} dz = x + a_1 y + a_2 \quad \text{... (9)}$$

It can be shown that

$$\int \left(z^2 + a_1^2\right)^{1/2} dz = \frac{z}{2}\left(z^2 + a_1^2\right)^{1/2} + \frac{a_1^2}{2}\log\left(\frac{z + \sqrt{z_1^2 + a_1^2}}{a_1}\right) \quad \text{... (10)}$$

So the solution is (9) with integral (10).

(c) Separable equation

Let the equation be of the form

$$f(x, p) = g(y, q) \quad \text{... (11)}$$

instead of

$$\mathrm{F}(x, y, z, p, q) = 0 \quad \text{... (12)}$$

Then from the subsidiary equations, we have

$$\frac{dp}{f_x} = \frac{dq}{-g_y} = \frac{dx}{-f_p} = \frac{dy}{+g_q} = \frac{dz}{-(pf_p + qg_q)}$$

So $$\frac{dp}{dx} - \frac{f_x}{f_p} = 0$$

or $$fp\,dp - fx\,dx = 0 \quad \text{... (13)}$$

which can be solved for p. Similarly we can solve for q and the complete integral is obtained.

Example 4: Solve

$$p^2 y(1 + x^2) = q\,x^2 \quad \text{... (14)}$$

Notes

On rearranging we have

$$\frac{p^2(1+x^2)}{x^2} = \frac{q}{y} = a^2 \text{ (say)} \qquad \text{... (15)}$$

Then $\qquad q = a^2y$ and $p = \dfrac{ax}{(1+x^2)^{1/2}}$

Thus $\qquad dz = pdx + qdy,$

On integration gives

$$z = \int \frac{ax\,dx}{(1+x^2)^{1/2}} + a^2.\frac{y^2}{2} + b$$

$$z = a(1+x^2)^{1/2} + \frac{a^2}{2}y^2 + b \qquad \text{... (16)}$$

is the complete integral.

(d) Clairaut's Equations

A first order partial differential equation of the form

$$z = px + qy + f(p, q) \qquad \text{... (17)}$$

is of Clairaut type of the equation. Here

$$F = px + qy + f(p, q) - z = 0 \qquad \text{... (18)}$$

So from the corresponding Charpit's equations, we have

$$\frac{dp}{p-p} = \frac{dq}{q-q} = \frac{dz}{-p(x+f_p)-q(y+f_q)} = \frac{dx}{-x-f_p} = \frac{dy}{-y-f_q}, \qquad \text{... (19)}$$

We have

$p = a$ (say a constant)

$q = b$ (a constant).

So from (17)

$$z = ax + by + f(a, b) \qquad \text{... (20)}$$

is the complete solution of (17).

Example 5: Solve:

$$pqz = p^2(xq + p^2) + q^2(yp + q^2) \qquad \text{... (21)}$$

Solution:

From (21)

$$z = px + qy + \frac{p^3}{q} + \frac{q^3}{p}$$

So we have Clairaut equation type

$$p = a, q = b,$$

so $$z = ax + by + \frac{a^4 + b^4}{ab} \quad \text{... (22)}$$

is the complete solution.

Self Assessment

7. Find the complete integral of

   $z = px + qy + p^4 + q^4 + p^2q^2$

8. Find the solution of

   $p\,(q^2 + 1) = q\,(z - b)$

13.4 Summary

- Charpit method is quite useful in finding the complete integral of the first order partial differential equation.
- Here we are interested in setting up auxiliary equations with the help of which the values of p and q are obtained.
- Knowledge of the first derivatives $\frac{\partial z}{\partial x}, \frac{\partial z}{\partial y}$ or p and q respectively help in finding the complete integral involving two arbitrary constants.

13.5 Keywords

Charpit's method helps in finding the complete integral of the first order partial differential equation.

Jacobi's method: It deals with two independent variables and so to solve partial differential equation having more than two independent variables we have to take the help of Jacobi's method.

13.6 Review Questions

Solve by Charpit's method:

1. $p^2x + q^2y = z$
2. $p^2 - y^2q = y^2 - x^2$
3. $yp = 2yx + \log q$
4. $z^2\,(p^2z^2 + q^2) = 1$

Answers: Self Assessment

1. $z = c_1x + c_2e^y\,(y + c_1) - c_1$
2. $z = ax + 3a^2y + b$

Notes

3. $z = x^3 + ax + \frac{2}{3}(y+a)^{3/2} + b$

4. $z = ax + by + a^2 + b^2$

5. $2z = ax - x^2 + ay - y^2 + \frac{1}{2}(x-y)\sqrt{\left[2(x-y)^2 + a^2\right]}$

6. $z^2 = 2ax + a^2y^2 + b$

7. $z = ax + by + a^4 + b^4 + a^2b^2$

8. $2\sqrt{\left[a(z-b-a)\right]} = ax + y + c$

13.7 Further Readings

Books

Piaggio H.T.H., Differential Equations

Sneddon L.N., Elements of Partial Differential Equations

Unit 14: Jacobi's Method for Solving Partial Differential Equations

CONTENTS

Objectives

Introduction

14.1 Jacobi's Method of Solution of Partial Differential Equations

14.2 Simultaneous Partial Differential Equations

14.3 Summary

14.4 Keywords

14.5 Review Questions

14.6 Further Readings

Objectives

After studying this unit, you should be able to:

- Know that Jacobi's method for solving partial differential equation is similar to that of Charpit's method.
- See that two additional equations are to be found through which the first order derivatives $\frac{\partial z}{\partial x_1}, \frac{\partial z}{\partial x_2}, \frac{\partial z}{\partial x_3}$ can be found that help in finding the solution of the first order partial differential equations.

Introduction

Jacobi's method consists of setting up the subsidiary equations.

Through the solution of subsidiary equations two independent integrals will be found and the method uses techniques to solve the first order partial differential equation.

14.1 Jacobi's Method of Solution of Partial Differential Equations

In Jacobi's method we have to deal with three or more independent variables and one dependent variable. Consider the equation

$$F(x_1, x_2, x_3, p_1, p_2, p_3) = 0 \qquad (1)$$

Where the dependent variable z does not occur except by its partial differential coefficients p_1, p_2, p_3 with respect to the three independent variables x_1, x_2, x_3. The basic idea of Jacobi's method is very similar to that of Charpit's.

So we try to find two additional equations

$$F_1(x_1, x_2, x_3, p_1, p_2, p_3) = \alpha_1 \qquad ...(2)$$

Notes

$$F_2(x_1, x_2, x_3, p_1, p_2, p_3) = \alpha_2 \qquad ...(3)$$

Here α_1 and α_2 are arbitrary constants. These equations are such that p_1, p_2, p_3 can be found from (1), (2), (3) as functions of x_1, x_2, x_3 that make the equation

$$dz = p_1 dx_1 + p_2 dx_2 + p_3 dx_3 \qquad ...(4)$$

integrable, for which the conditions are

$$\frac{\partial p_2}{\partial x_1} = \frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x_1 \partial x_2} = \frac{\partial p_1}{\partial x_2}, \frac{\partial p_3}{\partial x_1} = \frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x_1 \partial x_3} = \frac{\partial p_1}{\partial x_1}, \frac{\partial p_3}{\partial x_2} = \frac{\partial p_2}{\partial x_3} \qquad ...(5)$$

Now by differentiating (1) partially with respect to x_1, keeping x_2, x_3 constant, but regarding p_1, p_2, p_3, as dependent functions of x_1, x_2, x_3, we get

$$\frac{\partial F}{\partial x_1} + \frac{\partial F}{\partial p_1}\frac{\partial p_1}{\partial x_1} + \frac{\partial F}{\partial p_2}\frac{\partial p_2}{\partial x_1} + \frac{\partial F}{\partial p_3}\frac{\partial p_3}{\partial x_1} = 0 \qquad ...(6)$$

Similarly

$$\frac{\partial F_1}{\partial x_1} + \frac{\partial F_1}{\partial p_1}\frac{\partial p_1}{\partial x_1} + \frac{\partial F_1}{\partial p_2}\frac{\partial \mathrm{p}_2}{\partial x_1} + \frac{\partial F_1}{\partial p_3}\frac{\partial p_3}{\partial x_1} = 0 \qquad ...(7)$$

Multiplying equation (6) by $\frac{\partial F_1}{\partial p_1}$ and equation (7) by $\frac{\partial F}{\partial p_1}$, and subtracting we get

$$\frac{\partial(F, F_1)}{\partial(x_1, p_1)} + \frac{\partial(F, F_1)}{\partial(p_2, p_1)}\frac{\partial p_2}{\partial x_1} + \frac{\partial(F, F_1)}{\partial(p_3, p_1)}\frac{\partial p_3}{\partial x_1} = 0 \qquad ...(8)$$

where

$$\frac{\partial(F, F_1)}{\partial(x_1, p_1)} \text{ denotes "Jacobian" } \frac{\partial F}{\partial x_1}\frac{\partial F_1}{\partial p_1} - \frac{\partial F}{\partial p_1}\frac{\partial F_1}{\partial x_1}.$$

Similarly, like (8) we get

$$\frac{\partial(F, F_1)}{\partial(x_2, p_2)} + \frac{\partial(F, F_1)}{\partial(p_1, p_2)}\frac{\partial p_1}{\partial x_2} + \frac{\partial(F, F_1)}{\partial(p_3, p_2)}\frac{\partial p_3}{\partial x_2} = 0 \qquad ...(9)$$

and

$$\frac{\partial(F, F_1)}{\partial(x_3, p_3)} + \frac{\partial(F, F_1)}{\partial(p_1, p_3)}\frac{\partial p_1}{\partial x_3} + \frac{\partial(F, F_1)}{\partial(p_2, p_3)}\frac{\partial p_2}{\partial x_3} = 0 \qquad ...(10)$$

Add equation (8), (9) and (10) and noting that two pairs of terms are:

$$\frac{\partial(F, F_1)}{\partial(p_2, p_1)}\frac{\partial p_2}{\partial x_1} + \frac{\partial(F, F_1)}{\partial(p_1, p_2)}\frac{\partial p_1}{\partial x_2} = \frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x_1 \partial x_2}\left[\frac{\partial(F, F_1)}{\partial(p_2, p_1)} + \frac{\partial(F, F_1)}{\partial(p_1, p_2)}\right] = 0$$

Similarly two other pairs of terms also vanish, leaving

$$\frac{\partial(F, F_1)}{\partial(x_1, p_1)} + \frac{\partial(F, F_1)}{\partial(x_2, p_2)} + \frac{\partial(F, F_1)}{\partial(x_3, p_3)} = 0 \qquad ...(11)$$

Notes

i.e. on expansion

$$\frac{\partial F}{\partial x_1}\frac{\partial F_1}{\partial p_1}-\frac{\partial F}{\partial p_1}\frac{\partial F_1}{\partial x_1}+\frac{\partial F}{\partial x_2}\frac{\partial F_1}{\partial p_2}-\frac{\partial F}{\partial p_2}\frac{\partial F_1}{\partial x_2}+\frac{\partial F}{\partial x_3}\frac{\partial F_1}{\partial p_3}-\frac{\partial F}{\partial p_3}\frac{\partial F_1}{\partial x_3} = 0 \qquad \text{...(12)}$$

The equation (12) is generally written as $(F, F_1) = 0$.

Similarly

$$(F, F_2) = 0 \text{ and } (F_1, F_2) = 0.$$

But these are linear equations having more than two independent variables. Here we have the following rule.

Try to find two independent integrals, $F_1 = a_1$ and $F_2 = a_2$, of the subsidiary equations

$$\frac{dx_1}{-\frac{\partial F}{\partial p_1}}=\frac{dp_1}{\frac{\partial F}{\partial x_1}}=\frac{dx_2}{-\frac{\partial F}{\partial p_2}}=\frac{dp_2}{\frac{\partial F}{\partial x_2}}=\frac{\partial x_3}{-\frac{\partial F}{\partial p_3}} = \frac{dp_3}{\frac{\partial F}{\partial x_3}} \qquad \text{...(13)}$$

If F_1, F_2 satisfy the conditions

$$(F_1, F_2) = \sum_{r=1,2,3}\left[\frac{\partial F_1}{\partial x_r}\frac{\partial F_2}{\partial p_r}-\frac{\partial F_1}{\partial p_r}\frac{\partial F_2}{\partial x_r}\right] = 0,$$

and if the p's can be found as functions of the x's from

$$F = F_1 - a_1 = F_2 - a_2 = 0,$$

then integrate the equation formed by substituting these functions in

$$dz = p_1 dx_1 + p_2 dx_2 + p_3 dx_3.$$

Examples of Jacobi Method

1. Solve

$$2p_1x_1x_3 + 3p_2x_3^2 + p_2^2p_3 = 0$$

Solution:

Let $\quad F = 2p_1x_1x_3 + 3p_2x_3^2 + p_2^2p_3 = 0 \qquad \text{...(1)}$

The subsidiary equations are

$$\frac{dx_1}{-\frac{\partial F}{\partial p_1}}=\frac{dp_1}{\frac{\partial F}{\partial x_1}}=\frac{dx_2}{-\frac{\partial F}{\partial p_2}}=\frac{dp_2}{\frac{\partial F}{\partial x_2}}=\frac{dx_3}{-\frac{\partial F}{\partial p_3}}=\frac{dp_3}{\frac{\partial F}{\partial x_3}} \qquad (2)$$

Now

$$-\frac{\partial F}{\partial p_1} = -2x_1x_3, \frac{\partial F}{\partial x_1} = 2p_1x_3, -\frac{\partial F}{\partial p_2} = -3x_3^2 - 2p_2p_3, \frac{\partial F}{\partial x_2} = 0,$$

$$\frac{-\partial F}{\partial p_3} = -p_2^2, \frac{\partial F}{\partial x_3} = 2p_1x_1 + 6p_2x_3$$

So the auxiliary equations are **Notes**

$$\frac{dx_1}{-2x_1x_3} = \frac{dp_1}{2p_1x_3} = \frac{dx_2}{-3x_2^2 - 2p_2p_3} = \frac{dp_2}{0} = \frac{dx_3}{-p_2^2} = \frac{dp_3}{2p_1x_1 + 6p_2x_3^2} \quad ...(3)$$

of which integrals are obtained by integrating the equations

$$-\frac{dx_1}{x_1} = \frac{dp_1}{p_1}$$

$$dp_2 = 0$$

or

$$F_1 = x_1p_1 = a_1 \quad ...(4)$$

$$F_2 = p_2 = a_2 \quad ...(5)$$

Now consider

$$(F_1, F_2) = \frac{\partial F_1}{\partial x_1}\frac{\partial F_2}{\partial p_1} - \frac{\partial F_1}{\partial p_1}\frac{\partial F_2}{\partial x_1} + \frac{\partial F_1}{\partial x_2}\frac{\partial F_2}{\partial p_2} - \frac{\partial F_1}{\partial p_2}\frac{\partial F_2}{\partial x_2} + \frac{\partial F_1}{\partial x_3}\frac{\partial F_2}{\partial p_3} - \frac{\partial F_1}{\partial p_3}\frac{\partial F_2}{\partial x_3}$$

$$= p_1(0) - x_1(0) + 0 + 0 + 0 + 0 = 0$$

So equations (4) and (5) can be taken as the two additional equations required. So

$$p_1 = \frac{a_1}{x_1}, p_2 = a_2$$

And from equation (1) we have

$$p_3 = \left(-2x_3a_1 - 3a_2x_3^2\right)\Big| a_2^2 = -\left(2a_1x_3 + 3a_2x_3^2\right)\Big| a_2^2$$

Hence

$$dz = p_1dx_1 + p_2dx_2 + p_3dx_3$$

$$= \frac{a_1dx_1}{x_1} + a_2dx_2 - \left(2a_1x_3 + 3a_2x_3^2\right)\frac{dx_3}{a_2^2}$$

So on integration we get

$$z = a_1 \log x_1 + a_2x_2 - \frac{1}{a_2^2}\left(a_1x_3^2 + a_2x_3^3\right) + a_3$$

as the complete integral.

2. Solve

$$\left(x_2 + x_3\right)\left(p_2 + p_3\right)^2 + zp_1 = 0 \quad ...(1)$$

Solution:

This equation is not of Jacobi's type as it involves z. But put

$$z = x_4$$

so $$p_1 = \frac{\partial z}{\partial x_1} = \frac{\partial x_4}{\partial x_1} = -\frac{\partial u}{\partial x_1}\Big|\frac{\partial u}{\partial x_4} = -p_1/p_4 \quad \text{...(say)}$$

Notes

where $u = 0$ is an integral of (1).

Similarly

$$p_2 = \frac{\partial z}{\partial x_2} = \frac{\partial x_4}{\partial x_2} = -\frac{\partial u}{\partial x_2}\bigg|\frac{\partial u}{\partial x_4} = -P_2 / P_4$$

$$p_3 = \frac{\partial z}{\partial x_3} = \frac{\partial x_4}{\partial x_3} = -\frac{\partial u}{\partial x_3}\bigg|\frac{\partial u}{\partial x_4} = -P_3 / P_4$$

So equation (1) becomes

$$F = (x_2 + x_3)(P_2 + P_3)^2 - x_4 p_1 p_4 = 0 \qquad ...(2)$$

So equation (2) involves four variables, but not involving the dependent variable u. Now

$$-\frac{\partial F}{\partial P_1} = x_4 P_4, \frac{\partial F}{\partial x_1} = 0, -\frac{\partial F}{\partial P_2} = -2(x_2 + x_3)(P_2 + P_3)$$

$$\frac{\partial F}{\partial x_2} = (P_2 + P_3)^2, -\frac{\partial F}{\partial P_3} = -2(x_2 + x_3)(P_2 + P_3), \frac{\partial F}{\partial x_3} = (P_2 + P_3)^2$$

$$-\frac{\partial F}{\partial P_4} = x_4 P_1; \frac{\partial F}{\partial x_4} = -P_1 P_4.$$

The subsidiary equations are

$$\frac{dx_1}{x_4 P_4} = \frac{dP_1}{0} = \frac{dx_2}{-2(x_2 + x_3)(P_2 + P_3)} = \frac{dP_2}{(P_2 + P_3)^2} = \frac{dx_3}{-2(x_2 + x_3)(P_2 + P_3)}$$

$$= \frac{dP_3}{(P_2 + P_3)^2} = \frac{dx_4}{x_4 P_1} = \frac{dP_4}{-P_1 P_4}$$

of which integrals are

$$F_1 = P_1 = a_1, \quad dp_2 = dp_3, \text{ so } P_2 - P_3 = a_2 = F_2$$

$$\frac{dx_4}{x_4 P_1} = \frac{dP_4}{-P_1 P_4}, \text{ so } x_4 P_4 = a_3 = F_3$$

so

$$F_1 = P_1 = a_1 \qquad ...(3)$$

$$F_2 = P_2 - P_3 = a_2 \qquad ...(4)$$

$$P_3 = x_4 P_4 = a_3 \qquad ...(5)$$

We have to ensure that $(F_r, F_s) = 0$, where r and s are any two of the indices 1, 2, 3. To see $(F_1, F_2) = 0$, we have

$$\frac{\partial F_1}{\partial x_1}\frac{\partial F_2}{\partial P_1} - \frac{\partial F_1}{\partial P_1}\frac{\partial F_2}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial F_1}{\partial x_2}\frac{\partial F_2}{\partial P_2} - \frac{\partial F_1}{\partial P_2}\frac{\partial F_2}{\partial x_2} + \frac{\partial F_1}{\partial x_3}\frac{\partial F_2}{\partial P_3} - \frac{\partial F_1}{\partial P_3}\frac{\partial F_2}{\partial x_3}$$

$$+\frac{\partial F_1}{\partial x_4}\frac{\partial F_2}{\partial P_4} - \frac{\partial F_1}{\partial P_4}\cdot\frac{\partial F_2}{\partial x_4} = 0 \qquad ...(6)$$

Notes

as F_1, F_2 do not contain x_1, x_2, x_3 and x_4.

From (3) and (5) we have

$$P_1 = a_1, P_4 = \frac{a_3}{x_4}$$

From (4) we have

$$P_2 = P_3 + a_2 \quad \text{...(7)}$$

Substituting in (2) we have

$$(x_2 + x_3)(2P_3 + a_2)^2 - a_1 a_3 = 0$$

$$P_2 + P_3 = (2P_3 + a_2) = \pm\sqrt{\frac{a_1 a_3}{(x_2 + x_3)}} \quad \text{...(8)}$$

$$\therefore \quad 2P_2 = a_2 \pm \sqrt{\frac{a_1 a_3}{(x_2 + x_3)}} \quad \text{...(9)}$$

$$2P_3 = -a_2 \pm \sqrt{\frac{a_1 a_3}{(x_2 + x_3)}} \quad \text{...(10)}$$

$$du = P_1 dx_1 + P_2 dx_2 + P_3 dx_3 + P_4 dx_4$$

$$= a_1 dx_1 + \frac{a_3 dx_4}{x_4} + \frac{a_2}{2}(dx_2 - dx_3) \pm \frac{1}{2}\sqrt{\frac{a_1 a_3}{(x_2 + x_3)}}(dx_2 + dx_3)$$

on integration we get

$$u = a_1 x_1 + a_3 \log(x_4) + \frac{a_2}{2}(x_2 - x_3) \pm \frac{1}{2}\sqrt{a_1 a_3}(x_2 + x_3)^{1/2} + a_4$$

so $u = 0$ gives, replacing x_4 by z, and dividing by a_3 we have

$$\frac{a_1}{a_3} x_1 + \log z + \frac{a_2}{2a_3}(x_2 - x_3) \pm \sqrt{\frac{a_1}{a_3}}(x_2 + x_3)^{1/2} + \frac{a_4}{a_3} = 0$$

Let $\frac{a_1}{a_3} = A_1, \frac{a_2}{2a_3} = A_2, \frac{a_4}{a_3} = A_3$ we have the required equation:

$$\log z + A_1 x + A_2 (x_2 - x_3) \pm \sqrt{A_1}(x_2 + a_3)^{1/2} + A_3 = 0 \quad \text{...(11)}$$

3. Solve

$$p^2 x_1 + q^2 x_2 = z \quad \text{...(1)}$$

Solution:

Let $z = x_3$; let $u(x_1, x_2, x_3) = 0$ be the solution.

$$p = \frac{\partial z}{\partial x_1} = \frac{\partial x_3}{\partial x_1} = \frac{p_1}{P_3}, \quad \text{where } P_1 = \frac{\partial u}{\partial x_1}, P_3 = \frac{\partial u}{\partial x_3}$$

$$q = \frac{\partial z}{\partial x_2} = \frac{\partial x_3}{\partial x_2} = \frac{P_2}{P_3} \quad \text{where } P_2 = \frac{\partial u}{\partial x_2}$$

Substituting in (1)

$$F = P_1^2 x_1 + P_2^2 x_2 - P_3^2 x_3 = 0 \qquad ...(2)$$

The subsidiary equations are

$$\frac{dx_1}{-\frac{\partial F}{\partial P_1}} = \frac{dP_1}{\frac{\partial F}{\partial x_1}} = \frac{dx_2}{-\frac{\partial F}{\partial P_2}} = \frac{dP_2}{\frac{\partial F}{\partial x_2}} = \frac{dx_3}{-\frac{\partial F}{\partial P_3}} = \frac{dP_3}{\frac{\partial F}{\partial x_3}} \qquad ...(3)$$

or

$$\frac{dx_1}{-2P_1x_1} = \frac{dP_1}{P_1^2} = \frac{dx_2}{-2P_2x_2} = \frac{dP_2}{P_2^2} = \frac{dx_3}{2P_3x_3} = \frac{dP_3}{-P_3^2} \qquad ...(4)$$

From first two terms

$$P_1^2 x_1 = c_1, P_2^2 x_2 = c_2,$$

From (2) $\quad P_3^2 = \frac{c_1 + c_2}{x_3}$

Thus $\quad du = P_1 dx_1 + P_2 dx_2 + P_3 dx_3 \qquad ...(5)$

Substituting the values of P_1, P_2 and P_3 we have

$$du = \sqrt{\frac{c_1}{x_1}}\,dx_1 + \sqrt{\frac{c_2}{x_2}}\,dx_2 + \sqrt{\frac{c_1 + c_2}{x_3}}\,dx_3$$

On integrating we have

$$u = 2(c_1x_1)^{1/2} + 2(c_2x_2)^{1/2} + 2[(c_1 + c_2)z]^{1/2} + c_3 \text{ Q.E.D.}$$

4. Solve

$$F = p_1^2 + p_2^2 + p_3 - 1 = 0$$

$$-\frac{\partial F}{\partial p} = -2p_1, \frac{\partial F}{\partial x_1} = 0, \frac{\partial F}{\partial x_2} = 0, \frac{\partial F}{\partial x_3} = 0, -\frac{\partial F}{\partial p_2} = -2p_2, -\frac{\partial F}{\partial p_3} = -1$$

Solution:

The subsidiary equations are

$$\frac{dx_1}{-2p_1} = \frac{dp_1}{0} = \frac{dx_2}{-2p_2} = \frac{dp_2}{0} = \frac{dx_3}{-1} = \frac{dp_3}{0}$$

$$p_1 = a, p_2 = b, p_3 = 1 - a^2 - b^2$$

$$F_1 = p_1 = a, F_2 = p_2 = b$$

$$(F_1, F_2) = 0$$

$$dz = a\,dx_1 + b\,dx_2 + (1 - a^2 - b^2)dx_3$$

$$z = a\,x_1 + b\,x_2 + (1 - a^2 - b^2)x_3 + a_3 \qquad \text{Q.E.D.}$$

Self Assessment

1. Apply Jacobi's method to find complete integral of the following:

$$x_3^2 p_1^2 p_2^2 p_3^2 + p_1^2 p_2^2 - p_3^2 = 0$$

Notes

2. Find the complete integral for

$$p_3x_3(p_1+p_2)+x_1+x_2=0$$

14.2 Simultaneous Partial Differential Equations

In Jacobi's method two additional equations are needed to solve the partial differential equation by Jacobi's method.

In this section the problem of finding the solution of the partial differential equation $F = 0$ with some work of finding F_1 is already done. The method can be illustrated by the following examples:

Example 1: Find the complete integral for the partial differential equations.

$$F = p_1x_1+p_2x_2-p_3^2=0 \quad ...(1)$$

$$F_1 = p_1-p_2+p_3-1=0 \quad ...(2)$$

Here

$$(F,F_1) = \frac{\partial F}{\partial x_1}\frac{\partial F_1}{\partial p_1}-\frac{\partial F}{\partial p_1}\cdot\frac{\partial F_1}{\partial x_1}+\frac{\partial F}{\partial x_2}\frac{\partial F_1}{\partial p_2}-\frac{\partial F}{\partial p_2}\frac{\partial F_1}{\partial x_2}+\frac{\partial F}{\partial x_3}\frac{\partial F_1}{\partial p_3}-\frac{\partial F}{\partial p_3}\cdot\frac{\partial F_1}{\partial x_3}$$

$$= p_1\cdot 1-x_1(0)+p_2(-1)-x_2(0)+0\cdot(1)+2p_3(0)=p_1-p_2 \quad ...(3)$$

Now $(F,F_1)\neq 0,$ now to make

$$(F,F_1) = 0, \text{ we have } p_1=p_2 \quad ...(4)$$

From equation (2) $\qquad p_3 = 1 \quad ...(5)$

So $\qquad$ From (1), $p_1(x_1+x_2)-1 = 0$, so $p_1=\dfrac{1}{(x_1+x_2)}$ $\quad ...(6)$

$$dz = p_1dx_1+p_2dx_2+p_3dx_3$$

$$= \frac{dx_1}{x_1+x_2}+\frac{dx_2}{x_1+x_2}+1dx_3$$

or

$$dz = \frac{dx_1+dx_2}{x_1+x_2}+dx_3 \quad ...(7)$$

on integrating (7) we have

$$z = \log(x_1+x_2)+x_3+a \quad ...(8)$$

which is the complete integral of (1).

Example 2: Find the complete integral for

$$F = 2x_3p_1p_3-x_4p_4=0 \quad ...(1)$$

$$F1 = 2p_1-p_2=0 \quad ...(2)$$

Now

$$(F,F_1) = \frac{\partial F}{\partial x_1}\frac{\partial F_1}{\partial p_1}-\frac{\partial F}{\partial p_1}\cdot\frac{\partial F_1}{\partial x_1}+\frac{\partial F}{\partial x_2}\frac{\partial F_1}{\partial p_2}-\frac{\partial F}{\partial p_2}\cdot\frac{\partial F_1}{\partial x_2}$$

Notes

$$+\frac{\partial F}{\partial x_3}\cdot\frac{\partial F_1}{\partial p_3}-\frac{\partial F}{\partial p_3}\cdot\frac{\partial F_1}{\partial x_3}+\frac{\partial F}{\partial x_4}\cdot\frac{\partial F_1}{\partial p_4}-\frac{\partial F}{\partial p_4}\cdot\frac{\partial F_1}{\partial x_4}$$

$$= (2p_1p_3)(0)-2x_3p_1\cdot(0)-p_4\cdot(0)+0=0 \quad ...(3)$$

The next step is to find F_2 and F_3 such that

$$(F,F_2) = 0 = (F_1,F_2) \quad ...(4)$$

Now

$$-\frac{\partial F}{\partial p_1} = -2x_3p_3, -\frac{\partial F}{\partial p_2}=0, -\frac{\partial F}{\partial p_3}=-2x_3p_1, -\frac{\partial F}{\partial p_4}=x_4$$

$$\frac{\partial F}{\partial x_1} = 0, \frac{\partial F}{\partial x_2}=0, \frac{\partial F}{\partial x_3}=2p_1p_3, \frac{\partial F}{\partial x_4}=-p_4$$

$$\frac{dx_1}{-2x_3p_3} = \frac{dx_2}{0}=\frac{dx_3}{-2x_3p_1}=\frac{dx_4}{-p_4}=\frac{dp_1}{0}=\frac{dp_2}{0}=\frac{dp_3}{2p_1p_3}=\frac{dp_4}{-p_4}$$

$$p_2 = a_2 \quad ...(4)$$

so $$F_2 = p_2 = a_2, \text{ so } (F,F_2)=0=(F_1,F_2)$$

Also from $$\frac{dx_3}{-2x_3p_1} = \frac{dp_3}{2p_1p_3}, \text{ on integration}$$

$$F_3 = x_3p_3 = a_3 \quad ...(5)$$

Again $$(F_1,F_3) = 0=(F,F_3)=0=(F_2,F_3)=0$$

$$p_1 = \frac{a_2}{2}, p_2=a_2, p_3=\frac{a_3}{x_3}, p_4=\frac{2x_3p_3p_1}{x_4}=\frac{a_3a_2}{2x_4}$$

so from the relation

$$du = p_1dx_1+p_2dx_2+p_3dx_3+p_4dx_4$$

$$= \frac{a_2}{2}dx_1+a_2dx_2+\frac{dx_3a_3}{x_3}+\frac{a_3a_2dx_4}{2x_4} \quad ...(6)$$

On integrating (6) we have the complete integral

$$u = \frac{a_2}{2}x_1+a_2x_2+a_3\log x_3+\frac{a_2a_3}{2}\log x_4+a_4 \quad ...(7)$$

Self Assessment

3. Solve for complete integral of

$$F = p_1^2+p_2p_3x_2x_3^2=0$$

$$F_1 = p_1+p_2x_2=0$$

4. Find the complete integral of

$$F = x_1p_1-x_2p_2+p_3-p_4=0$$

$$F_1 = p_1+p_2-x_1-x_2=0$$

14.3 Summary

- Jacobi's method of solution of the partial differential equation of the first order is very similar to that of Charpit's method.
- The method consists in setting up subsidiary equations through which two integrals are found that help in finding the solution.

14.4 Keywords

The ***subsidiary equations*** help us in finding the two independent integrals.

Independent integrals help in finding the partial derivatives $\frac{\partial u}{\partial x_1}, \frac{\partial u}{\partial x_2}, \frac{\partial u}{\partial x_3}$ and so the solution can be found.

14.5 Review Questions

1. Find the solution of

$$F = p_1 + p_2 + p_2^2 - 3x_1 - 3x_2 - 4x_3^2 = 0$$

with additional equations

$$F_1 = x_1p_1 - x_2p_2 - 2x_1^2 + 2x_2^2 = 0$$

$$F_2 = p_3 - 2x_3 = 0$$

2. Find complete integral of

$$p_1x_3^2 + p_3 = 0$$

$$p_2x_3^2 + p_3x_2^2 = 0$$

3. Find the complete integral of

$$2x_1x_3p_1p_3z + x_2p_2 = 0$$

Answers: Self Assessment

1. $z = a_1x_1 + a_2x_2 \pm \sin^{-1}(a_1a_2x_3) + a_3$
2. $4a_1z = 4a_1^2 \log x_3 + 2a_1a_2(x_1 - x_2) - (x_1 + x_2)^2 + 4a_1a_3$
3. $z = a(x_1 - \log x_2 - 1/x_3) + b$
4. $z = x_1x_2 + a(x_3 + x_4) + b$

14.6 Further Readings

Books

Piaggio H.T.H., Differential Equations

Sneddon L.W., Elements of Partial Differential equations

Unit 15: Higher Order Equations with Constant Coefficients and Monge's Method

CONTENTS

Objectives

Introduction

15.1 Linear Partial differential equations of order n with constant coefficients; complementary functions

15.2 Case when the auxiliary equation has equal roots

15.3 The Particular Integral (P.I.)

15.4 Shorter Method for Finding Particular Integral

15.5 General Method for Finding Particular Integral (P.I.)

15.6 The Non-homogeneous Equation with Constant Coefficients

15.7 Equation Reducible to Homogeneous Linear Form

15.8 Monge's Method

15.9 Monge's Method of integrating $Rr + Ss + Tt + U(rt - s^2) = V$

15.10 Summary

15.11 Keywords

15.12 Review Questions

15.13 Further Readings

Objectives

After studying this unit, you should be able to:

- Set up partial differential equations having higher order than that of first order.
- Know that various methods are employed depending upon the structure of the partial differential equation.
- See that each section is followed by a set of self assessment problems related to that section. By solving these problems the method can be understood.

Introduction

This section of the unit needs more practise for solving the various types of partial differential equations.

The problems are classified according to the method used in solving them. It is therefore essential to understand the method and its subsequent steps of solving the problem.

15.1 Linear Partial Differential Equations of Order *n* with Constant Coefficients; Complementary Functions

Notes

So far we have been dealing with partial differential equations of first order with first degree as well as with any degree. In this unit we shall introduce higher derivatives than the usual first order derivatives $\frac{\partial z}{\partial x}, \frac{\partial y}{\partial z}$. So we may have $\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x^2}, \frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x \partial y}, \frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial y^2}$ and so on and so forth. If we are dealing with only second order equations we denote $r = \frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x^2}, s = \frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x \partial y}$ and $t = \frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial y^2}$. In dealing with higher derivatives let us denote $\frac{\partial}{\partial x}$ by D and $\frac{\partial}{\partial y}$ by D′, then

$$\frac{\partial^2}{\partial x^2} = D^2, \frac{\partial^2}{\partial x \partial y} = DD' = D'D, \frac{\partial^2}{\partial y^2} = D'^2, \ldots$$

$\ldots \frac{\partial^n}{\partial x^n} = D^n, \frac{\partial^{n-1}}{\partial x^{n-1}} \frac{\partial}{\partial y} = D^{n-1} D'$ and so on. So we have to deal with a general equation of the form

$$F\left(x, y, z, \frac{\partial z}{\partial x}, \frac{\partial z}{\partial y}, \frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x^2}, \frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x \partial y}, \frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial y^2}, \ldots \frac{\partial^n z}{\partial x^n}, \ldots\right) = f(x, y) \qquad \ldots(1)$$

or

$$\left(A_0 D^n z + A_1 D^{n-1} D' z + A_2 D^{n-2} D'^2 + \ldots + A_n D'^n z\right)$$

$$+\left(B_0 D^{n-1} z + B_1 D^{n-2} D' Z + B_2 D^{n-3} D'^2 z + \ldots + B_{n-1} D'^{n-1} z\right)$$

$$+ \ldots + \left[M_0 Dz + M_1 D' z\right] + N_0 z = f(x, y) \qquad \ldots(2)$$

Thus equation (1) may be written as

$$F(D, D')z = f(x, y) \qquad \ldots(3)$$

Just as in the case of ordinary differential equations it can be shown that the complete solution of linear partial differential equation will consist of two parts, namely:

(i) The complementary function (C.F.), and

(ii) The particular integral (P.I.)

The complementary function is the general solution of the equation

$$F(D, D')z = 0 \qquad \ldots(4)$$

The particular integral is that value of z in terms of x, y which satisfies the equation (3) that contains no arbitrary constants.

A Linear Homogeneous partial differential equation of order n with constant coefficients is that in which $F(D, D')$ is a homogeneous function i.e. $f(D, D')$ and is of the form

$$f(D, D')z = (A_0 D^n + A_1 D^{n-1} D' + \ldots + A_n D^n)z = f(x, y) \qquad \ldots(5)$$

Non-homogeneous differential equation is not homogeneous i.e. if all terms of D, D' in the function $F(D, D')$ are not of the same degree.

Just as we deal with ordinary differential equation

$$(D^n + a_1 D^{n-1} + a_2 D^{n-2} + \ldots + a_n)y = f(x)$$

Where $D = \frac{d}{dx}$, we shall deal briefly with the corresponding equation in two independent variables,

$$(D^n + a_1 D^{n-1} D + a_2 D^{n-2} D'^2 + \ldots + a_n D'^n)z = f(x, y) \qquad \ldots(6)$$

where $D = \frac{\partial}{\partial x}$ and $D' = \frac{\partial}{\partial y}$.

The simplest case is

$$(D - mD')z = 0$$

i.e

$$\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial x} - m\frac{\partial}{\partial y}\right)z = 0$$

or

$$(p - mq) = 0$$

where

$$p = \frac{\partial z}{\partial x} \text{ and } q = \frac{\partial z}{\partial x}$$

or

$$z = \phi(y + mx)$$

This suggests what is easily verified, that the solution of (6) if $f(x, y) = 0$ is

$$Z = \phi_1(y + m_1 x) + \phi_2(y + m_2 x) + \ldots \phi_n(y + m_n x) \qquad \ldots(7)$$

where the constants $m_1, m_2, m_3, \ldots, m_n$ are the roots (supposed all different)

$$m^n + a_1 m^{n-1} + a_2 m^{n-2} + \ldots + a_n = 0 \qquad \ldots(8)$$

Example: Solve

$$\frac{\partial^3 z}{\partial x^3} - 3\frac{\partial^3 z}{\partial x^2 \partial y} + 2\frac{\partial^3 z}{\partial x \partial y^2} = 0$$

or

$$(D^3 - 3D^2 D' + 2DD'^2)z = 0$$

Now the roots of

$$m^3 - 3m^2 + 2m = 0$$

or 0, 1 and 2. So the solution is

$$z = F_1(y) + F_2(y + x) + F_3(y + 2x)$$

Self Assessment

1. Solve

$$(D^3 - 6D^2D' + 11D\,D'^2 - 6D'^3)z = 0$$

2. Solve

$$2r + 5s + 2t = 0$$

where $r = \frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x^2}, s = \frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x \partial y}, t = \frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial y^2}$

15.2 Case when the Auxiliary Equation has Equal Roots

Consider the equation

$$(D - mD')^2 z = 0 \qquad \text{...(9)}$$

Put $\quad (D - mD')z = u.$

Equation (9) becomes

$$(D - mD')u = 0$$

The solution is

$$u = F(y + mx)$$

Therefore

$$(D - mD')z = F(y + mx)$$

or

$$\frac{\partial z}{\partial x} - m\frac{\partial z}{\partial y} = F(y + mx)$$

The subsidiary equations are

$$\frac{dx}{1} = \frac{dy}{-m} = \frac{dz}{F(y + mx)}$$

From the first two terms we get

$$y + mx = a$$

and from first and last term we have

$$dz - F(y + mx)dx = 0$$

or

$$dz - F(a)dx = 0$$

So the solution is

$$z = xF(a) + b$$

Hence the solution is

$$\phi(z - x\,F(y+mx),\, y+mx) = 0$$

or $$z = x\,F(y+mx) = F_1(y+mx)$$

so $$z = x\,F(y+mx) + F_1(y+mx) \qquad ...(10)$$

In general, the solution of

$$(D - mD')^r z = 0$$

is $$z = F_1(y+mx) + x\,F_2(y+mx) + ... + x^{r-1}F_r(y+mx) \qquad ...(11)$$

Example 1: Solve

$$\frac{\partial^4 z}{\partial x^4} - 2\frac{\partial^4 z}{\partial x^3 \partial y} + 2\frac{\partial^4 z}{\partial x \partial y^3} - \frac{\partial^4 z}{\partial y^2} = 0$$

The auxiliary equation is

$$m^4 - 2m^3 + 2m - 1 = 0$$

$$m^4 - 1 - 2m(m^2 - 1) = 0$$

$$(m^2-1)(m^2+1) - 2m(m^2-1) = 0$$

$$(m^2-1)(m-1)^2 = 0 = (m+1)(m-1)^3$$

So the roots are 1, 1, 1, –1

Hence the solution is

$$z = F_1(y+x) + xF_2(y+x) + x^2F_3(y+x) + F_4(y-x)$$

Example 2: Solve

$$(25D^2 - 40DD' + 16D'^2)z = 0$$

The auxiliary equation is

$$25m^2 - 40m + 16 = 0$$

$$(5m-4)^2 = 0$$

The roots are $m = \frac{4}{5},\ 4/5$ are repeated roots so the solution is

$$z = F_1(5y+4x) + x\,F_2(5y+4x)$$

Self Assessment

3. Solve

$$\frac{\partial^3 z}{\partial x^3} - 4\frac{\partial^3 z}{\partial x^2 \partial y} + 4\frac{\partial^3 z}{\partial x \partial y^2} = 0$$

4. Solve

$$\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x^2} - 6\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x \partial y} + 9z = 0$$

15.3 The Particular Integral (P.I.)

We now return to the equation (3) *i.e.*

$$F(D,D')z = f(x,y) \quad ...(1)$$

Now the most general solution of equation (1) can be written as

$$z = \text{complementary function + Particular function}$$

or

$$z = \text{C.F + P.I} \quad ...(2)$$

In the above we have found C.F. for the homogeneous equation and now in the following find the P.I. We can write

$$\text{The particular integral} = \frac{1}{F(D,D')} f(x,y) \quad ...(12)$$

Here we treat the symbolic function of D and D' as we do D alone. We can factor. $F(D, D')$, resolve $\frac{1}{F(D,D')}$ into partial fractions on expanding in power series.

(a) **On Expansion**

Example 1: Solve

$$(D^2 - 4DD' + 4D'^2)z = 0$$

The complementary function is given by

$$(D^2 - 4DD' + 4D'^2)z = 0$$

$$\text{C.F.} = F_1(y+2x) + x\,F_2(y+2x)$$

The particular integral is

$$\text{P.I.} = \frac{1}{D^2 - 4DD' + D'^2(4)}(x^2 + xy)$$

or

$$\text{P.I.} = (D^2 - 4DD' + 4D'^2)^{-1}(x^2 + xy)$$

$$= \frac{1}{D^2}\left(1 - \frac{4D'}{D} + 4\frac{D'^2}{D^2}\right)^{-1}(x^2 + xy)$$

$$= \frac{1}{D^2}\left(1 + \frac{4D'}{D} - \frac{4D'^2}{D^2} + \frac{16D'^2}{D^2} + ...\right)(x^2 + xy)$$

$$= \frac{1}{D^2}\left(x^2 + xy + \frac{4}{D}(x) + 0\right)$$

$$= \frac{x^4}{12} + \frac{x^3 y}{6} + \frac{4}{D^3}(x)$$

$$= \frac{x^4}{12} + \frac{x^3 y}{6} + \frac{x^4}{24} = \frac{x^4}{8} + \frac{x^3 y}{6}$$

Thus the complete solution is

$$z = F_1(y+2x) + x\,F_2(y+2x) + \frac{x^4}{8} + \frac{x^3 y}{6}$$

Example 2: Solve

$$(D^2 - a^2 D'^2)z = x^2$$

Solution: The complementary function is given by the equation

$$(D^2 - a^2 D'^2)z = 0$$

The auxiliary equation is

$$m^2 - a^2 = 0$$

with roots $m = a$ and $m = -a$.

So C.F. $= F_1(y - ax) + F_2(y + ax)$

The particular integral is given by

$$\text{P.I.} = \frac{1}{(D^2 - a^2 D'^2)}(x^2)$$

$$= \frac{1}{D^2}\left(1 - \frac{a^2 D'^2}{D^2}\right)^{-1}(x^2)$$

$$= \frac{1}{D^2}\left(1 + \frac{a^2 D'^2}{D} + \dots\right)x^2 = \frac{1}{D^2}(x^2) = \frac{x^4}{12}$$

So the complete solution is

$$z = F_1(y - ax) + F_2(y + ax) + \frac{x^4}{12}.$$

Self Assessment

5. Solve $\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x^2} - \frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x \partial y} - 6\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial y^2} = xy$

6. Solve $\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x^2} + 3\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x \partial y} + 2\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial y^2} = x + y$

15.4 Shorter Method for Finding Particular Integral

Notes

When dealing with the equation

$$F(D,D')z = f(x,y)$$

We consider a special function of the form

$$f(x,y) = \phi(ax+by),$$

then a shorter method may be used. Now

$$D\phi(ax+by) = a\,\phi'(ax+by);\ D'\phi\,(ax+by) = b\phi'(ax+by)$$

So $$D^r\phi(ax+by) = a^r\phi^r(ax+bx)$$

$$D'^r\phi(ax+by) = b^r\phi^r(ax+bx)$$

and $$D^p\,D'q\,\phi(ax+by) = a^p\,b^q\,\phi^{p+q}(ax+by)$$

Here ϕ^n is the nth derivative of ϕ with respect to '$ax + by$' as a whole and n is the degree of $F(D,D')$.

Hence we will have

$$F(D,D')\phi(ax+by) = F(a,b)\,\phi^n(ax+by) \qquad ...(13)$$

when ϕ^n is the nth derivative of ϕ with respect to '$ax + by$' as a whole and n is the degree of $F(D,D')$.

Operating by $\frac{1}{F(D,D')}$ on both sides of (13) and dividing by $F(a, b)$, we get

$$\frac{1}{F(D,D')}\phi^n(ax+by) = \frac{1}{F(a,b)}\phi(ax+by) \qquad ...(14)$$

provided

$$F(a,b) \neq 0.$$

Therefore $$\frac{1}{F(D,D')}\phi_1(ax+b) = \frac{1}{F(a,b)}\int\int\int\phi_1(u)\,du...du$$

$$= \frac{1}{F(a,b)}\ n\text{th integral of } \phi_1 \text{ where } u = ax + by \qquad ...(15)$$

Example 1: Solve

$$(r-2s+t) = \sin(2x+3y)$$

Solution:

Here $$r = \frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x^2}, s = \frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x\partial y}, t = \frac{\partial^2}{\partial y^2}$$

So $$(D^2 - 2DD' + D'^2)z = \sin(2x+3y)$$

The auxiliary equation is

$$m^2 - 2m + 1 = 0$$

having roots m = 1, 1, so that

$$\text{C.F.} = F_1(y+x) + x\,F_2(y+x)$$

and $$\text{P.I.} = \frac{1}{(D-D')^2}\sin(2x+3y)$$

Putting $2x+3y=u,$ so we have

$$\text{P.I.} = \frac{1}{(2-3)^2}\int\int \sin u\,du, du \qquad \text{(integrating twice)}$$

$$= 1\int(-\cos u)\,du$$

$$= -\sin u = -\sin(2x+3y)$$

Thus the solution is

$$z = \text{C.F.} + \text{P.I.}$$

$$= F_1(y+x) + xF_2(y+x) - \sin(2x+3y)$$

Example 2: Solve

$$(D^2 - D'^2)z = 30(2x+y)$$

The auxiliary equation is

$$m^2 - 1 = 0$$

so, $$m = +1, -1$$

and $$\text{C.F.} = F_1(y+x) + F_2(y-x)$$

$$\text{P.I.} = \frac{1}{(D^2 - D'^2)}30(2x+y)$$

Let $u = 2x+y,$

$$\text{P.I.} = \frac{1}{(4-1)}(30)\int(u\,du)\,du$$

$$= \frac{1}{3}(30)\int\frac{u^2}{2}\,du$$

$$= 10\,\frac{u^3}{6} = \frac{5}{6}(2x+y)^3$$

So the solution is

Notes

$$z = F_1(y+x)+F_2(y-x)+\frac{5}{6}(2x+y)^3$$

Self Assessment

7. Solve

$$(D^2+3DD'+D'^2)z=(x+y)$$

8. Solve

$$(D^2+D'^2)z=\cos(mx+ny)$$

Particular case when $F(a, b) = 0$

As $$\frac{1}{F(D,D')}\phi^n(ax+by) = \frac{1}{F(a,b)}\phi(ax+by)$$

but if $F(a,b)=0$ then R.H.S. becomes infinite and the above method fails.

Now consider the case

$$(bD-aD')z = x^r\phi(ax+by)$$

or $$bp-aq = x^r\phi(ax+by), \text{ where} \quad ...(16)$$

$$p = \frac{\partial z}{\partial x}, q=\frac{\partial z}{\partial y}.$$

Applying Lagrange's method to (1) we get

$$\frac{dx}{b} = \frac{dy}{-a}=\frac{dz}{x^r\phi(ax+by)}$$

So one solution is

$$ax+by = c, \text{ and the other solution is given by}$$

$$\frac{dx}{b} = \frac{dz}{x^r\phi(c)}$$

$$\therefore \quad z = \frac{x^{r+1}}{(r+1)b}\phi(ax+by)$$

This is the solution of the given differential equation (16).

Thus $$\frac{1}{(bD-aD')}x^r\phi(ax+by) = \frac{x^{r+1}}{b(r+1)}\phi\,(ax+by) \quad ...(17)$$

Next consider

$$z = \frac{1}{(bD-aD')^n}\phi(ax+by)$$

$$= \frac{1}{(bD-aD')^{n-1}}, \frac{1}{(bD-aD')}\phi(ax+by)$$

$$= \frac{1}{(bD-aD')^{n-1}} \cdot \frac{x}{b}\phi(ax+by)$$

$$= \frac{1}{(bD-aD')^{n-2}} \frac{1}{(bD-aD')} \frac{x}{b}\phi(ax+by)$$

$$= \frac{1}{(6D-aD')^{n-2}} \cdot \frac{x}{2b^2}\phi(ax+by)$$

$$= \frac{1}{\underline{|2}b^2} \frac{1}{(bD-aD')^{n-3}} \frac{1}{(bD-aD')} x^2\phi(ax+b)$$

$$= \frac{1}{\underline{|3}b^3} \cdot \frac{1}{(bD-aD')^{n-3}} . x^3\phi(ax+b)$$

....

....

....

$$= \frac{1}{b^{n-1}(n-1)!} \frac{1}{(bD-aD')^{n-x}} \cdot \frac{x^n}{nb}\phi(ax+b)$$

$$= \frac{x^n}{b^n \underline{|n}}\phi(ax+by)$$

Thus $$\frac{1}{(bD-aD')^n}\phi(ax+by) = \frac{x^n}{b^n \underline{|n}}\phi(ax+b) \quad ...(18)$$

When $F(a,b) = 0$

Example 1: Solve

$$(D^2 - 2aDD' + a^2 D'^2)z = f(y+ax)$$

Solution: The auxiliary equation is

$$m^2 - 2am + a^2 = 0$$

$$(m-a)^2 = 0$$

$$m = a, a$$

The complimentary function is

$$\text{C.F.} = F_1(y+ax) + x\, F_2(y+ax)$$

$$\text{P.I.} = \frac{1}{D^2 - 2aDD' + a^2 D'^2} f(y+ax)$$

$$= \frac{1}{(D-aD')^2} f(y+ax) = \frac{x^2}{\underline{|2}} f(y+ax)$$

So the complete solution is

$$z = F_1(y+ax) + x\,F_2(y+ax) + \frac{x^2}{\underline{|2}} f(y+ax)$$

Example 2: Solve

$$(4D^2 - 4DD' + D'^2)z = e^{x+2y} + x^3$$

Solution: The auxiliary equation is

$$4m^2 - 4m + 1 = 0$$

$$m = 1/2, 1/2$$

$$\text{C.F.} = F_1(2y+x) + x\,F_1(2y+x)$$

$$\text{P.I.} = \frac{1}{(2D-D')^2}\left\{e^{x+2y} + x^3\right\}$$

$$= \frac{1}{(2D-D')^2} e^{x+2y} + \frac{1}{(2D-D')^2} x^3$$

$$= \frac{x^2}{2.4} e^{x+2y} + \frac{1}{4D^2}\left(1 - \frac{D'}{2D}\right)^{-2} x^3$$

$$= \frac{x^2}{8} e^{x+2y} + \frac{1}{4D^2}\left(1 + \frac{D'}{D} + \ldots\right) x^3$$

So $$\text{P.I.} = \frac{x^2}{8} e^{x+2y} + \frac{1}{4} \cdot \frac{x^5}{4.5} = \frac{x^2}{8} e^{x+2y} + \frac{x^5}{80}$$

Thus the solution is

$$z = F_1(2y+x) + x\,F_1(2y+x) + \frac{x^2}{8} e^{x+2y} + \frac{x^5}{80}$$

Self Assessment

9. Solve

   $(D - D')^2 = x + \phi(x+y)$

10. Solve

    $(D^3 - 4D^2D' + 4DD'^2)z = \cos(y+2x)$

15.5 General Method for Finding Particular Integral (P.I.)

Consider the equation

$$(D - mD')z = f(x,y)$$

i.e $$\frac{\partial z}{\partial x} - m\frac{\partial z}{\partial y} = f(x,y)$$

or $$p - mq = f(x,y) \qquad ...(1)$$

where $$p = \frac{\partial z}{\partial x} \text{ and } q = \frac{\partial z}{\partial y}.$$

So Lagrange's auxiliary equations (A.E.) are

$$\frac{dx}{1} = \frac{dy}{-m} = \frac{dz}{f(x,y)}$$

From the first two fractions, we have

$$y = -mx + c \qquad ...(2)$$

From the first and last fractions

$$dz = f(x,y)dx = f(x, c - mx)dx$$

$$\therefore \qquad z = f(x, c - mx)dx$$

and after integration ($c - mx$) is replaced by y because the P.I. does not contain any arbitrary constant.

Now, the particular integral of

$$\frac{1}{f(D,D')}f(x,y) = \frac{1}{D - m_1 D'}.\frac{1}{(D - m_2 D')}\cdots\frac{1}{D - m_n D'}f(x,y)$$

can be determined by the repeated application of the method given above.

Illustrative Examples

Example 1: Solve: $r + s - 6t = y\cos x$

Solution: The given equation can be written as

$$(D^2 + DD' - 6D'^2)z = y\cos x$$

A.E. is $m^2 + m - 6 = 0$, i.e., $m = 2, -3$

$$\therefore \qquad \text{C.F.} = \phi_1(y + 2x) + \phi_2(y - 3x)$$

Now, $$\text{P.I.} = \frac{1}{(D - 2D')(D + 3D')}y\cos x$$

$$= \frac{1}{(D - 2D')}.\int (c + 3x)\cos x dx \qquad [\because y = c + 3x]$$

$$= \frac{1}{(D - 2D')}[c\sin x + 3x \sin x + 3\cos x]$$

$$= \frac{1}{(D-2D')}[(y-3x)\sin x + 3x\sin x + 3\cos x]$$

[putting back $c = -3x + y$]

$$= \frac{1}{(D-2D')}[y\sin x + 3\cos x]$$

$$= \int \{(k-2x)\sin x + 3\cos x\}dx \qquad [\because -2x + k = y]$$

$$= -k\cos x - 2(-x\cos x + \sin x) + 3\sin x$$

$$= -(y+2x)\cos x + 2x\cos x + \sin x \qquad [\because y = k + 2x]$$

$$= -y\cos x + \sin x.$$

Hence the complete solution is

$$z = C.F. + P.I. = \phi_1(y+2x) + \phi_2(y-3x) - y\cos x + \sin x.$$

Example 2: Solve: $(D^2 - 4D'^2)z = \frac{4x}{y^2} - \frac{y}{x^2}$

Solution: The C.F. = $\phi_1(y+2x) + \phi_2(y-2x)$

Now, P.I. $= \frac{1}{(D+2D')(D-2D')}\left\{\frac{4x}{y^2} - \frac{y}{x^2}\right\}$

$$= \frac{1}{D+2D'}\int\left\{\frac{4x}{(c-2x)^2} - \frac{c-2x}{x^2}\right\}dx \qquad (\because c - 2x = y)$$

$$= \frac{1}{D+2D'}\int\left[-2\left\{\frac{-2x+c-c}{(c-2x)^2}\right\} - \frac{c}{x^2} + \frac{2}{x}\right]dx$$

$$= \frac{1}{D+2D'}\int\left[-\frac{1}{c-2x} + \frac{2c}{(c-2x)^2} - \frac{c}{x^2} + \frac{2}{x}\right]dx$$

$$= \frac{1}{D+2D'}\left[\log(c-2x) + \frac{c}{c-2x} + \frac{c}{x} + 2\log x\right]$$

$$= \frac{1}{D+2D'}\left[\log y + \frac{y+2x}{y} + \frac{y+2x}{x} + 2\log x\right] \qquad [\text{putting } c = y + 2x]$$

$$= \int\left[\log(k+2x) + \frac{k+4x}{k+2x} + \frac{k+4x}{x} + 2\log x\right]dx \qquad \text{where } y = k + 2x$$

$$= \int\left[\log(k+2x) + 1 + \frac{2x+k-k}{k+2x} + \frac{k}{x} + 4 + 2\log x\right]dx$$

$$= \int\left[\log(k+2x)+1+1-\frac{k}{k+2x}+\frac{k}{x}+4+2\log x\right]dx$$

$$= \int\left[\log(k+2x)+6-\frac{k}{k+2x}+\frac{k}{x}+2\log x\right]dx$$

$$= \left[\log(k+2x).x-\int\frac{2}{k+2x}.x\,dx+6x-\frac{k}{2}\log(k+2x)+k\log x+2\left\{\log x.x-\int\frac{1}{x}.xdx\right\}\right]$$

$$= x\log(k+2x)-\int\frac{k+2x-k}{k+2x}dx+6x-\frac{k}{2}\log(k+2x)+k\log x+2x\log x-2x$$

$$= x\log(k+2x)-x+\frac{k}{2}\log(k+2x)+6x-\frac{k}{2}\log(k+2x)+k\log x+2x\log x-2x$$

$$= x\log y-x+\frac{k}{2}\log y+6x-\frac{k}{2}\log y+k\log x+2x\log x-2x \text{ (putting back } y=k+2x)$$

$$= x\log y-x+6x+k\log x+2x\log x-2x$$

$$= x\log y+3x+(y-2x)\log x+2x\log x$$

$$= x\log y+3x+y\log x.$$

Hence the complete solution is

$$z = \phi_1(y+2x)+\phi_2(y-2x)+x\log y+3x+y\log x.$$

Example 3: Solve: $r-t=\tan^3 x\tan y-\tan x\tan^3 y$

Solution: The given equation is

$$(D^2-D'^2)z = \tan x\tan y\,(\tan^2 x-\tan^2 y).$$

$$= \tan x\tan y\,(\sec^2 x-\sec^2 y)$$

$$\therefore \quad \text{C.F.} = \phi_1(y-x)+\phi_2(y+x).$$

$$\text{P.I.} = \frac{1}{(D+D')(D-D')}\tan x\tan y(\sec^2 x-\sec^2 y)$$

$$= \frac{1}{D+D'}\int\tan x\tan(c-x)\{\sec^2 x-\sec^2(c-x)\}dx \qquad [\text{where } c-x=y]$$

$$= \frac{1}{D+D'}\left[\int\tan x\tan(c-x)\sec^2 x\,dx-\int\tan x\tan(c-x)\sec^2(c-x)dx\right]$$

$$= \frac{1}{D+D'}\left[\frac{1}{2}\tan^2 x\tan(c-x)+\frac{1}{2}\int\tan^2 x\sec^2(c-x)dx\right.$$

$$\left.+\frac{1}{2}\tan x\tan^2(c-x)-\frac{1}{2}\int\tan^2(c-x)\sec^2 x\,dx\right]$$

Notes

$$= \frac{1}{2(D+D')}\left[\tan^2 x\tan(c-x)+\tan x\tan^2(c-x)+\int\{\sec^2 x-\sec^2(c-x)\}dx\right]$$

$$= \frac{1}{2(D+D')}\left[\tan^2 x\tan(c-x)+\tan x\tan^2(c-x)+\tan x+\tan(c-x)\right]$$

$$= \frac{1}{2(D+D')}\left[\tan^2 x\tan y+\tan x\tan^2 y+\tan x+\tan y\right] \quad \text{[By putting back } y = c-x\text{]}$$

$$= \frac{1}{2(D+D')}[\tan y\sec^2 x+\tan x\sec^2 y]$$

$$= \frac{1}{2}\int[\tan(k+x)\sec^2 x+\tan x\sec^2(k+x)]dx \quad \text{where } k+x=y$$

$$= \frac{1}{2}\int\left[\frac{d}{dx}\{\tan x\tan(k+x)\}\right]dx$$

$$= \frac{1}{2}\tan x\tan(k+x)=\frac{1}{2}\tan x\tan y \quad \text{[putting } k+x=y\text{]}$$

Hence the complete solution is

$$z = \phi_1(y-x)+\phi_2(y+x)+\frac{1}{2}\tan x\tan y$$

Example 4: Find the particular integral with the help of general method for

$$(D^2-2DD'-15D'^2)z=12xy$$

Solution: We have

$$\text{P.I.} = \frac{1}{(D^2-2DD'-15D'^2)}12xy$$

$$= \frac{1}{(D+3D')(D-5D')}12xy$$

$$= \frac{12}{(D+3D')}\int x(c-5x)\,dx, \quad \text{where } y=c-5x$$

$$= \frac{12}{D+3D'}\left(\frac{cx^2}{2}-\frac{5x^3}{3}\right)$$

$$= \frac{2}{D+3D'}(3cx^2-10x^3)$$

$$= \frac{2}{D+3D'}x^2(3y+15x-10x), \quad \text{(putting back } c=y+5x\text{)}$$

$$= \frac{2}{(D+3D')}x^2(3y+5x)$$

$$= 2\int x^2\{3(k+3x)+5x\}\,dx, \qquad \text{where } k + 3x = y$$

$$= 2\int x^2(3k+14x)\,dx$$

$$= 2kx^3 + 7x^4 = 2x^3(y-3x)+7x^4$$

$$= x^3(2y+x).$$

Self Assessment

11. Solve

$$(D+D')^2 z = 2\cos y - x\sin y$$

12. Solve

$$(D^2 - DD' - 2D'^2)z = (y-1)e^x$$

15.6 The Non-homogeneous Equation with Constant Coefficients

The simplest case is

$$(D - mD' - \alpha)z = 0$$

or $$z = e^{(mD'+a)x}\phi(y)$$

where D' has been considered algebraic and ϕ is arbitrary.

$$= e^{ax}\phi(y+mx).$$

Note. Also

$$(D - mD' - \alpha)z = 0.$$

or $$p - mq = \alpha z.$$

$\therefore$ The subsidiary equations are

$$\frac{dx}{1} = \frac{dy}{-m} = \frac{dz}{\alpha z}.$$

$\therefore$ $$z = e^{\alpha x}\phi(y+mx).$$

Similarly the integral of

$$(D - m_1D' - \alpha_1)(D - m_2D' - \alpha_2)(D - m_3D' - \alpha_3)\ldots = 0$$

is $$z = e^{\alpha_1 n}\phi_1(y+m_1x) + e^{\alpha_2 n}\phi_2(y+m_2x) + e^{\alpha_3 n}\phi_3(y+m_2x) + \ldots$$

In case of repeated factors

$$(D - mD' - \alpha)^2 z = 0 \quad ...(1)$$

or $$(D - mD' - \alpha)(D - mD' - \alpha)z = 0$$

let $$(D - mD' - \alpha)z = \nu,$$

$$\text{Then, } (D - mD' - \alpha)\nu \quad \text{[from (1)]}$$

or $$\nu = e^{ax}\phi_1(y + mx)$$

or $$(D - mD' - \alpha)z = e^{ax}\phi_1(y + mx);$$

$$\therefore \quad z = e^{(mD'+\alpha)x}\left[\int \{e^{-(mD'-\alpha)x} + e^{ax}\phi_1(y + mx)\}dx + \phi_2(y)\right]$$

$$= e^{(\alpha+mD')}x\int \phi_1(y)\,dx + e^{ax}e^{(mxD')}\phi_2(y)$$

$$= e^{\alpha x}.x\phi_1(y + mx) + e^{\alpha x}\phi_2(y + mx)$$

Similarly proceeding in the case of $(D - mD' - \alpha)^r z = 0$, we have

$$z = e^{\alpha x}\phi_1(y + mx) + e^{\alpha x}x\phi_2(y + mx) + e^{\alpha x}x^2\phi_3(y + mx) + ... + e^{\alpha x}x^{r-1}\phi_r(y + mx)$$

The Particular Integral

The methods for obtaining particular integrals of non-homogeneous partial differential equations are very similar to those used in solving linear equation with constant coefficients.

Note: It can be easily shown that

I. $$\frac{1}{F(D,D')}e^{ax+by} = \frac{e^{ax+by}}{F(a,b)}$$

provided $F(a,b) \neq 0$.

II. $$\frac{1}{F(D,D')}\sin(ax + by) \text{ or } \cos(ax + by)$$

is obtained by putting $D^2 = -a^2$, $DD' = -ab$ and $D'^2 = -b^2$, provided the denominator is not zero.

III. $$\frac{1}{F(D,D')}x^m y^n = [F(D,D')]^{-1}x^m y^n$$

which can be evaluated after expanding $[F(D,D')]^{-1}$ in ascending powers of D or D′.

IV. $$\frac{1}{F(D,D')}(e^{ax+by}.V)$$

$$e^{ax+by}\frac{1}{F\{(D+a).(D'+b)\}}.V$$

Illustrative Examples

Example 1: Solve: $\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x^2}-\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial y^2}-3\frac{\partial z}{\partial x}+3\frac{\partial z}{\partial y}=xy+e^{x+2y}$.

Solution: Here, $(D^2-D'^2-3D+3D')z=xy+e^{x+2y}$

or, $(D-D')(D+D'-3)z=xy+e^{x+2y}$

$\therefore$ The complementary function is

$$\phi(x+y)+e^{3x}\ \Psi\ (y-x).$$

$$\text{Now P.I.} = \frac{xy}{(D-D')(D+D'-3)}+\frac{e^{x+2y}}{(D-D')(D+D'-3)}$$

$$= \frac{1}{3(D'-D)\left[1-\frac{D'+D}{3}\right]}xy+\frac{e^{x+2y}}{(1-D')(1+D'-3)}$$

$$= \frac{1}{3(D'-D)}\left[1+\frac{(D'+D)}{3}+\frac{(D'+D)^2}{9}+...\right]xy+\frac{e^x.e^{2y}}{(-1)(D'-2)}$$

$$= \frac{1}{3(D'-D)}\left[xy+\frac{x}{3}+\frac{y}{3}+\frac{2}{9}\right]-e^x.e^{2y}\times\frac{1}{D'}.1$$

$$= \frac{1}{-3D\left(1-\frac{D'}{D}\right)}\left(xy+\frac{x}{3}+\frac{y}{3}+\frac{2}{9}\right)-ye^{x+2y}$$

$$= -\frac{1}{3D}\left(1+\frac{D'}{D}+\frac{D'^2}{D^2}+...\right)\left(xy+\frac{x}{3}+\frac{y}{3}+\frac{2}{9}\right)-ye^{x+2y}$$

$$= \frac{1}{3D}\left[xy+\frac{x}{3}+\frac{y}{3}+\frac{2}{9}+\frac{x^2}{2}+\frac{x}{3}\right]-ye^{x+2y}$$

$$= -\frac{x^2y}{3.2}-\frac{1}{9}-\frac{x^2}{2}-\frac{x}{9}-\frac{2x}{27}-\frac{x^3}{18}-\frac{x^2}{18}-ye^{x+2y}$$

$\therefore$ The solution is

$$z = \phi(x+y)+e^{3x}\Psi(y-x)-\frac{x^2y}{6}-\frac{x^2}{9}-\frac{xy}{9}-\frac{2x}{27}-\frac{x^2}{18}-ye^{x+2y}$$

Example 2: Solve: $(D-D'-1)(D-D'-2)z=e^{2x-y}+x$.

Solution: The complementary function is

$$e^x\phi_1(y+x)+e^{2x}\phi_2(y+x)$$

Notes

$$\text{P.I.} = \frac{1}{(D-D'-1)(D-D'-2)}[e^{2x-y}+x]$$

$$= \frac{1}{(D-D'-1)(D-D'-2)}e^{2x-y} + \frac{1}{(D-D'-1)(D-D'-2)}x$$

Now, $\dfrac{1}{(D-D'-1)(D-D'-2)}e^{2x-y}$

$$= e^{2x}\frac{1}{(D+2-D'-1)(D+2-D'-2)}e^{-y}$$

$$= e^{2x}\frac{1}{(D-D'+1)(D-D')}e^{-y}$$

$$= e^{2x}\frac{1}{[0-(-1)+1][0-(-1)]}e^{-y}$$

$$= e^{2x}.\frac{1}{2}e^{-y} - \frac{1}{2}e^{2x-y}$$

Also, $\dfrac{1}{(D-D'-1)(D-D'-2)}x$

$$= \frac{1}{2}[1-(D-D')]^{-1}\left[1-\frac{1}{2}(D-D')\right]^{-1}x$$

$$= \frac{1}{2}[1+D-D'+...]\left[1+\frac{1}{2}(D-D')+...\right]x$$

$$= \frac{1}{2}\left[1+\frac{3}{2}D-\frac{3}{2}D'\right]x$$

$$= \frac{1}{2}\left[x+\frac{3}{2}-\frac{3}{2}\times 0\right] = \frac{1}{2}x+\frac{3}{4}$$

∴ The solution is

$$z = e^{x}\phi_1(y+x)+e^{2x}\phi_2(y+x)+\frac{1}{2}e^{2x-y}+\frac{1}{2}x+\frac{3}{4}.$$

Example 3: Solve: $\dfrac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x^2}-\dfrac{\partial^2 z}{\partial y^2}+\dfrac{\partial z}{\partial x}+3\dfrac{\partial z}{\partial y}-2z = e^{x-y}-x^2y.$

Solution: $[(D-D')(D+D')+2(D+D')-(D-D')-2]z = e^{x-y}-x^2y$

or $[(D-D'+2)(D+D'-1)]z = e^{x-y}-x^2y$

∴ The complementary function is

$$z = e^{-2x}\phi(y+x)+e^{x}\ \Psi\ (y-x)$$

Now, $$\text{P.I.} = \frac{e^{x-y}}{(D-D'+2)(D+D'-1)} - \frac{x^2y}{D^2-D'^2+3D'-2}$$

$$= \frac{e^{x-y}}{(1-D'+2)D'} - \frac{x^2y}{-2\left[1-\left\{\frac{D}{2}+\frac{3D'}{2}-\frac{D'2}{2}+\frac{D^2}{2}\right\}\right]}$$

$$= \frac{e^{x-y}}{4} + \frac{1}{2}\left[1+0\left(\frac{D}{2}+\frac{3D'}{2}-\frac{D'^2}{2}+\frac{D^2}{2}\right)+\left\{\frac{D}{2}+\frac{3D'}{2}-\frac{D'^2}{2}+\frac{D^2}{2}\right)^2\right.$$

$$\left. +\left(\frac{D}{2}+\frac{3D'}{2}-\frac{D'^2}{2}+\frac{D^2}{2}\right)^3+\ldots\right]x^2$$

$$= -\frac{e^{x-y}}{4} + \frac{1}{2}\left[1+\frac{D}{2}+\frac{3D'}{2}+\frac{D^2}{2}+\frac{D^2}{4}+\frac{3DD'}{2}+\frac{3D^2D'}{2}+\frac{3D^2D'}{4}+\frac{3D^2D'}{8}+\ldots\right]x^2.$$

$$= -\frac{e^{x-y}}{4} + \frac{1}{2}\left[x^2y+xy+\frac{3x^2}{2}+y+\frac{y}{2}+3x+3+\frac{3}{2}+\frac{3}{4}\right]$$

$$= -\frac{e^{x-y}}{4} + \left(\frac{x^2y}{2}+\frac{3x^2}{4}+\frac{3y}{4}+\frac{xy}{2}+\frac{3x}{2}+\frac{21}{8}\right)$$

$\therefore$ The solution is

$$z = e^{-2x}\phi(y+x)+e^x\,\Psi(y-x)-\frac{e^{x-y}}{4}+\left(\frac{x^2y}{2}+\frac{3x^2}{4}+\frac{3y}{4}+\frac{xy}{2}+\frac{3x}{2}+\frac{21}{8}\right)$$

Example 4: Solve the equation:

$$(D^3-4D^2D'+4DD^2)u = \cos(y+2x)$$

or $$D(D-2D')^2u = \cos(\nu+2x)$$

Solution: C.F. is $\phi_1(y)+\phi_2(y+2x)+x\phi_3\,(y+2x)$

$$\text{P.I.} = \frac{1}{(D-2D')^2D}\cos(y+2x) = \frac{1}{(D-2D')^2}\left\{\sin\frac{(y+2x)}{2}\right\},$$

Now since $$\frac{1}{(bD-aD')}\phi(ax+by) = \frac{x}{b}\phi(ax+by),$$

$$\text{P.I.} = \frac{1}{(D-2D')}\left\{\frac{1}{D-2D'}\frac{\sin(y+2x)}{2}\right\} = \frac{1}{(D-2D')}\left\{\frac{x\sin(y+2x)}{2}\right\}$$

$$= \frac{x^2}{4}\sin(y+2x)$$

$\therefore$ The solution is

$$u = \phi_1(y) + \phi_2(y+2x) + x\phi_3(y+2x) + \frac{x^2}{4}\sin(y+2x).$$

Self Assessment

13. Solve $\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x^2} - a\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial y^2} + 2ab\frac{\partial z}{\partial x} + 2a^2 b\frac{\partial z}{\partial y} = 0$

14. Solve $\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x^2} - \frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x \partial y} + \frac{\partial z}{\partial y} - z = \cos\,(x+2y)$

15.7 Equation Reducible to Homogeneous Linear Form

An equation in which the coefficient of a differential coefficient of any order is a constant multiple of the variables of the same degree may be transformed into one having constant coefficients. The method is explained with the help of the following equations.

Example 1: Solve

$$x^2\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x^2} + 2xy\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x \partial x} + y^2\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial y^2} = 0$$

Solution: Assume, $u = \log x$, $v = \log y$, also denoting $\frac{\partial}{\partial u}$ by D and $\frac{\partial}{\partial V}$ by D', the given equation reduces to

$$[D(D-1) + 2DD' + D'(D'-1)]z = 0$$

or

$$(D+D')(D+D'-1)z = 0$$

Hence the solution is

$$\begin{aligned} z &= \phi_1(\nu - u) + e^u\,\phi_2(\nu - u) \\ &= \phi_1(\log y - \log x) + \phi_2(\log y - \log x) \\ &= \phi_1\left(\log\frac{y}{x}\right) + x\,\phi_2\left(\log\frac{y}{x}\right) \\ &= \psi_1\left\{\frac{y}{x}\right) + x\,\psi_2\left(\frac{y}{x}\right) \end{aligned}$$

Example 2: Solve: $yt - q = xy$.

Solution: The equation can be written as

$$y^2\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial y^2} - y\frac{\partial z}{\partial y} = xy^2 \quad \text{...(1)}$$

Put $x = e^u$, $y = e^v$

$$\frac{\partial z}{\partial x} = \frac{\partial z}{\partial u} \times \frac{1}{x}, \frac{\partial z}{\partial y} = \frac{1}{y}\frac{\partial z}{\partial v}$$

$$\left(x\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\right)\left(x\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\right)z = \frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x^2}$$

or
$$x^2\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x^2} + x\frac{\partial z}{\partial x} = \frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial u^2}$$

and
$$y^2\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial y^2} + y\frac{\partial z}{\partial y} = \frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial v^2}$$

$\therefore$ The equation (1) becomes

$$\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial v^2} - 2\frac{\partial z}{\partial v} = e^{u+2v}$$

$\therefore$ The complementary function is

$$= \phi_1(u) + e^{2v}\phi_2(u)$$

$$= \phi_1(\log x) + y^2\phi_2(\log x)$$

$$= \psi_1(x) + y^2\psi_2(x)$$

$$\text{P.I.} = \frac{1}{D'(D'-2)} \times e^{u+2v}$$

$$= \frac{1}{D'(D'-2)} \times e^{u+2v}$$

$$= \frac{e^{u+2v}}{2} \times \frac{1}{(D'-2+2)}(1) = \frac{e^{u+2v}}{2}.v$$

$$= \frac{1}{2}xy^2\log y$$

$\therefore$ The solution is $z = \phi_1(x) + y^2\phi_2(x) + \dfrac{xy^2}{2}\log y$

Aliter. $yt - q = xy$

The equation can be written as

$$\frac{\partial q}{\partial y} - \frac{1}{y}q = x$$

Solving,

$$q.e^{\int -\frac{1}{y}dy} = \int xe^{-\int \frac{1}{y}dy}\, dy + \phi_1(y)$$

$$\therefore \qquad \frac{q}{y} = \int \frac{x}{y} dy + \phi_1(x)$$

$$\therefore \qquad q = xy \log y + y\phi_1(x)$$

or
$$\frac{\partial z}{\partial y} = xy \log y + y\phi_1(x)$$

$$\therefore \qquad z = x\int y \log y \, dy + \phi_1(x).\frac{y^2}{2} + \phi_2(x)$$

$$= x\left[\frac{y^2}{2}\log y - \int \frac{y^2}{2} \times \frac{1}{y} dy\right] + y^2 f(x) + F(x)$$

$$\therefore \qquad z = \frac{xy^2}{2}\log y - \frac{xy^2}{4} + y^2 f(x) + F(x)$$

is the required solution.

Example 3: Solve: $x^2 \frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x^2} - y^2 \frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial y^2} - y\frac{\partial z}{\partial x} + x\frac{\partial z}{\partial x} = 0$

Solution: Assume $u = \log x$, $\nu = \log y$. Then

$$\frac{\partial z}{\partial x} = \frac{\partial z}{\partial u} \times \frac{1}{x}$$

or
$$x\frac{\partial z}{\partial x} = \frac{\partial z}{\partial x}, \text{ so that } x\frac{\partial}{\partial x} = \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \qquad ...(1)$$

$$\therefore \qquad x\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left(x\frac{\partial z}{\partial x}\right) = x^2\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x^2} + x\frac{\partial z}{\partial x} = \frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial u^2} \qquad \text{[from (1)]}$$

Similarly

$$y^2\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial y^2} + y\frac{\partial z}{\partial y} = \frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial y^2}.$$

$\therefore$ The given equation reduces to

$$\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial u^2} - \frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial \nu^2} = 0,$$

for which

$$z = \phi(u+\nu) + \psi(\nu - u)$$

$$= \phi[\log x + \log y] + \psi[\log y - \log x]$$

$$= \phi(\log xy) + \psi\left[\log\left(\frac{y}{x}\right)\right]$$

$$= f_1(xy) + f_2\left(\frac{y}{x}\right)$$

Example 4: Solve: $x^2\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x^2}-4xy\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x\partial y}+4y^3\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial y^2}+6y\frac{\partial z}{\partial y}=x^3y^4.$

Solution: As shown in the last example, if $u=\log x, \nu=\log y,$

$$x\frac{\partial z}{\partial x} = \frac{\partial z}{\partial u},\ y\frac{\partial z}{\partial y}=\frac{\partial z}{\partial \nu}$$

$$x^2\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x^2}+x\frac{\partial z}{\partial x} = \frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial u^2} \text{ and } y^2\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial y^2}+\frac{\partial z}{\partial y}=\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial y^2}$$

Now
$$y\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\left(x\frac{\partial z}{\partial x}\right) = \frac{\partial}{\partial \nu}\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial u}\right)$$

or
$$yx\frac{\partial^3 z}{\partial x\partial y} = \frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial \nu\partial u}.$$

With these substitution the equation takes the form

$$\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial u^2}-\frac{\partial z}{\partial u}-4\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial u\partial \nu}+4\frac{\partial^2}{\partial \nu^2}-4\frac{\partial z}{\partial \nu}+6\frac{\partial z}{\partial \nu} = e^{3u}.e^{4\nu}$$

or
$$\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial u^2}-4\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial u\partial \nu}+4\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial \nu^2}-\frac{\partial z}{\partial u}+2\frac{\partial z}{\partial \nu} = e^{3u+4\nu} \quad ...(1)$$

Denoting $\frac{\partial}{\partial u}$ by D and $\frac{\partial}{\partial \nu}$ by D' in (1).

$$(D^2-4DD'+4D^2-D+2D')z = e^{2u+4\nu}.$$

$$[(D-2D')(D-2D'-1)]z = e^{2u+4\nu}$$

$\therefore$ The complementary function is

$$= \phi_1(\nu+2u+e^u\phi_2(\nu+2u).$$

$$= \phi_1(\log x^2y)+x\phi_2(\log x^2y)$$

$$= \phi(x^2y)+x\ \psi(x^2y)$$

$$\text{P.I.} = \frac{1}{(D-2D')(D-2D'-1)}e^{3u+4\nu}$$

$$= \frac{1}{(-5)(-6)}e^{3u+4\nu}=\frac{x^3y^4}{30}$$

$\therefore$ The solution is

$$z = \phi(x^2y)+x\psi(x^2y)+\frac{x^3y^4}{30}.$$

Self Assessment

15. Solve

$$\frac{1}{x^2}\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x^2}-\frac{1}{x^3}\frac{\partial z}{\partial x}-\frac{1}{y^2}\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial y^2}+\frac{1}{y^3}\frac{\partial z}{\partial y}=0$$

16. Solve

$$x^2\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x^2}-y^2\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial y^2}=xy$$

15.8 Monge's Method

We shall usually take z as dependent and x, y as independent variables and throughout this chapter we shall denote

$\frac{\partial z}{\partial x}$ by p, $\frac{\partial z}{\partial y}$ by q, $\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x^2}$ by r, $\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x \partial y}$ by s, and $\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial y^2}$ by t.

Monge's Method of Solving the Equation

$$Rr+Ss+Tt = V \qquad ...(1)$$

where r, s, t have their usual meanings and R, S, T and V are functions of x, y, z, p and q.

We know

$$dp = \frac{\partial p}{\partial x}dx+\frac{\partial p}{\partial y}dy$$

$$= r\,dx+s\,dy$$

and

$$dq = \frac{\partial q}{\partial x}dx+\frac{\partial q}{\partial y}dy$$

$$= s\,dx + t\,dy.$$

Putting the values of r and t in (1),

$$R\left(\frac{dp-s\,dy}{dx}\right)+S.\,s+T.\left(\frac{dq-s\,dx}{dy}\right) = V$$

or $$R\,dp\,dy+T\,dq\,dx+Ss\,dx\,dy-Rs\,dy^2-Ts\,dx^2 = V\,dx\,dy$$

or $$(R\,dp\,dy+T\,dq\,dx-V\,dx\,dy) = s(R\,dy^2-S\,dx\,dy+T\,dx^2) \qquad ...(2)$$

If some relation between x, y, z, p, q makes each of the bracketed expressions vanish, the relation will satisfy (2); therefore

$$R\,dy^2-S\,dx\,dy+T\,dx^2 = 0 \qquad ...(3)$$

$$R\,dp\,dy+T\,dq\,dx-V\,dx\,dy = 0 \qquad ...(4)$$

Notes

Now it may be possible to get one or two relations between x, y, z, p, q called intermediate integrals, and then to find the general solution of (1).

If (3) resolves into two linear equations in dx and dy such as

$$dy - m_1\ dx \ = \ 0, \text{ and } dy - m_2\ dx = 0, \qquad ...(5)$$

from one of the equations (5) combined with (4) and if necessary with $dz = p\,dx + q\,dy$, we may obtain two integrals $u_1 = a$ and $\nu_1 = b$; then $u_1 = f_1(\nu_1)$,

where f_1 is an arbitrary function, is an intermediate integral.

Proceeding similarly from the second equation, we may get another intermediate integral $u_2 = f_2(\nu_2)$.

From these two integrals we may find the values of p and q and putting these values in $dz = p\,dx + q\,dy$ and integrating it we get the complete integral of the original equation.

Illustrative Examples

Example 1: Solve by Monge's method $r = a^2 t$.

Solution: (This can be easily solved by the method discussed in the last section. Here we solve it by Monge's Method).

Putting $r = \dfrac{dp - s\ dy}{dx}$ and $t = \dfrac{dq - s\ dx}{dy}$ in the given equation, $dp\,dy - a^2\ dx\ dq = s(dy^2 - a^2\,dx^2)$.

So the subsidiary equations are

$$dy^2 - a^2\ dx^2 \ = \ 0 \qquad ...(1)$$

and

$$dp\ dy - a^2\ dx\ dq \ = \ 0. \qquad ...(2)$$

From (1)

$$dy + a\ dx \ = \ 0 \qquad ...(3)$$

$$dy - a\ dx \ = \ 0. \qquad ...(4)$$

Taking (3) and combining with (2), we get

$$dp + a\,dq \ = \ 0.$$

$$p + qa \ = \ A.$$

Also

$$y + ax \ = \ B.$$

$\therefore$ $\quad p + aq = \phi_1(y + ax)$ is an intermediate integral.

Similarly $p - aq = \phi_2(y - ax)$ is the second intermediate integral.

From these,

$$p \ = \ \frac{1}{2}[\phi_1(y + ax) + \phi_2(y + ax)]$$

and $$q = \frac{1}{2a}[\phi_1(y+ax) - \phi_2(y-ax)]$$

Substituting these values in $dz = p\,dx + q\,dy$, we have

$$dz = \frac{1}{2}[\phi_1(y+ax)+\phi_2(y-ax)]\,dx + \frac{1}{2a}[\phi_1(y+ax)-\phi_2(y-dx)]dy$$

or $$dz = \frac{1}{2a}(dy + a\,dx)\phi_1(y+ax) - \frac{dy - a\,dx}{2a}\phi_2\,(y-ax),$$

or $$z = f_1(y+ax) + f_2(y-ax).$$

Example 2: Solve by Monge's method:

$$(b+cq)^2 r - 2(b+cq)(a+cp)s + (a+cp)^2 t = 0.$$

Solution. Putting

$$r = \frac{dp - s\,dy}{dx}, \qquad t = \frac{dq - s\,dx}{dy},$$

$$(b+cq)^2\frac{dp - s\,dy}{dx} - 2(b+cq)(a+cp)s + (a+cp)^2\,\frac{dq - s\,dx}{dy} = 0.$$

$\therefore$ The subsidiary equations are,

$$(b+cq)^2\,dy^2 + 2(b+cq)(a+cp)dx\,dy + (a+cp)^2\,dx^2 = 0, \qquad ...(1)$$

$$(b+cq)^2\,dp\,dy + (a+cp)^2\,dx = 0, \qquad ...(2)$$

From (1),

$$(p+cq)\,dy + (a+cp)\,dx = 0 \qquad ...(3)$$

Combining it with (2),

$$(b+cq)\,dp - (a+cp)\,dq = 0$$

From which $$\frac{dp}{a+cp} = \frac{dq}{b+cq}$$

and therefore, $$(a+cp) = A(b+cq). \qquad ...(4)$$

Also from (3) and $dz = p\,dx + q\,dy$, we get

$$a\,dx + b\,dy + c\,dz = 0$$

or $$ax + by + az = B. \qquad ...(5)$$

$\therefore$ From (4) and (5),

$$a + cp = (b+cq)\,\phi(ax+by+cz)$$

$$\therefore \quad \frac{dx}{c} = \frac{dy}{-c\phi} = \frac{dz}{-a+b\phi} = \frac{a\,dx + b\,dy + c\;dz}{0} \qquad ...(6)$$

where ϕ stands for $\phi\ (ax+by+cz)$,

so that

$$ax+by+dz = K_1$$

and
$$\frac{dx}{c} = \frac{dy}{-c\phi(K_1)}$$

Integrating

$$x\phi(K_1) = -y + K_2.$$

$$\therefore \quad y + x\phi(ax+by+cz) = \psi(ax+by+cz). \qquad [\text{as } K_2 = \Psi\ (K_1)]$$

Example 3: Solve by Monge's method $r+(a+b)s+abt = xy$.

Solution: Putting

$$r = \frac{dp - s\ dy}{dx},\ \text{and}\ r = \frac{dq - s\ dx}{dy},$$

$$\frac{dp - s\ dy}{dx} + (a+b)s + ab\frac{dq - s\ dx}{dy} = xy$$

or $\quad dp\ dy + ab\ dq\ dx - xy\ dx\,dy = s[dy^2 - (a+b)dx\ dy + ab\,dx^2]$

The subsidiary equations are

$$dy^2 - (a+b)dx\ dy + ab\ dx^2 = 0 \qquad ...(1)$$

and
$$dp\ dy + ab\ dq\ dx - xy\,dx\ dy = 0. \qquad ...(2)$$

From (1)

$$dy - a\ dx = 0, \qquad ...(3)$$

$$dy - b\ dx = 0, \qquad ...(4)$$

Whence $y - ax = c_1$, and $y - bx = c_2$.

Combining these with (2), we get

$$a\,dp + ab\ dq - ax(c_1 + ax)\,dx = 0$$

and
$$b\,dp + abq - bx(c_2 + bx)\,dx = 0$$

or
$$p + bq - c_1\frac{x^2}{2} - \frac{ax^3}{3} = A,$$

$$\therefore \quad p + aq - c_2\frac{x^2}{2} - \frac{bx^3}{3} = B$$

or $$p + bq - (y - ax)\frac{x^2}{2} - \frac{ax^3}{3} = \phi_1(c_1) + \phi(y - ax)$$

$$p + aq - (y - bx)\frac{x^2}{2} - \frac{bx^3}{3} = \phi_2(c_2) = \phi_2(y - bx).$$

Solving,

$$p = \frac{1}{a-b}\left[\frac{yx^2}{2}(a-b) - (a^2 - b^2)\frac{x^2}{6} + a\phi_1(y - ax) - b\phi_2(y - bx)\right],$$

$$q = \frac{1}{b-a}\left[-\frac{x^3}{6}(a-b) + \phi_1(y - ax) - \phi_2(y - bx)\right]$$

Putting these values in $dz = p\,dx + q\,dy$,

$$dz = \left[\frac{yx^2}{2} - (a+b)\frac{x^3}{6} + \frac{a\phi_1(y-ax)}{a-b}dx - \frac{a\phi_2(y-bx)}{a-b}\right] + \left[\frac{x^3}{6} - \frac{\phi_1(y-ax)}{a-b} + \frac{\phi_2(y-bx)}{a-b}\right]dy$$

$$= -\frac{(a+b)x^3}{6}dx + \frac{3x^2y\,dx + x^3\,dy}{6} - \frac{1}{a-b}[\phi_1(y-ax)(dy - a\,dx)] + \frac{1}{a-b}[\phi_2(y-bx)(dy - b\,dx)]$$

$$\therefore\ z = -\frac{(a+b)x^3}{24} + \frac{yx^3}{6} + \Psi_1(y - ax) + \Psi_2(y - bx).$$

Note: This question could be solved by the method of Ist chapter also.

Example 4: Solve by Monge's method

$$q(1+q)r - (p + q + 2pq)s + p(1+p)t = 0.$$

Solution: Putting

$$r = \frac{dp - s\,dy}{dx},\ t = \frac{dq - s\,dx}{dy}.$$

$$(q+q^2)\frac{dp - s\,dy}{dx} - (p + q + 2pq)s + p(1+p)\frac{dq - s\,dx}{dy} = 0$$

or $$[(q+q^2)dp\,dy + (p+p^2)dq\,dx]$$

$$= s[(q+q^2)dy^2 + (q + q + 2pq)dx\,dy + (p+p^2)dx^2]$$

$\therefore$ The subsidiary equations are

$$(q+q^2)dp\,dy + p(1+p)dq\,dx = 0 \qquad ...(1)$$

and $$[(q+q^2)dy^2 + (p+q+2pq)dx\,dy + (p+p^2)dx^2] = 0 \qquad ...(2)$$

From (2), $$q\,dy + p\,dx = 0 \qquad ...(3)$$

and $$(1+q)\,dy+(1+p)\,dx = 0 \qquad ...(4)$$

From (3), and

$$dz = p\,dx+q\,dy \text{, we have}$$

$$dz = 0, \text{ or } z = C_1 \qquad ...(5)$$

and from (4), and

$$dz = p\,dx + q\,dy\text{, we have}$$

$$dx + dy + dz = 0,$$

or, $$x + y + z = C_2 \qquad ...(6)$$

Now combining (3) with (1)

$$(q-1)\,dp-(p+1)\,dq = 0 \qquad ...(7)$$

and combining (4) with (1),

$$q\,dp - p\,dq = 0 \qquad ...(8)$$

i.e., $$dp - dq = 0 \qquad \text{[from (7) and (8)]}$$

or $$p - q = k_1 = \phi_1(C_1) = \phi_1(z)$$

$\therefore$ $$\frac{dx}{1} = \frac{dy}{-1} = \frac{dz}{\phi_1(z)}$$

or $$x = F_1(z)+k_2 = F_1(z)+F_2(C_2)$$

$$= F_1(z)+F_2(x+y+z)$$

Example 5: Solve : $q^2r-2pqs+p^2t=0$ and show that the integral represents a surface generated by straight lines which are parallel to a fixed plane.

Solution: Putting

$$r = \frac{dp-s\,dy}{dx}\text{, and } t=\frac{dq-s\,dx}{dy},$$

$$(q^2\,dp\,dy+p^2dq\,dx) = s(q^2\,dy^2+2pq\,dx\,dy+p^2\,dx^2)$$

$\therefore$ The subsidiary equations are

$$q^2dp\,dy+p^2dq\,dy = 0 \qquad ...(1)$$

$$q\,dy+p\,dx = 0 \qquad ...(2)$$

Also $$dz = p\,dx+q\,dy=0.$$

$\therefore$ $$z = c.$$

From (1) and (2),

or $$q\,dp-p\,dq = 0$$

or
$$p/q = k = f(c)$$
$$p - qf(c) = 0.$$
$$\therefore \quad \frac{dx}{1} = \frac{dy}{-f(c)} = \frac{dz}{0},$$
$$y + xf(c) = K = F(c)$$
$$y + xf(z) = F(z). \qquad ...(3)$$

The integral of the differential equation is the surface (3) which is the locus of the straight lines given by the intersections of planes $y + xf(c) = F(c)$, and $z = c$. These lines are all parallel to the plane $z = 0$ as they lie on the plane $z = c$ for varying values of c.

Example 6: Solve by Monge's method

$$r - a^2 t + 2ab(p + qa) = 0.$$

Solution: Putting

$$r = \frac{dp - s\,dy}{dx} \text{ and } t = \frac{dq - s\,dx}{dy}, \text{ we get}$$

$$dp\,dy - a^2\,dq\,dx + 2ab(p + aq)dx\,dy = s(dy^2 - a^2\,dx^2)$$

$\therefore$ The subsidiary equations are

$$dy^2 - a^2 dx^2 = 0 \qquad ...(1)$$
$$dp\,dy - a^2\,dq\,dx + 2ab(p + qa)dx\,dy = 0 \qquad ...(2)$$

From (1),

$$y + ax = \alpha, \qquad ...(3)$$
$$y - ax = \beta. \qquad ...(4)$$

From (3) and (2)

$$dp + a\,dq + 2ab(p + qa)dx = 0$$

or
$$\frac{dp + a\,dq}{p + aq} = -2ab\,dx$$

$$\therefore \quad \log(p + qa) = -2abx + \log c,$$

$$\therefore \quad \frac{p + aq}{c} = \frac{(p + aq)}{f(\alpha)} = e^{-2abx}$$

or
$$p + qa = f(\alpha)\,e^{-2abx} \qquad ...(5)$$

$$\therefore \quad \frac{dx}{1} = \frac{dy}{a} = \frac{dz}{f(\alpha)e^{-2abx}}$$

Integrating,

$$\frac{f(\alpha)e^{-2abx}}{-2ab} = z + k = z + \phi(\beta)$$

$$z = f_1(y+ax)e^{-2abx} + f_2(y-ax)$$

Example 7: Solve by Monge's method

$$r - t\cos^2 x + p\tan x = 0.$$

Solution: Putting

$$r = \frac{dp - s\,dy}{dx},\ t = \frac{dq - s\,dx}{dy},\ \text{we get}$$

$$dp\,dy - \cos^2 x\,dx\,dq + q\tan x\,dx\,dy = s(dy^2 - \cos^2 x\,dx^2).$$

$\therefore$ The subsidiary equations are

$$dy^2 - \cos^2 x\,dx^2 = 0, \quad \text{...(1)}$$

$$dp\,dy - \cos^2 x\,dx\,pq + p\tan x\,dx\,dy = 0. \quad \text{...(2)}$$

From (1), $y = \sin x + \alpha$, ...(3)

$$y = -\sin x + \beta. \quad \text{...(4)}$$

From (2) and (3),

$$\cos x\,dp - \cos^2 x\,dq + p\sin x\,dx = 0$$

or $$\sec x\,dp - dq + p\tan x\sec x\,dx = 0$$

or $$p\sec x - q = c_1 = f(a) = f(y - \sin x).$$

$\therefore$ $$\frac{dx}{\sec x} = \frac{dy}{-1} = \frac{dz}{(y - \sin x)}$$

and hence,

$$f(y-\sin x)\frac{(dy - \cos x\,dx)}{2} = -dz.$$

$\therefore$ $$F(y - \sin x) + 2z = c_2 G(\beta).$$

$\therefore$ $$F(y - \sin x) + 2z = G(y + \sin x). \quad \text{[From (4)]}$$

Example 8: Solve the equation by Monge's method:

$$t - r\sec^4 y = 2q\tan y.$$

Solution: Putting

$$r = \frac{dp - s\,dy}{dx},\ t = \frac{dq - s\,dx}{dy}$$

$$\frac{dq - s\,dx}{dy} - \frac{dp - s\,dy}{dx}\sec^4 y = 2q\tan y$$

or $$dq\,dx - \sec^4 y\,dp\,dy - 2q\tan y\,dx\,dy = s(dx^2 - \sec^4 y\,dy^2)$$

$\therefore$ Subsidiary equations are

$$dx^2 - \sec^4 y\,dy^2 = 0 \quad ...(1)$$

$$dq\,dx - \sin^4 y\,dp\,dy - 2q\tan y\,dx\,dy = 0 \quad ...(2)$$

From (1) $x = \tan y + \alpha$. ...(3)

$$x = -\tan y + \beta. \quad ...(4)$$

From (2) and (3)

$$\sec^2 y\,dq\,dy - \sec^4 y\,dp\,dy - 2q\tan y\sec^2 y\,dy^2 = 0$$

or $$dq - \sec^2 y\,dp - 2q\tan y\,dy = 0$$

or $$\cos^2 y\,dq - dp - 2q\sin y\cos y\,dy = 0$$

or $$q\cos^2 y - p = C = f(x - \tan y)$$

$\therefore$ $$\frac{dx}{-1} = \frac{dy}{\cos^2 y} = \frac{dz}{f(x - \tan y)}$$

or $$\frac{dx - \sec^2 y\,dy}{2} = \frac{-dz}{f(x - \tan y)}$$

$\therefore$ $$\frac{1}{2}f(x - \tan y)(dx - \sec^2 y\,dy) = -dz$$

$\therefore$ $$F(x - \tan y) + 2z = K.$$

or $$F(x - \tan y) + 2z = \phi(x + \tan y) \quad \text{from (4)}$$

$\therefore$ The solution is

$$z = \phi_1(x - \tan y) + \phi_2(x + \tan y).$$

Self Assessment

Solve the following differential equations by Monge's method

17. $2x^2r - 5xys + 2y^2t + 2(px + qy) = 0$

18. $pt - qs = q^3$

Notes

15.9 Monge's Method of Integrating $Rr + Ss + Tt + U(rt - s^2) = V$

R, S, T, U are functions of x, y, z, p, q.

As before put

$$r = (dp - s\,dy)/dx$$

and $$t = (dq - s\,dx)/dy.$$

The equation reduces to

$$R\,dp\,dy + T\,dq\,dx + U\,dp\,dq - V\,dx\,dy - s(R\,dy^2 - S\,dx\,dy + T\,dx^2 + U\,dp\,dx + V\,dp\,dy) = 0$$

or $\quad N - Ms = 0.$

So far, we used to factorise M, but on account of the presence of $U\,dx\,dp + V\,dq\,dy$, the factors are not possible; so let us try to factorise $M + \lambda N$, where λ is some multiplier to be determined later.

$$\text{Now } \lambda N + M = \lambda(R\,dp\,dy + T\,dq\,dx + U\,dp\,dq - V\,dx\,dy)$$

$$+(R\,dy^2 - S\,dx\,dy + T\,dx^2 + U\,dp\,dx + V\,dq\,dy)$$

$$= R\,dy^2 + T\,dx^2 - (S + \lambda V)\,dx\,dy + U\,dp\,dx + U\,dq\,dy + \lambda R\,dp\,dy + \lambda T\,dq\,dx + \lambda U\,dp\,dq.$$

Let the factors of the above be

$$\alpha\,dy + \beta\,dx + \gamma\,dp \text{ and } \alpha'\,dy + \beta'\,dx + \gamma'\,dq.$$

Equating coefficient of dy^2, dx^2, $dp\,dq$ in the product,

$$\alpha\alpha' = R, \beta\beta' = T, \gamma\gamma' = \lambda U.$$

Now if we take

$$\alpha = R, \alpha' = 1, \beta = kT, \beta' = (1/k), \gamma = mU, \gamma' = \lambda/m$$

equating the coefficients of the other five terms.

$$kT + R/k = -(S + \lambda V). \quad ...(1)$$

$$\lambda R/m = U, \quad ...(2)$$

$$kT\lambda/m = \lambda T, \quad ...(3)$$

$$mU = \lambda R, \quad ...(4)$$

$$mU/k = U. \quad ...(5)$$

From (5), $m = k$ and this satisfies (3).

From (2) and (3), $m = \lambda R/U = k.\left(\text{on putting } k = \frac{\lambda R}{U}\right)$

$\therefore \quad$ From (1),

$$\lambda^2(RT + UV) + \lambda US + U^2 = 0 \quad ...(6)$$

The first step in practical working is to form the equation (6) in λ and to determine the two roots λ_1 and λ_2 of this equation.

So if λ_1 is a root of (6), factorised $M + \lambda N$ is

$$\left(R\,dy + \lambda_1 \frac{RT}{U} dx + \lambda_1 R\,dp\right)\left(dy + \frac{U}{\lambda_1 R} dx + \frac{U}{R} dq\right)$$

Notes

Or $\qquad \dfrac{R}{U}(U\,dy + T\lambda_1 dx + \lambda_1 U\,dp)\dfrac{1}{\lambda_1 R}(\lambda_1 R\,dy + U\,dp + \lambda_1 U\,dq).$

Similarly if λ_2 is a root of (6), the same is,

$$\frac{R}{U}(U\,dy + T\lambda_2 dx + \lambda_2\,U\,dp) \times \frac{1}{\lambda_2 R}(\lambda_2 R\,dy + U\,dx + \lambda_2 U\,dq).$$

Now we may obtain two integrals $u_1 = a_1,\ \nu_1 = b_1$ of the equations

and $\qquad \left.\begin{aligned} U\,dy + \lambda_1\,T\,dx + \lambda_1 U\,dp = 0 \\ U\,dx + \lambda_2\,R\,dy + \lambda_2\,U\,dq = 0 \end{aligned}\right\} \qquad$ ...(7)

or we may obtain two integrals $u_2 = a_2,\ \nu_2 = b_2$ of the equations

$$\left.\begin{aligned} U\,dy + \lambda_2 T\,dx + \lambda_2\,U\,dp = 0 \\ U\,dx + \lambda_1 R\,dy + \lambda_1\,U\,dq = 0 \end{aligned}\right\} \qquad ...(8)$$

Sets of equations (7) and (8), when written down, constitute the second important step in the solution of the given equation.

Thus we get two intermediate integrals $u_1 = f_1(\nu_1)$ and $u_2 = f_2(\nu_2)$ and substituting in $dz = p\,dz + q\,dy$, the values of p and q obtained from the two intermediate integrals, and we get the solution after integrating.

In case the two roots of the equation (6) are equal, we shall get only intermediate integral $u_1 = f_1(\nu_1)$ which together with one of the integrals $u_1 = a_1$ and $\nu_1 = b_1$ will give values of p and q suitable to solve $dz = p\,dx + q\,dy$.

If it is not possible to obtain the values of p and q from the two intermediate integrals $u_1 = f_1(\nu_1)$ and $u_2 = f_2(\nu_2)$, suitable for integration in $dz = p\,dx + q\,dy$, we may take one of the intermediate integrals say $u_1 = f_1(\nu_1)$ and one of the integrals from $u_2 = a_2$ and $\nu_2 = b_2$.

The values of p and q obtained from these and substituted in $dz = p\,dx + q\,dy$ will give the solution of the given equation.

Illustrative Examples

Example 1: Solve:

$ar + bs + ct + e(rt - s^2) = h$ where a, b, c, e and h are constants.

Solution: Here $R = a, S = b, T = c, U = e, V = h$

The equation in λ is

$$\lambda^2(ac + eh) + \lambda be + e^2 \;=\; 0. \qquad ...(1)$$

Putting $\qquad \lambda \;=\; -e/m, \qquad$ ...(2)

(1) becomes

$$\frac{e^2}{m^2}(ac + eh) - \frac{e^2 b}{m} + e^2 \;=\; 0$$

or $$m^2 - bm + (ac + eh) = 0 \quad ...(3)$$

If m_1, m_2 are the roots of (3), the first system of intermediate integrals is given by

$$U\,dy + \lambda_1 T\,dx + \lambda_1 U\,dp = 0,$$

$$U\,dx + \lambda_2 R\,dy + \lambda_2 U\,dq = 0,$$

i.e., by $$e\,dy + \left(-\frac{e}{m_1}\right)c\,dx + \left(-\frac{e}{m_1}\right)e\,dp = 0.$$

$$e\,dx + \left(-\frac{e}{m_2}\right)a\,dy + \left(-\frac{e}{m_2}\right)e\,dq = 0.$$

or by $$c\,dx + e\,dp - m_1\,dy = 0,$$

$$a\,dy + e\,dq - m_2\,dx = 0;$$

so one of the intermediate integrals is

$$cx + ep - m_1 y = f(ay + eq - m_2 x). \quad ...(4)$$

Similarly the second intermediate integral is

$$(cx + ep - m_1 y) = F(ay + ap - m_1 x), \quad ...(5)$$

It is not possible to get the values of p and q from (4), (5); so we combine (4) with $cx + ep - m_2 y = A$,

Thus we have

$$(m_2 - m_1)y + A = f(ay + eq - m_2 x)$$

or $$ay + eq = m_2 x + \phi[(m_2 - m_1)y + A]$$

where ϕ is inverse function of f.

This gives q, and $cx + ep - m_2 y = A$ gives p.

Substituting these values in $dz = p\,dx + q\,dy$,

$$e\,dz = (A - cx + m_2 y)dx + [-ay + m_2 x + \phi\{(m_2 - m_1)y + A\}]dy.$$

Integrating,

$$ez + \frac{cx^2}{2} + \frac{ay^2}{2} = m_2 xy + Ax + \{\Psi(m_2 - m_1)y + A\} + B$$

where $$\Psi(t) = \frac{f\phi(t)\,dt}{m_2 - m_3}$$

Example 2: Solve:

$$z(1+q^2)r - 2pqzs + z(1+p^2)t - z^2(s^2 - rt) + 1 + p^2 + q^2 = 0.$$

Notes

Solution: Here

$$R = z(1+q^2), S = -2pqz, T = (1+p^2)z$$

$$U = z^2, V = -(1+p^2+q^2).$$

The equation in λ is

$$(RT+UV)\lambda^2 + \lambda US + U^2 = 0$$

or $$z^2\lambda^2 p^2 q^2 - 2\lambda z^3 pq + z^4 = 0$$

or $$p^2 q^2 \lambda^2 - 2z\lambda pq + z^2 = 0$$

or $$\lambda = z/pq. \qquad \text{(roots are equal).}$$

$\therefore$ The system of intermediate integrals is given by

$$U\,dy + \lambda T\; dx + \lambda U\; dp = 0$$

$$U\,dx + \lambda R\,dy + \lambda U\,dq = 0.$$

i.e., by $$pq\; dy + (1+p^2)dx + zdp = 0$$

$$pq\,dx + (1+q^2)dy + zdq = 0.$$

Also $$dz = p\;dx + q\;dy.$$

We write (1) as

$$dx + p(p\,dx + q\,dy) + z\,dp = 0,$$

With the help of (3), it reduces to

$$dx + p\;dz + z\;dp = 0$$

or $$x + pz = \alpha.$$

Similarly from (2) and (3), $y + zq = \beta$.

Putting the values of p and q in $dz = p\;dx + q\;dy$,

$$dz = \frac{\alpha - x}{z}dx + \frac{\beta - y}{z}dy$$

or $$-z\,dz = (\alpha - x)(-dx) + (\beta - y)(-dy)$$

or $$-\frac{z^2}{2} = \frac{(\alpha - x)^2}{2} + \frac{(\beta - y)^2}{2} + k$$

or $$z^2 + (x-\alpha)^2 + (y-\beta)^2 = \lambda^2$$

Where α, β, λ are constants.

Example 3: Solve: $(1+q^2)r - 2pqs + (1+p^2)t$

$$+(1+p^2+q^2)^{-1/2}(rt - s^2) = -(1+p^2+q^2)^{3/2}.$$

Notes

Solution: Here

$$R = (1+q^2), S = -2pq, T = (1+p^2),$$

$$U = (1+p^2+q^2)^{-1/2}, V = -(1+p^2+q^2)^{3/2}.$$

The equation in λ is $\quad (RT+UV)\lambda^2 + \lambda US + U^2 = 0$

or $$[(1+p^2)(1+q^2)-(1+p^2+q^2)]\lambda^2 + \lambda\frac{(-2pq)}{\sqrt{1+p^2+q^2}} + \frac{1}{1+p^2+q^2} = 0$$

or $$\lambda^2 p^2 q^2 (1+p^2+q^2) - 2pq\sqrt{(1+p^2+q^2)}\,\lambda + 1 = 0$$

or $$\lambda = \frac{1}{pq\sqrt{(1+p^2+q^2)}}$$ (roots being equal).

We get only one system which will give only one intermediate integral.

The system is $U\,dy + \lambda T\ dx + \lambda U\ dp = 0,$

$$U\ dx + \lambda R\,dy + \lambda U\,dq = 0,$$

$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{(1+p^2+q^2)}}dy + \frac{(1+p^2)}{pq\sqrt{(1+p^2+q^2)}}dx + \frac{dp}{dq(1+p^2+q^2)} = 0$$

$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{(1+p^2+q^2)}}dx + \frac{(1+q^2)}{pq\sqrt{(1+p^2+q^2)}}dy + \frac{dq}{pq(1+p^2+q^2)} = 0$$

or $$pq\ dy + (1+p^2)dx + \frac{dp}{\sqrt{(1+p^2+q^2)}} = 0,$$

$$pq\,dx + (1+q^2)dy + \frac{dq}{\sqrt{(1+p^2+q^2)}} = 0.$$

Eliminating

$$dy, [(1+p^2)(1+q^2) - p^2q^2]dx + [(1+q^2)dp - pq\,dq]/\sqrt{(1+p^2+q^2)}$$

or $$dx + \frac{(1+q^2)\,dp - pq\ dq}{(1+p^2+q^2)^{3/2}} = 0$$

or $$dx + \frac{(1+p^2+q^2)\,dp}{(1+p^2-q^2)^{3/2}} - \frac{(p^2dp + pq\ dq)}{(1+p^2+q^2)^{3/2}} = 0$$

or $$dx + (1+p^2+q^2)^{-1/2}\ dp - \frac{\frac{1}{2}p(2p\ dp + 2q\ dq)}{(1+p^2+q^2)^{3/2}} = 0$$

or $$x + p\,(1+p^2+q^2)^{-1/2} = \alpha. \qquad ...(1)$$

Similarly eliminating $dx, y + q(1+p^2+q^2)^{-1/2} = \beta$ ...(2)

Notes

From (1) and (2),

$$\frac{(x-\alpha)}{(y-\beta)} = \frac{p}{q}. \qquad ...(3)$$

Substituting in (1) the value of p as found from (3),

$$q = \frac{y-\beta}{\sqrt{[1-\{(x-\alpha)^2+(y-\beta)^2\}]}}$$

Similarly from (3) and (2),

$$p = \frac{x-\alpha}{\sqrt{[1-\{(x-\alpha)^2+(y-\beta)^2\}]}}$$

Now, $$dz = p\,dx + q\,dy$$

or $$dz = \frac{(x-\alpha)\,dx+(y-\beta)dy}{\sqrt{[1-\{(x-\alpha)^2.+(y+\beta)^2]}}$$

Integrating,

$$(z-\gamma) = -[1-\{(x-\alpha)^2+(y-\beta)^2\}]^{1/2}$$

or $$(z-\gamma)^2 = 1-[(x-\alpha)^2+(y-\beta)^2]$$

or $$(x-\alpha)^2+(y-\beta)^2+(z-y)^2 = 1.$$

Example 4: Solve $s^2 - rt = a^2$

or $$rt - s^2 = -a^2.$$

Solution: Here $R = 0, S = 0, T = 0, U = 1, V = -a^2$.

$\therefore$ The equation in λ is

$$\lambda^2(-a^2)+\lambda.\,0+1 = 0$$

or $$\lambda = \pm 1/a.$$

The two intermediate integrals are given by

$$\left.\begin{aligned} -dy-\frac{1}{a}dp &= 0, \\ -dx+\frac{1}{a}dq &= 0. \end{aligned}\right\} \qquad ...(a)$$

$$\left.\begin{aligned} -dy+\frac{1}{a}dp &= 0, \\ -dx-\frac{1}{a}dq &= 0. \end{aligned}\right\} \qquad ...(b)$$

Notes

From (a),

$$\left.\begin{aligned} p + ay &= F(\alpha) \\ q - ax &= \alpha \end{aligned}\right\} \qquad \text{...(c)}$$

and from (b),

$$\left.\begin{aligned} p - ay &= F(\beta) \\ q + ax &= \beta \end{aligned}\right\} \qquad \text{...(d)}$$

i.e., the two intermediate integrals are

$$p + ay = f(q - ax) \qquad \text{...(1)}$$

and

$$p - ay = F(q + ax) \qquad \text{...(2)}$$

Now since it is not possible to find the values of p and q from (1) and (2), we proceed as follows. Suppose α, β are not constants, but parameters.

Solving (*c*) and (*d*),

$$x = \frac{\beta - \alpha}{2a}, q = \frac{\alpha + b}{2}. \qquad \text{...(3)}$$

$$p = \frac{1}{2}[F(\alpha) + f(\beta)], \qquad \text{...(4)}$$

$$y = \frac{1}{2a}[F(\alpha) - f(\beta)]. \qquad \text{...(5)}$$

Substituting these values in $dz = p\ dx + q\ dy$,

$$\begin{aligned} dz &= \frac{1}{4a}[F(\alpha) + f(\beta)]\,(d\beta - dx) + \frac{\alpha + \beta}{4a}[F'(\alpha)\,d\alpha - f'(\beta)\,d\beta] \\ &= \frac{1}{4a}[\{F(\alpha)\,d\beta + \beta F'(\alpha)\,d\alpha\} - \{f(\beta)\,d\alpha + \alpha F'(\beta)\,d\beta\}] \\ &\quad + \frac{1}{4a}[\{F(\alpha)d\alpha + \alpha F'(\alpha)d\alpha\} - \{f(\beta)d\beta + \beta f'(\beta)dB\}] + \frac{1}{4a}[2f(\beta)\ d\beta - 2F(\alpha)\,d\alpha]. \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore \qquad z &= \frac{1}{4a}[\beta F(\alpha) - \alpha f(\beta) - \beta f(\beta) + \alpha F(\alpha)] + \frac{2}{4a}\int f(\alpha)\ d\beta - \frac{2}{4a}\int F(\beta)\,d\alpha \\ &= \frac{1}{4a}[F(\alpha))(\alpha + \beta) - f(\beta)(\alpha + \beta)] + \frac{2}{4a}G(\beta) - \frac{2}{4a}\phi(\alpha) \\ &= \frac{\alpha + \beta}{2}\left[\frac{F(\alpha) - f(\beta)}{2a}\right] + \frac{1}{2a}G(\beta) - \frac{1}{2a}\phi\ (\alpha) \end{aligned}$$

or $$z - qy = \Psi_1(q + ax) + \phi_2(q - ax) \qquad \text{[from (3) and (5)]}$$

where

Notes

$$\Psi_1(t) = \int \frac{f(t)}{2a} dt. \quad \text{...(6)}$$

and
$$\Psi_2(t) = -\int \frac{F(t)}{2a} dt. \quad \text{...(7)}$$

Hence the primitive is

$$z - qy = \Psi_1(q+ax) + \Psi_2(q-ax)$$

$$-y = \phi_1'(q+ax) + \Psi_2'(q-ax) \quad \text{[from (5), (6) and (7)].}$$

Example 5: Solve:

$$rq + (p+x)s + yt + y(rt - s^2) + q = 0$$

Solution: Here $R = q, S = (p+x), T = y, U = y, V = -q.$

The equation in λ is

$$\lambda^2[qy - qy] + \lambda.y(p+x) + y^2 = 0$$

or
$$\lambda = \infty, \text{ or } \lambda = -y/(p+x).$$

$\therefore$ The intermediate integrals are given by

$$\left.\begin{aligned} y\,dy - \frac{y^2}{p+x}dx - \frac{y}{p+x}dp &= 0 \\ \frac{y}{\infty}dx + q\,dy + y\,dq &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\} \quad \text{...(a)}$$

$$\left.\begin{aligned} y\,dx - \frac{qy}{p+x}dy - \frac{y^2\,dq}{p+x} &= 0 \\ \frac{y}{\infty}dy + y\,dx + y\,dp &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\} \quad \text{...(b)}$$

From (a)

$$[(p+x)/y] = \alpha \quad \text{...(1)}$$

$$qy = F(\alpha) \quad \text{...(2)}$$

or one of the integrals is

$$qy = F[(p+x)/y].$$

From second equation of (*b*),

$$p + x = \beta, \frac{p+x}{y} = \frac{\beta}{y} = \alpha \quad \text{[from (1)]...(2')}$$

$$p = \beta - x. \quad \text{...(3)}$$

Notes

and from (2) and (1),

$$q = \frac{1}{y}F\left(\frac{p+x}{y}\right) = \frac{1}{y}F\left(\frac{\beta}{y}\right) = \frac{1}{y}F(\alpha) \quad \text{[from (2′)]}$$

$$= \frac{\alpha}{\beta}.F(\alpha) \quad \left[\because \text{From (1) and (3)}, \frac{1}{y} = \frac{\alpha}{\beta}\right] \quad ...(4)$$

Now

$$dz = p\,dx + q\,dy$$

$$= (\beta - x)\,dx + \frac{\alpha}{\beta}F(\alpha)\,dy \quad \text{[from (3) and (4)]}$$

$$\therefore \quad z = \beta x - \frac{x^2}{2} + \frac{\alpha}{\beta}F(\alpha)\,y + k$$

$$= \beta x - \frac{x^2}{2} + \frac{1}{y}F\left(\frac{\beta}{y}\right)y + \phi(\beta)$$

or

$$z = \beta x - \frac{x^2}{2} + F\left(\frac{\beta}{y}\right) + \phi(\beta)$$

Example 6: Solve:

$$5r + 6s + 3t + 2(rt - s^2) + 3 = 0 \quad ...(1)$$

Solution: Comparing it with

$$Rr + Ss + Tt + U(rt - s^2) = V$$

We have $R = 5, S = 6, T = 3, U = 2, V = -3$

The λ-quadratic will be

$$\lambda^2(UV + RT) + \lambda\, SU + U^2 = 0$$

or

$$9\lambda^2 + 12\lambda + 4 = 0$$

or

$$(3\lambda + 2)^2 = 0$$

$$\therefore \quad \lambda_2 = -\frac{2}{3}, \qquad \lambda = -\frac{2}{3}.$$

The intermediate integral will be

$$U\,dy + \lambda_1 T\,dx + \lambda_1 U.\,dp = 0$$

and

$$\lambda_2 R\,dy + U\,dx + \lambda_2 U.\,dq = 0$$

or

$$3\,dy - 3\,dx - 2\,dp = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad -5\,dy + 3\,dx - 2\,dq = 0.$$

Integrating,

Notes

$$3y - 3x - 2p = a, \qquad -5y + 3x - 2q = b \qquad ...(2)$$

$\therefore$ The intermediate integral is

$$3y - 3x - 2p = f(-5y + 3x - 2q) \qquad ...(3)$$

From (2),

$$p = \frac{1}{2}(3y - 3x - a), \qquad q = \frac{1}{2}(-5y + 3x - b)$$

Putting these values of p and q in

$$dz = p\,dx + q\,dy$$

$$dz = \frac{1}{2}(3y - 3x - a)\,dx + \frac{1}{2}(-5y + 3x - b)\,dy$$

or

$$2\,dz = 3(y\,dx + x\,dy) - 3x\,dx - 5y\,dy - a\,dx - b\,dy$$

Integrating

$$2z = 3xy - \frac{3}{2}x^2 - \frac{5}{2}y^2 - ax - by + c$$

This is the required complete integral of (1).

Self Assessment

19. Solve

$2s + (rt - s^2) = 1$

20. Solve

$3r + 4s + t + (rt - s^2) = 1$

15.10 Summary

- The partial differential equations are classified according to their structure.
- Similar method as used in ordinary differential equations is adopted for partial differential equations with constant coefficients.
- The methods, adopted in solving various equations are given in details. It is advisable to understand the partial differential equations and apply the appropriate methods.

15.11 Keywords

C.F. or Complimentary Function is the solution of the partial differential equations containing a number of arbitrary constants.

P.I. or Particular Integral is the particular solution of the partial differential equation containing any arbitrary constants.

15.12 Review Questions

1. Solve

$$\frac{\partial^4 z}{\partial x^4} - \frac{\partial^4 z}{\partial y^4} = 0$$

2. Solve

$$(D^3 - 3D^2D' + 2DD'^2)z = 0$$

3. Solve

$$\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x^2} - 2a\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x \partial y} + a^2 \frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial y^2} = 0$$

4. Solve

$$\frac{\partial^4 z}{\partial x^4} - 2\frac{\partial^4 z}{\partial x^3 \partial y} - 3\frac{\partial^4 z}{\partial x^2 \partial y^2} + 8\frac{\partial^4 z}{\partial x \partial y^3} - 4\frac{\partial^4 z}{\partial y^4} = 0$$

5. Solve

$$\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x^2} + (a+b)\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x \partial y} + ab\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial y^2} = xy$$

6. Solve

$$\left(\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x^2} - 2\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x \partial y} + \frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial y^2}\right) = e^{x+2y}$$

7. Solve

$$\left(\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x^2} - \frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x \partial y} + \frac{\partial z}{\partial y} - z\right) = \cos(x+2y) + e^y$$

8. Solve

$$(DD' + D - D - 1)z = xy$$

9. Solve

$$x^2\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x^2} - y^2\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial y^2} = x^2 y$$

10. Solve

$$r + t - (rt - s^2) = 1$$

Answers: Self Assessment

1. $Z = F_1(y+mx) + F_2(y+3x) + F_3(y+2x)$
2. $Z = F_1\left(y - \frac{x}{2}\right) + F_2(y-2x)$
3. $Z = F_1(y) + F_2(y+2x) + xF_3(y+2x)$
4. $Z = F_1(y+3x) + x\,F_2(y+3x)$

Notes

5. $Z = F_1(y-2x) + F_2(y+3x) + \frac{x^3}{6}y + \frac{x^4}{24}$

6. $Z = F_1(y-2x) + F_2(y-x) + \frac{x^3}{6} + \frac{y^3}{12}$

7. $Z = F_1(y-2x) + F_2(y-x) + \frac{1}{36}(x+y)^3$

8. $Z = F_1(y-ix) + F_2(y+ix) - \frac{1}{(m^2+n^2)}\cos(mx+xy)$

9. $Z = F_1(y+x) + x\,F_2(x+y) + \frac{x^3}{6} + \frac{x^2}{2}\phi(x+y)$

10. $Z = F_1(y) + F_2(y+2x) + x\,F_3(y+2x) + \frac{x^2}{4}\sin(2x+y)$

11. $Z = F_1(y-x) + x\,F_2(y-x) + x\sin y$

12. $Z = F_1(y+2x) + F_2(y-x) + y\,e^x$

13. $Z = F_1(y-ax) + e^{2abx}F_2(y+ax)$

14. $Z = e^x F_1(y) + e^{-x}F_2(y-x) + \frac{1}{2}\sin(x+2y)$

15. $Z = F_1(y^2+x^2) + F_2(y^2-x^2)$

16. $Z = F_1(xy) + x\,F_2\left(\frac{y}{x}\right) + xy\log x$

17. $Z = F_1(x^2y) + F_2(xy^2)$

18. $y = zx + F_1(z) + F_2(x)$

19. $Z = xy + C_1x + C_2y + C_3$

20. $Z = 2xy - \frac{1}{2}(x^2+3y^2) + C_1x + \psi(y+mx)$

15.13 Further Readings

Books

Piaggio, H.T.H., Differential Equations

Sneddon L.N., Elements of Partial Differential Equations.

Unit 16: Classifications of Second Order Partial Differential Equations

CONTENTS

Objectives

Introduction

16.1 Classification of Linear, second order Partial Differential Equations in Two Independent Variables

16.2 Canonical form

16.3 Classification of Second Order Partial Differential Equations

16.4 Summary

16.5 Keyword

16.6 Review Questions

16.7 Further Readings

Objectives

After studying this unit, you should be able to:

- Observe that the partial differential equations of the second order can be of linear type or non-linear type.
- Understand that linear partial differential equations can be classified into three categories, namely hyperbolic, parabolic and elliptic type.
- Know that we have equations having variable coefficients there are some cases where the equations involve variable coefficients but they can be transformed into equations with constant coefficients.

Introduction

Classification of the partial differential equations help us in solving them in a systematic way. It is advisable to understand the type of the partial differential equation before trying to solve it.

The methods of solving various classes of differential equations are also different.

16.1 Classification of Linear, Second Order Partial Differential Equations in two Independent Variables

Consider a second order linear partial differential equation in two independent variables x and y which can be written as

$$a(x,y)\frac{\partial^2\phi}{\partial x^2}+2b(x,y)\frac{\partial^2\phi}{\partial x\partial y}+c(x,y)\frac{\partial^2\phi}{\partial y^2}+d_1(x,y)\frac{\partial\phi}{\partial x}+d_2(x,y)\frac{\partial\phi}{\partial x}+d_3(x,y)\phi=f(x,y) \quad ...(1)$$

It will be seen that the first three terms of equation (1) allow us to classify the equation into one of three distinct types: *Elliptic*, for example Laplace's equation, *Parabolic*, for example the diffusion equation or *Hyperbolic*, for example the wave equation as follows:

$$\frac{\partial^2 V}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 V}{\partial y^2} = 0 \qquad \text{(Laplace equations for two variables } x, y\text{)}$$

$$K\frac{\partial^2 V}{\partial x^2} = \frac{\partial V}{\partial t} \qquad \text{(Diffusion equation)}$$

$$\frac{\partial^2 V}{\partial x^2} = \frac{1}{C^2}\frac{\partial^2 V}{\partial t^2} \qquad \text{(Wave equation)}$$

Each of these types of equation has distinctive properties. We would like to know about those properties of equation (1) that are unchanged by any change of co-ordinates since these must be of fundamental significance and not just a result of our choice of co-ordinate system. We can write this change of co-ordinates as

$$(x, y) \to \{\varepsilon(x, y), \eta(x, y)\}$$

with

$$\frac{\partial(\varepsilon, \eta)}{\partial(x, y)} \neq 0 \qquad \text{...(2)}$$

If equation represents a model physical system, a change of co-ordinates should not affect its qualitative behaviour. Writing $\phi(x, y) \equiv \psi(\varepsilon, \eta)$ and using subscripts to denote partial derivatives, we find that

$$\phi_x = \varepsilon_x\psi_\varepsilon + \eta_x\psi_\eta,\ \phi_{xx} = \varepsilon^2{}_x\psi_{\varepsilon\varepsilon} + 2\varepsilon_x\eta_x\psi_{\varepsilon x} + \eta^2{}_x\psi_{\eta\eta} + \varepsilon_{xx}\psi_\varepsilon + \eta_{xx}\psi_\eta$$

and similarly for the other derivatives. Substituting these into equation (1) gives us

$$A\psi_{\varepsilon\varepsilon} + 2B\psi_{\varepsilon\eta} + C\psi_{\eta\eta} + b_1(\varepsilon, \eta)\psi_\eta + b_2(\varepsilon, \eta)\psi_\eta + b_3(\varepsilon, \eta)\psi = g(\varepsilon, \eta) \qquad \text{...(3)}$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} &A + a\varepsilon_x^2 + 2b\varepsilon_x\eta_x + c\eta_y^2, \\ &B + a\varepsilon_x\eta_x + b(\eta_x\varepsilon_y + \eta_y\varepsilon_x) + c\varepsilon_y\eta_y \\ &C + a\eta_x^2 + 2b\eta_x\eta_y + c\eta_y^2, \end{aligned} \qquad \text{....(4)}$$

We do not need to consider other co-efficient functions b_1, (ε, η), $b_2(\varepsilon, \eta)$, $b_3(\varepsilon, \eta)$.

We can express (4) in a concise matrix form as

$$\begin{pmatrix} A & B \\ B & C \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} \varepsilon_x & \eta_x \\ \varepsilon_y & \eta_y \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ b & c \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} \varepsilon_x & \varepsilon_y \\ \eta_x & \eta_y \end{pmatrix} \qquad \text{...(5)}$$

which shows that

$$\det\begin{pmatrix} A & B \\ B & C \end{pmatrix} = \det\begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ b & c \end{pmatrix}\left(\frac{\partial(\varepsilon, \eta)}{\partial(x, y)}\right)^2 \qquad \text{...(6)}$$

In (6) $\left(\dfrac{\partial(\varepsilon, \eta)}{\partial(x, y)}\right)$ = Jacobian of transformation.

This shows that the sign of a $c - b^2$ is independent of the choice of co-ordinate system which allows us to classify the equation.

An *Elliptic* equation has $ac < b^2$, for example Laplace equation

Notes

$$\frac{\partial^2\phi}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2\phi}{\partial y^2}.$$

A *Parabolic* equation has $ac = b^2$, for example the diffusion equation

$$K\frac{\partial^2\phi}{\partial x^2} - \frac{\partial\phi}{\partial y} = 0 \quad \text{...(here } y = t\text{)}$$

A *hyperbolic* equation has $ac < b^2$, for example the wave equation

$$\frac{\partial^2\phi}{\partial x^2} - \frac{1}{c^2}\frac{\partial^2\phi}{\partial y^2} = 0 \quad \text{...(here } y \text{ is time)}$$

16.2 Canonical Form

Any equation of the form (1) can be written in Canonical form by choosing the canonical co-ordinate system in terms of which the second derivative appear in the simplest possible way.

Hyperbolic Equation $ac < b^2$

In this case we can factorize A and C to give

$$A = a\varepsilon_x^2 + 2b\varepsilon_x\varepsilon_y + c\varepsilon_y^2 = (p_1\varepsilon_x + q_1\varepsilon_y)(p_2\varepsilon_x + q_2\varepsilon_y)$$

$$C = a\eta_x^2 + 2b\eta_x\eta_y + c\eta_y^2 = (p_1\eta_x + q_1\eta_y)(p_2\eta_x + q_2\eta_y)$$

with the two factors not multiples of each other. We can then choose ε and η so that

$$p_1\varepsilon_x + q_1\varepsilon_y = p_2\eta_x + q_2\eta_y = 0$$

and hence $A = C = 0$. This means that

ε is constant on curves with $\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{q_1}{p_1}$, η is constant

on curves with $\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{q_2}{p_2}$

we can therefore write

$$p_1dy - q_1dx\ p_2dy - q_2dx = 0$$

and hence

$$(p_1dy - q_1dx)(p_2dy - q_2dx) = 0$$

which gives

$$ad^2y - 2b\,dxdy + cdx^2 = 0 \quad \text{...(7)}$$

As we shall see, this is the easiest equation to use to determine (ε, η). We call (ε, η) the characteristic co-ordinate system in terms of which (1) takes its Canonical form

$$\psi_{\varepsilon\eta} + b_1(\varepsilon, \eta)\psi_\varepsilon + b_2(\varepsilon, \eta)\psi_\eta + b_3\psi = g(\varepsilon, \eta) \quad \text{...(8)}$$

The curves where ε is constant and the curves where η is constant are called characteristic curves or simply characteristics. As we shall see it is the existence or non-existence of characteristic curves for the three types of equations that determines the distinctive properties of their solutions.

Notes

As a less trivial example, consider the hyperbolic equation

$$\phi_{xx} - \text{sech}^4 x\, \phi_{yy} = 0 \qquad ...(9)$$

Equation (7) shows that the characteristics are given by

$$dy^2 - \text{sech}^4 x\, dx^2 = (dy + \text{sech}^2 x\, dx)\,(dy - \text{sech}^2 x\, dx) = 0$$

and hence

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \pm\,\text{sech}^2 x$$

The characteristics are therefore

$$y \pm \text{tanb}\, x = \text{constant},$$

and the characteristic co-ordinates are

$\varepsilon = y + \text{tanb}\, x$, $\eta = y - \text{tanb}\, x$. On writing (9) in terms of these variables with $\phi = (x, y) = \psi(\varepsilon, \eta)$, we find that its canonical form is

$$\psi_{\varepsilon\eta} = \frac{(\eta - \varepsilon)\,(\psi_\varepsilon - \psi_\eta)}{[4 - (\varepsilon - \eta)^2]} \qquad ...(10)$$

in the domain $(\eta - \varepsilon)^2 < 4$.

Parabolic Equation $ac = b^2$

In this case

$$A = a\varepsilon_x^2 + 2b\varepsilon_x\varepsilon_y + c\varepsilon_y^2 = (p\varepsilon_x + q\varepsilon_y)^2$$

$$C = a\eta_x^2 + 2b\eta_x\eta_y + c\eta_y^2 = (p\eta_x + q\eta_y)^2$$

so we can construct one set of characteristic curves. We therefore take ε to be constant on the curves $pdy - qdx = 0$. This gives us $A = 0$ and since $AC + B^2$, $B = 0$. For any set of curves where η is constant that is never parallel to the characteristics, C does not vanish, and the canonical form is

$$\psi_{\eta\eta} + b_1(\varepsilon, \eta)\psi_\varepsilon + b(\varepsilon, \eta)\psi_\eta + b_3(\varepsilon, \eta)\psi = g(\varepsilon, \eta) \qquad ...(11)$$

We can now see that the diffusion equation is in canonical form.

As a further example, consider the parabolic equation

$$\phi_{xx} + 2\text{cosec}\, y\, \phi_{xy} + \text{cosec}^2 y\, \phi_{yy} = 0 \qquad ...(12)$$

The characteristic curves satisfy

$$dy^2 - 2\,\text{cosec}\, y\, dxdy + \text{cosec}^2\, y\, dx^2 = (dy - \text{cosec}\, dx)^2 = 0,$$

and hence

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \text{cosec}\, y$$

The characteristic curves are therefore given by $x + \cos y = \text{constant}$, and we can take $\varepsilon = x + \cos y$ as the characteristic. A suitable choice for the other co-ordinate is $\eta = y$. On writing (12) in terms of these variables, with $\phi(x, y) = \psi(\varepsilon, \eta)$, we find that its canonical form is

$$\psi_{\eta\eta} = \sin^2\eta\, \cos\eta\psi\varepsilon, \qquad ...(13)$$

in the whole (ε, η) plane.

Elliptic Equations: $ac > b^2$

In this case we can make neither A nor C zero, since no real characteristic curves exist. Instead we can simplify by making $A = C$ and $B = 0$, so that the second derivative form the Laplacian $\Delta^2\psi$ and the canonical form is

$$\psi_{\varepsilon\varepsilon} + \psi_{\eta\eta} + b_1(\varepsilon, \eta)\psi_\varepsilon + b_2(\varepsilon, \eta)\psi_\eta + b_3\psi = g(\varepsilon, \eta) \qquad ...(14)$$

Clearly Laplace's equation is in canonical form

In order to proceed, we must solve

$$A - C = a(\varepsilon_x^2 - \eta_y^2) + 2b(\varepsilon_x\varepsilon_y - \eta_x\eta_y) + c(\varepsilon_y^2 - \eta_y^2) = 0$$

$$B = a\varepsilon_x\eta_x + b(\eta_x\varepsilon_y + \varepsilon_x\eta_y) + c\varepsilon_y\varepsilon_y = 0.$$

We can do this by defining $x = \varepsilon + i\eta$, and noting that these two equations form the real and imaginary parts of

$$a\chi_x^2 + 2b\chi_x\chi_y + c\chi_x^2 = 0$$

and hence

$$\frac{\chi_x}{\chi_y} = \frac{-b \pm \sqrt{ac - b^2}}{a} \qquad ...(15)$$

Now χ is constant on curves given by $\chi_y dy + \chi_x dx = 0$, and hence from (15) on

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{b \pm \sqrt{ac - b^2}}{a} \qquad ...(16)$$

By solving (16) we can deduce ε, η. For example consider elliptic equation

$$\phi_{xx} + \text{sech}^4 x\, \phi_{yy} = 0 \qquad ...(17)$$

In this case $\chi = \varepsilon + i\eta$ is constant on the curves given by

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \pm i\,\text{sech}^2 x,$$

and hence $y \pm i$ tanb x = constant. We can therefore take $\chi = y + i$ tanb x, and hence $\varepsilon = y$, η = tanb x. On writing (17) in terms of these variables, with $\phi(x, y) = \psi(\varepsilon, \eta)$, we find that the canonical form is

$$\psi_{\varepsilon\varepsilon} + \psi_{\eta\eta} = \frac{2n}{(1 - \eta^2)}\psi_\eta, \qquad ...(18)$$

in the domain $|\eta| < 1$.

16.3 Classification of Second order Partial Differential Equations

Let us consider a function z of two independent variables x and y. Writing various partial derivatives as

$$p = \frac{\partial z}{\partial x}, q = \frac{\partial z}{\partial y}, r = \frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x^2}, s = \frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x dy}, t = \frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial y^2} \qquad ...(1)$$

Notes

We find that the most general form of the partial differential equation of the second order will be of the form

$$F(x, y, z, p, q, r, s, t) = 0 \quad \text{...(2)}$$

Example: Consider z as a function of x, y through two functions f and g as follows

$$z = f(x^2 - y) + g(x^2 + y) = 0 \quad \text{...(3)}$$

Find the differential equation by eliminating f and g

Solution:

$$p = \frac{\partial z}{\partial x} = \frac{\partial f}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial q}{\partial x}$$

Let $u = x^2 - y$ and $v = x^2 + y$, so that

$$z = f(u) + g(v)$$

then
$$p = \frac{\partial z}{\partial x} = \frac{\partial f}{\partial u}.\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial q}{\partial v}.\frac{\partial v}{\partial x}$$

$$= \frac{\partial f}{\partial u}.(2x) + (2x)\frac{\partial q}{\partial v} = 2x\left(\frac{\partial f}{\partial u} + \frac{\partial q}{\partial v}\right) \quad \text{...(4)}$$

$$q = \frac{\partial f}{\partial u}(-1) + \frac{\partial f}{\partial v}.(1)$$

$$= -\frac{\partial f}{\partial u} + \frac{\partial f}{\partial v} \quad \text{...(5)}$$

$$r = \frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x^2} = \frac{\partial}{\partial x}p = 2\left(\frac{\partial f}{\partial u} + \frac{\partial q}{\partial v}\right) + 2x\left(2x\frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial u^2} + 2x\frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial v^2}\right)$$

$$= 2\left(\frac{\partial f}{\partial u} + \frac{\partial q}{\partial v}\right) + 4x^2\left(\frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial u^2} + \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial v^2}\right) \quad \text{...(6)}$$

$$\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x \partial y} = \frac{\partial}{\partial x}q = -\frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial u^2}\left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial x}\right) + \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial v^2}\left(\frac{\partial v}{\partial x}\right)$$

$$= -2x\frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x^2} + 2x\frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial v^2} \quad \text{...(7)}$$

$$\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial y^2} = \frac{\partial}{\partial y}q = -\frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial u^2}.\frac{\partial u}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial v^2}\left(\frac{\partial v}{\partial y}\right)$$

$$= +\frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial u^2} + \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial v^2} \quad \text{...(8)}$$

Now using equations (4), (6) and (8) we have

$$r = \frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x^2} = 2\left(\frac{\partial f}{\partial u} + \frac{\partial q}{\partial v}\right) + 4x^2\left(\frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial u^2} + \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial v^2}\right)$$

or
$$\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x^2} = \frac{1}{x}\frac{\partial z}{\partial x} + 4x^2\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial y^2} \quad \text{...(9)}$$

We can have various types of partial differential equations.

1. ***Linear partial differential equations with constant coefficients***

   We may have equations of the type

   $C_1 r + C_2 s + C_3 t + C_4 p + C_5 q + C_6 z = f(x, y)$

   where C_1, C_2, C_3, C_4, C_5 are constants. We have already given the methods of solving these types of equations in the earlier unit no. 20.

   The examples are $\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial y^2} = f(x, y)$

   $$\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x \partial y} = f(x, y)$$

   $$\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x^2} = \frac{1}{C^2} \frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial y^2}$$

   $$K \frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x^2} = \frac{\partial z}{\partial y} \text{ (here } K \text{ is a constant)}$$

2. ***Equations with Variable Coefficients***

   In this type of partial differential equations we will have a structure as follows

   $$Rr + Ss + Tt + f(x, y, z, p, q) = 0 \quad \text{...(1a)}$$

   where R, S, T are functions of x, y, z.

   As suggested in the section (21.1) we classify this equation into three classes

   (a) Hyperbolic if $s^2 - 4rt > 0$

   (b) Parabolic if $s^2 - 4rt = 0$ and

   (c) Elliptic if $s^2 - 4rt < 0$

   In dealing with equations of the above types first we reduce them to canonical form. The solution of Laplace equation, Wave equation and conduction of heat or diffusion we defer cases to next two units.

3. ***Equations reducible to homogeneous linear form***

   An equation in which the coefficient of a differential coefficient of any order is a constant multiple of the variables of the same degree, may be transformed into one having constant coefficients.

Example: Transform the equation

$$x^2 \frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x^2} - y^2 \frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial y^2} - y \frac{\partial z}{\partial y} + x \frac{\partial z}{\partial x} = 0 \quad \text{...(1)}$$

into a form with constant coefficients.

Solution: Put $u = \log x$, $v = \log y$

$$\frac{\partial z}{\partial x} = \frac{\partial z}{\partial u} \cdot \frac{1}{x}$$

or $$x \frac{\partial z}{\partial x} = \frac{\partial z}{\partial u}$$

So operator

$$x\frac{\partial}{\partial x} = \frac{\partial}{\partial u}$$

$$\therefore \qquad x\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left(x\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\right)z = x^2\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x^2} + x\frac{\partial z}{\partial x} = \frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial u^2}$$

Similarly

$$y^2\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial y^2} + y\frac{\partial z}{\partial y} = \frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial v^2}$$

So the equation reduces to

$$\frac{\partial^2 z_1}{\partial u^2} - \frac{\partial^2 z_1}{\partial v^2} = 0$$

where $z_1(u, v) = z(x, y)$.

Self Assessment

1. Reduce the equation

$$\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x^2} + 2\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x \partial y} + \frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial y^2}$$

to canonical form.

2. Reduce the equation

$$\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x^2} - x^2\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial y^2} = 0$$

to canonical form

3. Transpose the partial differential equation into one having constant coefficients

$$y\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial y^2} - \frac{\partial z}{\partial q} = 0$$

16.4 Summary

- In units 17 to 20 we studied and solved various types of partial differential equations both first order and higher orders as well as linear and non-linear equations.
- There are three main classes of partial differential equations i.e. hyperbolic type, parabolic type and elliptic type.
- The wave equation is of hyperbolic type, diffusion equation is of parabolic type and Laplace equation is of elliptic type.

16.5 Keywords

An *Elliptic* equation has $ac < b^2$, for example Laplace equation

$$\frac{\partial^2 \phi}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 \phi}{\partial y^2}.$$

Notes

A *Parabolic* equation has $ac = b^2$, for example the diffusion equation

$$K\frac{\partial^2\phi}{\partial x^2} - \frac{\partial\phi}{\partial y} = 0 \quad \text{...(here } y = t\text{)}$$

A *hyperbolic* equation has $ac < b^2$, for example the wave equation

$$\frac{\partial^2\phi}{\partial x^2} - \frac{1}{c^2}\frac{\partial^2\phi}{\partial y^2} = 0 \quad \text{...(here } y \text{ is time)}$$

16.6 Review Questions

1. Reduce the partial differential equation

$$\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x^2} - \frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial y^2} = 0$$

to canonical form

2. Transform the partial differential equation into the form having constant coefficients

$$x^2\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x^2} + 2xy\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x\partial y} + y^2\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial y^2} = 0$$

Answers: Self Assessment

1. $\dfrac{\partial^2\psi}{\partial\eta^2} = 0$ where $\psi(\varepsilon, \eta) = z(x, y)$

and $\varepsilon = x - y$, $\eta = x + y$.

2. $\dfrac{\partial^2\psi}{\partial\varepsilon\partial\eta} = \dfrac{1}{\Psi(\varepsilon+\eta)}\left(\dfrac{\partial\psi}{\partial\varepsilon} - \dfrac{\partial\psi}{\partial\eta}\right)$

3. $\dfrac{\partial^2\psi}{\partial\nu 2} - 2\dfrac{\partial\psi}{\partial\nu} = 0$

where $\psi(\upsilon, \nu) = z(x, y)$

16.7 Further Readings

Books

Piaggio H.T.H, Differential Equations

Yosida K., Lectures in Differential and Integral Equations

Unit 17: Solution of Laplace Differential Equation

Notes

CONTENTS

Objectives

Introduction

17.1 Solution of Laplace Differential Equation – Cylindrical Co-ordinates

17.2 Circular Harmonics

17.2.1 Solution of Laplace's Equation in Spherical Polar Co-ordinates

17.2.2 Steady Flow of Heat in Rectangular Plate

17.3 Summary

17.4 Keywords

17.5 Review Questions

17.6 Further Readings

Objectives

After studying this unit, you should be able to:

- Know that Laplace equation is a partial differential equation involving one dependent variable and three independent variables.
- See that it has a vast number of applications in gravitational potential process in electrostatic potential distributions, in the propagation of waves, in diffusion process or heat conductions.
- Note that three major co-ordinate systems namely the Cartesian co-ordinate system the spherical polar co-ordinate system or the cylindrical co-ordinate systems are used to express Laplacian operator.

Introduction

This Laplace equation is seen to be written in such a way that the dependence of dependent variable on three independent variables can be separated.

Both spherical polar co-ordinates and cylindrical co-ordinates are used to find the solution of Laplace equation.

17.1 Solution of Laplace Differential Equation – Cylindrical Co-ordinates

The most important partial differential equation of applied mathematics is the differential equation of Laplace i.e.

$$\nabla^2 V = 0 \qquad ...(1)$$

The Laplace operator is expressed in general curvilinear co-ordinates u_1, u_2, u_3 in the following manner,

$$\nabla^2 = \frac{1}{h_1 h_2 h_3}\left\{\frac{\partial}{\partial u_1}\left(\frac{h_2 h_3}{h_1}\frac{\partial}{\partial u_1}\right)+\frac{\partial}{\partial u_2}\left(\frac{h_3 h_1}{h_2}\frac{\partial}{\partial u_2}\right)+\frac{\partial}{\partial u_3}\left(\frac{h_1 h_2}{h_3}\frac{\partial}{\partial u_3}\right)\right\} \qquad ...(2)$$

Notes

If we use cylindrical co-ordinates (r, θ, z) given by

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x &= r\cos\theta \\ y &= r\sin\theta \\ z &= z \end{aligned}\right\} \quad \text{...(3)}$$

Then $\nabla^2 V$ in this co-ordinate system is given by

$$\nabla^2 V = \frac{1}{r}\frac{\partial}{\partial r}\left(r\frac{\partial V}{\partial r}\right) + \frac{1}{r^2}\frac{\partial^2 V}{\partial \theta^2} + \frac{\partial^2 V}{\partial z^2} \quad \text{...(4)}$$

So Laplace differential equation in cylindrical co-ordinates is given by

$$\frac{1}{r}\frac{\partial}{\partial r}\left(r\frac{\partial V}{\partial r}\right) + \frac{1}{r^2}\frac{\partial^2 V}{\partial \theta^2} + \frac{\partial^2 V}{\partial z^2} = 0$$

or, $$\frac{\partial^2 V}{\partial r^2} + \frac{1}{r}\frac{\partial V}{\partial r} + \frac{1}{r^2}\frac{\partial^2 V}{\partial \theta^2} + \frac{\partial^2 V}{\partial z^2} = 0 \quad \text{...(5)}$$

Here V is a function of r, θ and z. Let us suppose the solution of (5) as

$$V = R(r)\,\Theta\,(r)\,Z(r) \quad \text{...(6)}$$

Where $R(r)$ is a function of r, Θ is a function of θ and Z is a function of z only. This method is known as method of separation of variable. Substituting in (6) and dividing by $R\,\Theta\,Z$, we have

$$\frac{1}{R^2}\frac{d^2R}{dr^2} + \frac{1}{Rr}\frac{dR}{dr} + \frac{1}{r^2\Theta}\frac{d^2\Theta}{d\theta^2} = -\frac{1}{Z}\frac{d^2Z}{dz^2} \quad \text{...(7)}$$

Now the right hand side is only a function of z whereas L.H.S. is function of r and θ, so each side must be constant i.e.

$$\frac{1}{R^2}\frac{d^2R}{dr} + \frac{1}{Rr}\frac{dR}{dr} + \frac{1}{r^2\Theta}\frac{d^2\Theta}{d\theta^2} = -\frac{1}{z}\frac{d^2z}{dz^2} = -\lambda^2 \quad \text{...(8)}$$

Where λ^2 is a negative constant. This gives us

$$\frac{1}{R}\frac{d^2R}{dr^2} + \frac{1}{rR}\frac{dR}{dr} + \frac{1}{r^2\Theta}\frac{d^2\Theta}{d\theta^2} = -\lambda^2 \quad \text{...(9)}$$

and

$$\frac{d^2Z}{dz^2} - \lambda^2 Z = 0 \quad \text{...(10)}$$

The equation (9) can be rewritten as

$$\frac{r^2}{R}\frac{d^2R}{dr^2} + \frac{r}{R}\frac{dR}{dr} + \lambda^2 r^2 = -\frac{1}{\Theta}\frac{d^2\Theta}{d\theta^2} \quad \text{...(11)}$$

Keeping in view the same argument, we have from (11)

Notes

$$\frac{r^2}{R}\frac{d^2R}{dr^2}+\frac{r}{R}\frac{dR}{dr}+\lambda^2r^2 = -\frac{1}{\Theta}\frac{d^2\Theta}{d\theta^2}=\mu^2 \quad ...(12)$$

which gives

$$r^2\frac{d^2R}{dr^2}+r\frac{dR}{dr}+(\lambda^2r^2-\mu^2)R = 0 \quad ...(13)$$

and

$$\frac{d^2\Theta}{d\theta^2}+\mu^2\Theta = 0 \quad ...(14)$$

In equation (13) if we use the substitution $r=\frac{x}{\lambda}$, it reduces to

$$\frac{d^2R}{dx^2}+\frac{1}{x}\frac{dR}{dx}+\left(1-\frac{\mu^2}{x^2}\right)R = 0 \quad ...(15)$$

Equation (15) is Bessel's differential equation and so the solution is given by

$$R = A\, J_\mu(x)+B\, J_{-\mu}(x)$$

or

$$R = A\, J_\mu(\lambda r)+B\, J_{-\mu}(\lambda r) \quad ...(16)$$

where μ is not an integer and

$$R = A_1\, J_\mu(\lambda r)+B_1\, Yy_\mu(\lambda r) \quad ...(17)$$

when μ is an integer. The solutions of equations (10), (14) are given by

$$Z = A_2\, e^{\lambda.z}+B_2\, e^{-\lambda z} \quad ...(18)$$

and

$$\Theta = A_3\cos(\mu\,\theta)+B_3\sin(\mu\,\theta) \quad ...(19)$$

Hence the total solution is

$$V = R\,\Theta\,Z=\left[A\, J_\mu(\lambda r)+B\, J_{-\mu}(\lambda r)\right]\left[A_2\, e^{\lambda z}+B_2\, e^{-\lambda z}\right]\left[A_3\cos(\mu\theta)+B_3\sin(\mu\theta)\right] \quad ...(20)$$

where μ is a fraction and λ = 1, 2, 3... and

$$V = R\Theta Z=\left[A_1\, J_\mu(\lambda r)+B\, Y_\mu(\lambda r)\right]\left[A_3\cos(\mu\theta)+B_3\sin(\mu\theta)\right]\left[A_2e^{\lambda z}+B_2e^{-\lambda z}\right] \quad ...(21)$$

When μ is an integer and λ = 1, 2,...

The solutions (20) and (21) depend upon the parameters μ, λ. If we see a solution that is finite at $r = 0$ and also be single valued in θ then μ be *a* positive integer and taking all values from 0 to ∞. Thus for a fixed λ,

$$V = \sum_{\mu=0}^{\infty} A_1\, J_\mu(\lambda r)\left[A_3\cos\mu\theta+A_4\sin\mu\theta\right]\left[A_2e^{\lambda z}+A_2e^{-\lambda z}\right] \quad ...(22)$$

Thus the above solution is known as cylindrical Harmonics and will be useful for certain physical problems.

The solution (22) V for a single value of μ is called general cylindrical Harmonics.

17.2 Circular Harmonics

Laplace equation in cylindrical co-ordinates is given by

$$\frac{1}{r}\frac{\partial}{\partial r}\left(r\frac{\partial V}{\partial r}\right)+\frac{1}{r^2}\frac{\partial^2 V}{\partial \theta^2}+\frac{\partial^2 V}{\partial z^2} = 0 \qquad ...(1)$$

Assume that V is independent of co-ordinates *z*, we then have

$$\frac{1}{r}\left(r\frac{\partial V}{\partial r}\right)+\frac{1}{r^2}\frac{\partial^2 V}{\partial \theta^2} = 0 \qquad ...(2)$$

We now attempt to find a solution of this equation of the form.

$$V = F_1(\theta)F_2(r) \qquad ...(3)$$

Substituting this in (2), we have

$$\frac{F_1(\theta)}{r}\frac{d}{dr}\left(r\frac{dF_2}{dr}\right)+\frac{F_2(r)}{r^2}\frac{d^2F_1(\theta)}{d\theta^2} = 0 \qquad ...(4)$$

Multiplying by r^2 and dividing by $F_1 F_2$, we have

$$\frac{1}{F_1}\left(r^2\frac{d^2F_2}{dr^2}+r\frac{dF_2}{dr}\right) = -\frac{1}{F_1}\frac{d^2F_1}{d\theta^2}=n^2 \qquad ...(5)$$

Since L.H.S. is a function of *r* and the R.H.S. is a function of θ, so each one of them is a constant. We thus have the two solutions.

$$\frac{d^2F_1}{d\theta^2}+n^2F_1 = 0 \qquad ...(6)$$

and

$$r^2\frac{d^2F_1}{dr^2}+r\frac{dF_2}{dr}-n^2F_2 = 0 \qquad ...(7)$$

The solutions are separable. The solution of (6) is given by

$$F_1 = A\cos n\theta + B\sin n\theta \qquad ...(8)$$

Also it is easily verified that the solution of (7) is

$$F_2 = Cr^n + Dr^{-n},\ if\ n \neq 0 \qquad ...(9)$$

If $n = 0$, we have the solution

$$F_2 = C_0 \log r + D_0 \qquad ...(10)$$

Where *A*, *B*, *C* and *D* are arbitrary constants. The solution of Laplace equation in cylindrical co-ordinates when *V* is independent of the co-ordinate *z* are called circular harmonics. The circular harmonics are then

$$\left.\begin{aligned} V_0 &= (A_0\theta+B_0)(C_0\log r + D) \quad \text{degree zero} \\ V &= (A_n\cos n\theta + B_n\sin\theta)(C_n r^n + D_n r^{-n}) \quad \text{degree } n \end{aligned}\right\} \qquad ...(11)$$

Notes

In most applications of circular harmonics, V is usually single-valued function of θ. So if we change θ by 2 π, we reach the conclusion

$$V(r, \theta + 2\pi) = V(r, \theta) \qquad ...(12)$$

It is necessary that n take integer values. So a general single valued solution of Laplace equation is obtained by summing over n i.e.

$$V = a_0 \log r + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (a_n \cos n\theta + b_n \sin n\theta) r^n + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{r^n} (q_n \cos n\theta + p_n \sin n\theta) + c_0 \qquad ...(13)$$

where a_0, a_n, b_n, q_n and p_n and c_0 are constants.

Example: Find the steady state temperature in the region inside a cylinder, the two halves of the cylinder are 'thermally insulated from each other, and the upper half of it is kept at temperature ν_1, while the lower half is kept at temperature ν_2. It is assumed that cylinder is so long in the z-direction that the temperate is independent of z.

Solution: To solve this problem, let $\nu(r, \theta, z, t)$ be the temperature that satisfies heat equation

$$\frac{\partial \nu}{\partial t} = \nabla^2 \nu \qquad ...(1)$$

In the steady state ν is independent of t so that we have to solve Laplace equation

$$\nabla^2 \nu = 0 \qquad ...(2)$$

in the region inside the cylinder and satisfy the boundary conditions

$$\nu = \nu_1 \quad \text{at} \quad r = R \quad 0 < \theta < \pi \qquad ...(3)$$

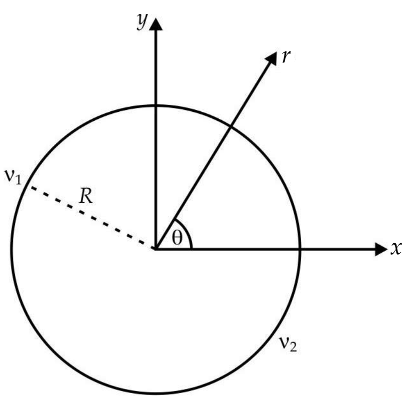
$$\nu = \nu_2 \quad \text{at} \quad r = R \quad \pi < \theta < 2\pi$$

we do this by taking the general solution independent of z as, we have

$$\nu = a_0 \log r + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} r^n (a_n \cos n\theta + B_n \sin n\theta) + c_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} r^{-n-1} (q_n \cos n\theta + f_n \sin n\theta) \qquad ...(4)$$

and use the boundary conditions (3). We first see that the temperature must be finite

Figure 17.1



Notes

at the origin r = 0. so a_0, q_x and f_x must be equal to zero. Therefore the solution (4) reduces to

$$\nu = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} r^n (a_x \cos(n\theta) + b_x \sin(n\theta)) + c_0 \qquad ...(5)$$

As a first step let us assume that the temperature on the circumference of the cylinder $r = a$ is specified as

$$\nu = F(\theta) \quad \text{at} \quad r = R$$

Then placing $r = R$ in (5) we have

$$F(\theta) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} r^n (a_x \cos(n\theta) + b_x \sin(n\theta)) + c_0 \qquad ...(6)$$

Now c_0, a_x and b_x are Fourier coefficients and so are given by the relations

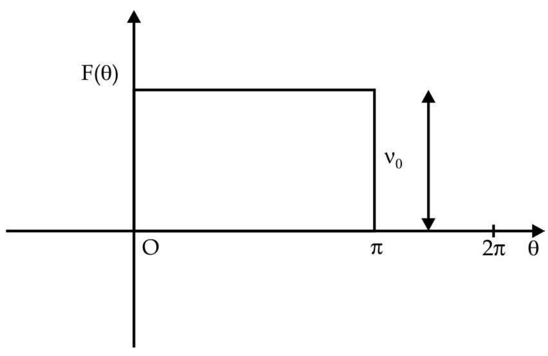
$$\left.\begin{aligned} a_x &= \frac{1}{R^n\pi}\int_0^{2\pi} F(\theta)\cos n\theta\, d\theta \\ b_x &= \frac{1}{R^n\pi}\int_0^{2\pi} F(\theta)\sin n\theta\, d\theta \\ \text{and} \quad c_0 &= \frac{1}{R\pi}\int_0^{2\pi} F(\theta)\, d\theta \end{aligned}\right\} \qquad ...(7)$$

An interesting special case arises when the temperature of the upper half of the cylinder is kept at ν_0 and the lower half is kept at zero degree. The function then is given geographically by figure 22.2. We have

$$a_x = \frac{\nu_0}{R^n\pi}\int_0^{\pi} \cos n\,\theta\, d\theta = 0$$

$$b_x = \frac{\nu_0}{R^n\pi}\int_0^{\pi} \sin n\,\theta\, d\theta = \frac{2\nu_0}{R^n\pi n}, n \; odd$$

Figure 17.2



and **Notes**

$$C_0 = \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_0^{\pi} \nu_0 \, d\theta = \frac{\nu_0}{2} \qquad ...(8)$$

substituting into (6), we obtain

$$\nu(r, \theta) = \frac{2C_0}{\pi}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\left(\frac{r}{R}\right)^n \frac{\sin n\theta}{n} + \frac{\nu_0}{2} .... \qquad \text{for } n \text{ odd} \qquad ...(9)$$

Self Assessment

1. Find the potential $u(r,\theta)$ in the exterior of a unit sphere satisfying the relation

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial r}\left(r^2 \frac{\partial u}{\partial r}\right) - \frac{1}{\sin\theta}\frac{\partial}{\partial\theta}\left(\sin\theta \frac{\partial}{\partial\theta}u\right) = 0$$

under the conditions

$$u(1,0) = \cos 2\theta$$

and $$\lim_{r\to\infty} u(r, \theta) = 0$$

17.2.1 Solution of Laplace's Equation in Spherical Polar Co-ordinates

The Laplace equation in spherical polar co-ordinates is given by

$$r^2\frac{\partial^2 V}{\partial r^2} + 2r\frac{\partial V}{\partial r} + \frac{1}{\sin\theta}\frac{\partial}{\partial\theta}\left(\sin\theta\frac{\partial V}{\partial\theta}\right) + \frac{1}{\sin^2\theta}\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial\phi^2} = 0 \qquad ...(1)$$

we apply here a separation of variable's method and write the solution of (1) in the form

$$V(r,\theta,\phi) = R(r)\,\Theta(\theta)\,\Phi(\phi) \qquad ...(2)$$

where R is a function of r only, Θ that of θ and ϕ that of ϕ only. Substituting in (1) we get

$$\left\{\frac{r^2}{R}\frac{d^2R}{dr^2} + \frac{2r}{R}\frac{dR}{dr} + \frac{1}{\Theta\sin^2\theta}\frac{d}{d\theta}\left(\sin\theta\frac{d\Theta}{d\theta}\right)\right\}\sin^2\theta = \frac{-1}{\Phi}\frac{d^2\Phi}{d\phi^2} \qquad ...(3)$$

Since both sides are functions of different independent variables hence each side should be equal to some constant. Let this constant be λ^2. Then equation (3) gives

$$\frac{d^2\Phi}{d\phi^2} + \lambda\Phi = 0 \qquad ...(4)$$

and $$\frac{r^2}{R}\frac{d^2R}{dr^2} + \frac{2r}{R}\frac{dR}{R} = \frac{1}{\Theta\sin q}\frac{d}{d\theta}\left(\sin\theta\frac{d\Theta}{d\theta}\right) + \frac{\lambda^2}{\sin^2\theta} \qquad ...(5)$$

Again in (5) both sides are functions of different variables and hence both will be equal to a constant say $n(n+1)$. This gives us from (5)

$$r^2 \frac{d^2R}{dr^2} + 2r\frac{dR}{dr} - n(n+1)R = 0 \qquad \text{...(6)}$$

and $$\frac{1}{\sin\theta}\frac{d}{d\theta}\left(\sin\theta\frac{d\Theta}{d\theta}\right) + \left[n(n+1) - \frac{\lambda^2}{\sin^2\theta}\right]\Theta = 0 \qquad \text{...(7)}$$

To solve (6), let

$$r = e^p,$$

so that $$\frac{dr}{dp} = e^p = r$$

Therefore $$\frac{dR}{dr} = \frac{dR}{dr}.\frac{dp}{dr} = \frac{1}{r}\frac{dR}{dp}$$

or $$r\frac{d}{dr} = \frac{d}{dp}$$

Let us denote the operator $\frac{d}{dp}$ by D, then

$$r\frac{d}{dr}\left(r\frac{dR}{dr}\right) = r^2\frac{d^2R}{dr^2} + r\frac{dR}{dr}$$

So $$r^2\frac{d^2R}{dr^2} = r\frac{d}{dr}\left(r\frac{dR}{dr}\right) - r\frac{dR}{dr}$$

$$= r\frac{d}{dr}\left\{\left(r\frac{d}{dr} - 1\right)R\right\}$$

$$= D(D-1)R$$

Using these values in (6), we get

$$[D(D-1) + 2D - n(n+1)]R = 0$$

or $$(D-n)(D+n+1)R = 0 \qquad \text{...(6a)}$$

The solution of (6a) is

$$R = A'e^{np} + B'e^{-(n+1)p}$$

or $$R = A'r^n + B'r^{-(n+1)} \qquad \text{...(5)}$$

To solve (7) put $\cos\theta = \mu$

so that $$\frac{d\Theta}{d\theta} = \frac{d\Theta}{d\mu}\frac{d\mu}{d\theta} = -\sin\theta\frac{d\Theta}{d\mu}$$

Substituting these values in (7) we have

$$\frac{1}{\sin\theta}\frac{d}{d\theta}\left(\sin\theta\frac{d\Theta}{d\theta}\right)+\left[n(n+1)-\frac{\lambda^2}{\sin^2\theta}\right]\Theta = 0$$

$$= \frac{1}{\sin\theta}\frac{d}{d\theta}\left\{-\sin^2\theta\frac{d\Theta}{d\mu}\right\}+\left[n(n+1)-\frac{\lambda^2}{1-\mu^2}\right]=0$$

$$= \frac{-2\sin\theta\cos\theta}{\sin\theta}\frac{d\Theta}{d\mu}-\sin\theta\frac{d}{d\theta}\left(\frac{d\Theta}{d\mu}\right)+\left\{n(n+1)-\frac{\lambda^2}{1-\mu^2}\right\}\Theta=0$$

$$= \sin^2\theta\frac{d^2\Theta}{d\mu^2}-2\mu\frac{d\Theta}{d\mu}+\left[n(n+1)-\frac{\lambda^2}{(1-\mu^2)}\right]\Theta=0$$

or

$$(1-\mu^2)\frac{d^2\Theta}{d\mu^2}-2\mu\frac{d\Theta}{d\mu}+\left[n(n+1)-\frac{\lambda^2}{(1-\mu^2)}\right]\Theta=0 \quad ...(9)$$

It is clear that Θ will be a function of μ i.e.

$$\Theta(z) \text{ or } \Theta(\cos\theta)$$

Hence the solution of Laplace equation is

$$V = (A'r^n+B'r^{-(n+1)})\Theta(\cos\theta)\left[A''e^{i\lambda\phi}+B''e^{-i\lambda\phi}\right] \quad ...(10)$$

where the solution of (μ) is

$$\Phi = A''e^{a\lambda\phi}+B''e^{-i\lambda\phi} \quad ...(11)$$

For $\lambda^2 = m^2$, integer m, the solution is satisfied by associated Legendre polynomial $P_n^m(x)$ as shown below:

Consider the Legendre equation

$$(1-x^2)\frac{d^2y}{dx^2}-2x\frac{dy}{dx}+n(n+1)y = 0 \quad ...(12)$$

Differentiating it m times and putting

$$v = \frac{d^my}{dx^m} \quad ...(13)$$

We have

$$\frac{d^m}{dx^m}\left[(1-x^2)\frac{d^2y}{dx^2}\right]-2\frac{d^m}{dx^m}\left[x\frac{dy}{dx}\right]+n(n+1)\frac{d^my}{dx^m} = 0$$

or

$$(1-x^2)\frac{d^{m+2}y}{dx^{m+2}}-2.mx\frac{d^{m+1}}{dx^m}y-m(m-1)x\frac{dmy}{dx^m}- 2x\frac{d^{m+1}y}{dx^{m+1}}-2\frac{d^my}{dx^m}(m)+n(n+1)\frac{d^my}{dx^m}=0$$

Notes

or from (13)

$$(1-x^2)\frac{d^2\nu}{dx^2}-2x(m+1)\frac{d\nu}{dx}+\left[n(n+1)-m(m+1)\right]\nu = 0 \quad ...(14)$$

Let us put

$$w = (1-x^2)^{m/2}\ \nu=(1-x^2)^{m/2}\frac{d^m}{dx^m}P_n(x) \quad ...(15)$$

then $\nu = (1-x^2)^{\frac{-m}{2}}w$

$$\frac{d\nu}{dx} = -\frac{m}{2}(-2x)(1-x^2)^{\frac{-m}{2}-1}w+(1-x^2)^{\frac{-m}{2}}\frac{dw}{dx}$$

$$\frac{d^2\nu}{dx^2} = m(1-x^2)^{\frac{-m}{2}-1}w+mx(-2x)\left(\frac{-m}{2}-1\right)(1-x^2)^{\frac{-m}{2}-2}w+2mx(1-x^2)^{\frac{-m}{2}-1}\frac{dw}{dx}+(1-x^2)^{\frac{-m}{2}}\frac{d^2w}{dx^2}$$

$$= (1-x^2)^{\frac{-m}{2}}\frac{d^2w}{dx^2}+2mx(1-x^2)^{\frac{-m}{2}-1}\frac{dw}{dx}+(1-x^2)^{\frac{-m}{2}-2}w\left\{m(1-x^2)+mx^2(m+2)\right\}$$

Substituting in equation (14) we have

$$(1-x^2)^{\frac{-m}{2}+1}\frac{d^2w}{dx^2}+2mx(1-x^2)^{\frac{-m}{2}}\frac{dw}{dx}+(1-x^2)^{\frac{-m}{2}-1}\left\{m+mx^2(m+1)\right\}w-$$

$$-2x(m+1)mx(1-x^2)^{\frac{-m}{2}-1}w-2x(m+1)(1-x^2)^{\frac{-m}{2}}\frac{dw}{dx}+$$

$$+\left[n(n+1)-m(m+1)\right](1-x^2)^{\frac{-m}{2}}w = 0$$

Dividing by $(1-x^2)^{\frac{-m}{2}}$ we have

$$(1-x^2)\frac{d^2w}{dx^2}-2x\frac{dw}{dx}+w\left\{n(n+1)-m(m+1)-\frac{2x^2m(m+1)}{(1-x^2)}+\frac{m+mx^2(m+1)}{(1-x^2)}\right\} = 0$$

$$(1-x^2)\frac{d^2w}{dx^2}-2x\frac{dw}{dx}+\left[n(n+1)-\frac{m^2}{(1-x^2)}\right]w = 0 \quad ...(16)$$

The equation (16) is same as equation (9) where

$\Theta = w$ and $\mu = x$

Thus the solution of equation (9) is given by

$$\Theta = w=(1-\mu^2)^{\frac{m}{2}}\nu=(1-\mu^2)^{\frac{m}{2}}\frac{d^m}{dx^m}P_n(\mu)\equiv P_n^m(\mu) \quad ...(17)$$

Where $P_n^m(\mu)$ is known as associated Legendre polynomial. Hence the solution of Laplace differential equation is given by (for $\lambda = m$)

$$V = \left[A'r^n+B'r^{-n-1}\right]\left[A''\,e^{im\phi}+B''\,e^{-im\phi}\right]P_n^m(\mu) \quad ...(18)$$

Notes

For solution which exist for $r = 0$, then $B' = 0$.

The complete solution is given by summing over m or

$$V = \sum_{\substack{m=0,1,2,\ldots \\ n=0,1,2,\ldots}}^{\substack{n=\infty \\ m=\lambda}} A' r^n \left[A'' e^{im\phi} + B''\, e^{-im\phi}\right] P_n^m(\mu) \quad \ldots(19)$$

Since $P_n^m(x)$ involves mth derivative of $P_n(x)$ which is polynomial of degree n, so for $m > n$

$$P_n^m(m) = 0 \quad \ldots(20)$$

for $m > n$. Defining S, the surface Harmonic by

$$S_n = \left[A'' e^{im\phi} + B''\, e^{-im\phi}\right] P_n^m(\mu) \quad \ldots(21)$$

If S_n is independent of ϕ, then

$$\frac{dS_n}{d\phi} = 0$$

So S_n has only $m = 0$ value hence

$S_n = P_n(\mu)$. In the case V becomes

$$V = \sum_n (A' r^n + B' r^{-n-1}) P_n(\mu) \qquad \text{For } m = \cos\theta \quad \ldots(22)$$

Example 1: Gravitational Potential Due to Uniform Circular Ring

Let us consider a particle of mass m situated at a point (x_1, y_1, z_1) of a reference Cartesian coordinate system, then the gravitational potential θ due to this mass at the point with coordinate (x, y, z) is given by

$$V = \frac{\text{mass}}{\text{distance}} = \frac{m}{\sqrt{\{(x-x_1)^2 + (y-y_1)^2 + (z-z_1)^2\}}} \quad \ldots(i)$$

We know that potential V, satisfies Laplace equation

$$\nabla^2 V = 0 \quad \ldots(ii)$$

in matter free space.

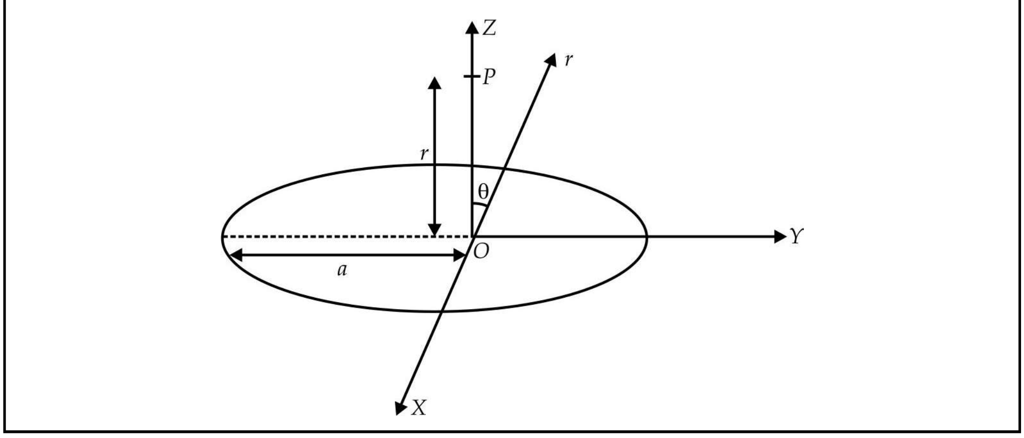
Now, we have to calculate the gravitational potential at any point due to a uniform circular ring of small cross-section, lying in the $x - y$ plane and with its centre situated at the point O, (Figure 22.3).

Obviously, the gravitational potential is symmetric about the z-axis and so it should be independent of the angle θ. The potential V, therefore may be written with following form:

$$V = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left(A_n r^n + \frac{B_n}{r^{n+1}}\right) P_n(\cos\theta) \quad \ldots(iii)$$

Notes

Figure 17.3



where A_n and B_n are constant coefficients and are to be evaluated. To evaluate these coefficients, we know that the gravitational potential is symmetric about the z-axis and therefore any point P on the same distance $\sqrt{(a^2+r^2)}$ from all the points of the ring, where a is the radius of the ring and distance $OP = r$.

Let M denote the total mass of the ring, then the gravitational potential at P due to the ring will be

$$V = \frac{\text{mass}}{\text{distance}} = \frac{M}{\sqrt{(a^2+r^2)}} \qquad \text{...(iv)}$$

but $$\frac{M}{\sqrt{(a^2+r^2)}} = M(a^2+r^2)^{-1/2} = \frac{M}{a}\left(1+\frac{r^2}{a^2}\right)^{-1/2}$$

or $$V = \frac{M}{a}\left[1-\frac{r^2}{2a^2}+\frac{1}{2}.\frac{3}{4}.\frac{r^4}{a^4}...\right] \qquad \text{...(v)}$$

by Binomial theorem for $r < a$

However in case $r > a$, we can write

$$\frac{M}{\sqrt{(a^2+r^2)}} = M(a^2+r^2)^{-1/2} = \frac{M}{r}\left(1+\frac{a^2}{r^2}\right)^{-1/2}$$

$$= \frac{M}{r}\left(1-\frac{1}{2}\frac{a^2}{r^2}+\frac{1}{2}.\frac{3}{4}\frac{a^4}{r^4}...\right)$$

or $$V = \frac{M}{a}\left\{\frac{a}{r}-\frac{1}{2}\frac{a^3}{r^3}+\frac{1}{2}.\frac{3}{4}\frac{a^5}{r^5}...\right\} \qquad \text{...(vi)}$$

Now, for point situated on the z-axis, $\theta = 0$ and the general solution as contained in equation (iii) must reduce either to equation (v) or equation (vi). Now the Legendre polynomials $P_n(\cos\theta)$ for a point on the z-axis ($\cos 0°$) become

$$P_n(\cos 0°) = P_n(1) = 1$$

Notes

Therefore for all points situated on the z-axis, the general form of the potential as contained in (iii), reduces to

$$V = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty}\left[A_n r^n + \frac{B_n}{r^{n+1}}\right] \quad ...(vii)$$

Comparing this equation with equation (vi) we see that for $r > a$, the coefficients $A_n = 0$ and B_n are the coefficients of equation (vi).

Again comparing equation (vii) with (v), we see that for $r < a$, the coefficients $B_n = 0$ and A_n are the coefficients of equation (v).

Hence the solution for the case $r > a$ may be written as

$$V = \frac{M}{a}\left[\frac{a}{r}P_0(\cos\theta) - \frac{1}{2}\frac{a^3}{r^3}P_2(\cos\theta) + \frac{1}{2}.\frac{3}{4}.\frac{a^5}{r^5}P_4(\cos\theta)...\right] \quad ...(viii)$$

and that for $r < a$ is

$$V = \frac{M}{a}\left[P_0(\cos\theta) - \frac{1}{2}\frac{r^2}{a^2}P_2(\cos\theta) + \frac{1}{2}.\frac{3}{4}.P_4(\cos\theta)...\right] \quad ...(ix)$$

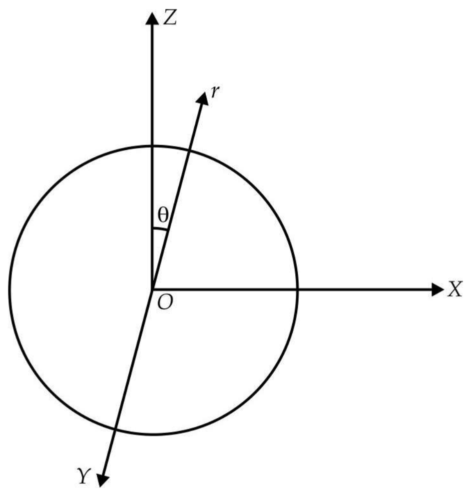
Example 2: Electrical Potential about a Spherical Surface

Let us consider a spherical surface which is being kept at a fixed distribution of the electrical potential of the form

$$V = f(\theta) \quad ...(i)$$

On the surface of the sphere.

Figure 17.4



Let us assume that the space both *inside* and *outside* the surface is free of electrical charge and we will determine the potential at points within and outside the spherical surface under consideration.

Obviously, the potential V is quite symmetric around the z-axis and as such it shall be independent of angle Φ.

Notes

Therefore we have

$$\frac{\partial^2 V}{\partial \phi^2} = 0 \quad \text{...(ii)}$$

So Laplace equation expressed in spherical polar co-ordinates reduces to

$$\frac{\partial^2 V}{\partial r^2} + \frac{2}{r}\frac{\partial V}{\partial r} + \frac{1}{r^2}\frac{\partial^2 V}{\partial \theta^2} + \left(\frac{1}{r^2 \tan\theta}\right)\frac{\partial V}{\partial r} = 0 \quad \text{...(iii)}$$

The general solution of this equation can be written in the form

$$V = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty}\left(A_n r^n + \frac{B_n}{r^{n+1}}\right)P_n(\cos\theta) \quad \text{...(iv)}$$

The potential satisfies the boundary conditions

$$V = f(\theta) \text{ when } r = 0 \text{ and } \underset{r\to\infty}{Lt}\ V = 0 \quad \text{...(v)}$$

Potential in the Region outside the spherical surface

According to the second boundary condition of equation (v), the potential may not be zero at $r = \infty$. Therefore in the region outside the spherical surface no positive powers of r are admissible in the solution of Laplace's equation. Thus in the general solution we should have $A_n = 0$ and so

$$V = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty}\frac{B_n}{r^{n+1}}P_n(\cos\theta) \qquad \text{for } r > a \quad \text{...(vi)}$$

The coefficients B_n are to be determined. This can be done by making use of the first boundary of equation (v). Hence from (vi) we get

$$V = F(\theta) = f(\cos\theta) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty}\frac{B_n}{a^{n+1}}P_n(\cos\theta) \quad \text{...(vii)}$$

Let cos θ = u then

$$V = f(u) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty}\frac{B_n}{a^{n+1}}P_n(u) \quad \text{...(viii)}$$

To obtain the value of the general coefficient B_n, we multiply both sides of equation (viii) with $P_n(u)$ and integrate with respect to u in between the limit −1 to +1 we obtain

$$\int_{-1}^{+1} f(u)P_n(u)du = \int_{-1}^{+1}\frac{B_n}{a^{n+1}}[P_n(u)^2]du$$

All other integrals vanish because of the orthogonal property of $P_n(u)$.

$$\therefore \quad \int_{-1}^{+1} f(u)P_n(u)du = \frac{1}{a^{n+1}}\frac{2B_n}{(2n+1)}$$

or

$$B_n = \frac{(2n+1)}{2}.a^{n+1}\int_0^{\pi} f(\theta)\, P_n(\cos\theta)\sin\theta\, d\theta \quad \text{...(ix)}$$

This gives us the value of the coefficient B_n. Hence the potential outside the spherical surface is given by equation (viii) with B_n given by equation (ix).

Potential in Region within the Spherical Surface

Notes

The potential within the spherical surface cannot be infinite and therefore negative powers of r are inadmissible in the general solution as contained in equation (iv). This means that potential inside spherical surface will be

$$V = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} A_n r^n \, P_n(\cos\theta) \qquad \text{for } r < a \qquad \text{...(x)}$$

Again the coefficients A_n are determined by the boundary condition at the surface, viz., $V = f(\theta)$ at $r = a$

$$\therefore \qquad V = F(\theta) = f(\cos\theta)$$

$$= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} A_n a^n \, P_n(\cos\theta) \qquad \text{...(xi)}$$

Let $u = \cos\theta$, then

$$V = F(u) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} A_n a^n P_n(u) \qquad \text{...(xii)}$$

multiplying both sides by $P_n(u)$ and integrating within the limits −1 to +1, we get

$$\int_{-1}^{+1} F(u)\, P_n(u)\, du = \int_{-1}^{1} A_n \, a^n [P_n(u)]^2 \, du$$

All other coefficients vanish on account of the orthogonal property of $P_n(u)$

$$\therefore \qquad \int_{-1}^{+1} F(u) P_n(u)\, du = A_n a^n \frac{2}{(2n+1)}$$

or

$$A_n = \frac{(2n+1)}{2a^n} \int_{-1}^{+1} F(u)\, P_n(u)\, du$$

or

$$A_n = \frac{(2n+1)}{2a^n} \int_{-1}^{+1} F(\theta)\, P_n(\cos\theta) \sin\theta \, d\theta \qquad \text{...(xiii)}$$

So the potential within the spherical surface is given by equation (xi) or (xii) with values of A_n given by the equation (xiii).

Self Assessment

2. Solve

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial r}\left(r^2 \frac{\partial u}{\partial r}\right) = 0$$

subject to the boundary conditions

Notes

$$u(r) = u_{10} \quad at \quad r = a$$

and $$u(r) = u_{20} \quad at \quad r = b$$

17.2.2 Steady Flow of Heat in Rectangular Plate

We now consider the steady state temperature distribution in a rectangular metallic sheet. In this case temperature is every where independent of time, and hence the equation governing the temperature distribution is given by

$$\frac{\partial^2 V}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 V}{\partial y^2} = 0 \qquad ...(i)$$

This equation is called Laplace's equation of two Dimensions. We shall now solve this equation under various boundary conditions.

Case I: Let there is a thin plate bounded by the lines $x = 0$, $x = a$, $y = 0$ and $y = \infty$, the sides $x = 0$ and $x = a$ being kept at temperature zero. The lower edge y = 0 is kept at $f(x)$ and the edge $y = \infty$ at temperature zero.

In this case the boundary conditions are:

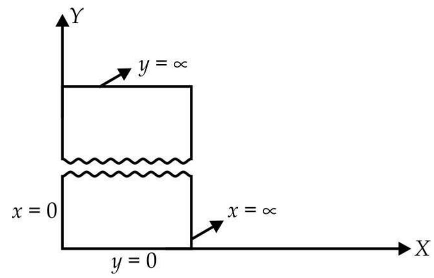
$$V(0, y) = 0 \qquad ...(ii)$$

$$V(a, y) = 0 \qquad ...(iii)$$

$$V(x, 0) = f(x) \qquad ...(iv)$$

$$V(x, \infty) = 0 \qquad ...(v)$$

Figure 17.5



Let the solution of (i) be in the following form

$$V(x, y) = X(x)Y(y) = X\,Y \text{ (say)} \qquad ...(vi)$$

where X and Y are the functions of x and y respectively. Substituting this solution in (i). We have

$$\frac{1}{X}\frac{\partial^2 X}{dx^2} = \frac{1}{Y}\frac{d^2 Y}{dy^2}$$

Since L.H.S. is the function of x only and R.H.S. is the function of y only, both sides will be equal only when both reduce to a constant,

$$\frac{1}{X}\frac{d^2X}{dx^2} = \frac{1}{Y}\frac{d^2Y}{dY^2} = -\lambda^2.$$

Here we have taken the negative constant because it suits the boundary conditions.

Therefore the corresponding differential equations are

$$\frac{d^2X}{dx^2}+\lambda^2 X = 0 \text{ and } \frac{d^2X}{dx^2}+\lambda^2 Y = 0$$

whose general solutions are

$$X = A\cos\lambda x + B\sin\lambda x$$

and $$Y = Ce^{\lambda y} + De^{-\lambda y}$$

Hence

$$V(x,y) = XY = (A\cos\lambda x + B\sin\lambda x)(Ce^{\lambda y} + De^{-\lambda y}) \quad \text{...(vii)}$$

using boundary condition (v), we get C = 0

Otherwise $V \to \infty$ as $y \to \infty$ and hence

$$V(x,y) = (A\cos\lambda x + B\sin\lambda x)e^{-\lambda y}. \quad \text{(we have put } D = 1)$$

and using boundary condition (iii), we have

$$\sin\lambda a = 0$$

or $$\lambda = \frac{n\pi}{a}(n = 1, 2, 3,...)$$

Thus for each value of n, we have

$$V_n(x,y) = B_n \sin\frac{n\pi}{a}xe^{-n\pi y/a} \qquad (n = 1,2,3,....) \quad \text{...(viii)}$$

and therefore for different values of n, the solution may be taken as

$$V(x,y) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} V_n(x,y)$$

or $$V(x,y) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} B_n \sin\frac{n\pi}{a}xe^{-n\pi y/a} \quad \text{...(ix)}$$

Using boundary condition (iv), we have

$$V(x,0) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} B_n \sin\frac{n\pi}{a}x = f(x)$$

which gives

$$B_n = \frac{2}{a}\int_0^a f(x)\sin\frac{n\pi}{a}x\,dx \quad \text{...(x)}$$

Notes

Hence (ix) with the coefficient (x) is the solution of Laplace's equation (i), which satisfy all the given boundary conditions.

Case II: Let there be a thin rectangular metallic plate bounded by the lines $x=0$, $x=a$, $y=0$ and $y=b$, the edges $x=0, x=a, y=0$ are kept at temperature zero while the edge $y=b$ is kept at temperature $f(x)$.

Here the boundary conditions are given by

$$V(0,y) = 0 \quad \text{...(xi)}$$

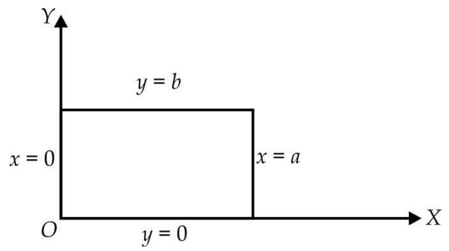
$$V(a,y) = 0 \quad \text{...(xii)}$$

$$V(x,0) = 0 \quad \text{...(xiii)}$$

$$V(x,b) = f(x) \quad \text{...(xiv)}$$

Proceeding as in Case I and using (xi) and (xii), we get

Figure 17.6



$$A = 0 \text{ and } \lambda = \frac{n\pi}{a} \qquad (n = 1, 2, 3, ...)$$

Therefore for each value of n, we have

$$V_n(x,y) = C_n e^{n\pi y/a} + D_n e^{-n\pi y/a} \sin\frac{n\pi}{a}x... \quad (n = 1, 2, 3,...)$$

Hence for different values of n, the solution of (i) is

$$V(x,y) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\left(C_n e^{n\pi y/a} + D_n e^{-n\pi y/a}\right)\sin\frac{n\pi}{a}x$$

In this result using (xiii), we get

$$D_n = -C_n.$$

Therefore

$$V(x,y) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} C_n\left(e^{n\pi y/a} - e^{-n\pi y/a}\right)\sin\frac{n\pi}{a}x$$

or

$$V(x,y) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} C_n' \sin h\frac{n\,\pi\,y}{a}\sin\frac{n\,\pi\,x}{a} \text{ where } C_n' = 2\,C_n \quad \text{...(xv)}$$

Now using (xiv), we get

$$V(x,b) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} C_n' \sin h \frac{n\pi b}{a} \sin \frac{n\pi}{a} x = f(x)$$

or $$C_n' \sin \text{h} \frac{n\pi b}{a} = \frac{2}{a} \int_b^a f(x) \sin \frac{n\pi x}{a} dx$$

or $$C_n' = \frac{2}{a \sin h \dfrac{n\pi b}{a}} \int_0^a f(x) \sin \frac{n\pi x}{a} dx \qquad \text{...(xvi)}$$

Hence (xv) with coefficient (xvi) in the solution of (i) satisfying the given boundary conditions.

Case III: Let there be a rectangular plate of length a and width b, the sides of which are kept at temperature zero, the lower end is kept at temperature $f(x)$ and the upper edge is kept insulated.

Boundary conditions are:

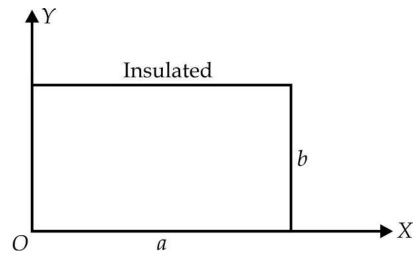
$$V(0,y) = 0 \qquad \text{...(xvii)}$$

$$V(a,y) = 0 \qquad \text{...(xviii)}$$

$$V(x,0) = f(x) \qquad \text{...(xix)}$$

$$\left(\frac{\partial V}{\partial y}\right)_{Y=b} = 0 \qquad \text{...(xx)}$$

Figure 17.7



Proceeding as in Case I, assuming the solution of equation (i) as $V(x,y) = X(x)Y(y)$ and substituting this in equation (i) itself. We get two differential equations.

$$\frac{\partial^2 X}{\partial x^2} + \lambda^2 X = 0 \text{ and } \frac{\partial^2 Y}{\partial y^2} - \lambda^2 Y = 0$$

whose general solutions are

$$X = A \cos \lambda x + B \sin \lambda x$$

and $$Y = C \cos h\, \lambda y + D \sin h\, \lambda y$$

Notes

respectively. Therefore

$$V(x,y) = (A\cos\lambda x + B\sin\lambda x)(C\cos h\,\lambda y + D\sin h\,\lambda y) \quad \text{...(xxi)}$$

Using boundary conditions (xvii) and (xviii) in (xxi), we get

$$A = 0 \text{ and } \lambda = \frac{n\pi}{a} \qquad (n = 1, 2, 3, ...)$$

Hence for each value of n, we have

$$V(x,y) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\left(C_n \cos h\frac{n\,\pi\,y}{a} + D_n \sin h\frac{n\,\pi\,y}{a}\right)\sin\frac{n\,\pi}{a}x \quad \text{...(xxii)}$$

Using (xix) in (xxii) we have

$$V(x,0) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} C_n \sin\frac{n\,\pi}{a}x = f(x)$$

Therefore

$$C_n = \frac{2}{a}\int_0^a f(x)\sin\frac{n\,\pi}{a}x\,dx \quad \text{...(xxiii)}$$

Again using (xx) in (xxii), we have

$$\left(\frac{\partial V}{\partial y}\right)_{y=b} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\left(C_m \sin h\frac{n\,\pi\,b}{a} + D_n \cos h\frac{n\pi b}{a}\right)\sin\frac{n\,\pi}{a} = 0$$

This will be true for all values of x, if

$$C_n \sin h\frac{n\pi b}{a} + D_n \cos h\frac{n\pi}{a}b = 0$$

or

$$D_n = -C_n \tan h\frac{n\pi b}{a}s \quad \text{...(xxiv)}$$

Therefore (xxii) with coefficients given by (xxiii) and (xxiv) is the solution of the equation (i) satisfying all the given boundary conditions.

Self Assessment

3. Solve

$$\frac{\partial^2 U}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 U}{\partial y^2} = 0$$

subject to the conditions

$U(0,y) = 0$

$U(l,y) = 0$

and $U(x,a) = \sin\frac{n\,\pi\,x}{l}$ and $U(x,0) = 0$ for $n = 1, 2, 3, ...$

17.3 Summary

- Laplacian operator is expressed in Cartesian spherical polar co-ordinates and cylindrical co-ordinates.
- The solution of Laplace equation in these co-ordinate systems is solved.
- Laplace differential equations finds its applications in potential problems, in wave propagation and diffusion and heat conduction processes.

17.4 Keywords

Method of Separation of Variables helps in finding the solution of Laplace differential equation in all the three co-ordinate systems.

Partial Differential Equation involve one dependent variable which is a function of more than one independent variable.

17.5 Review Questions

1. Solve Laplace's equation in cylindrical co-ordinates and independent of Z.

2. Solve

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial r}\left(r^2 \frac{\partial u}{\partial r}\right) = 0$$

subject to the boundary conditions

$$u(r) = 0 \text{ at } r = a$$

and $\quad r(u) = u_0$ at $r = 2a$

3. Solve for $U(x, y)$ distribution

$$\frac{\partial^2 U}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 U}{\partial y^2} = 0$$

subject to the conditions

$$U(0, y) = U(l, y) = 0, U(x, 0) = x^2$$

and $\quad \left(\frac{\partial U}{\partial y}\right)_{y=b} = 0$

4. Find the potential $U(r, \theta)$ inside the spherical surface of radius R when its spherical surface is kept at fixed distribution

$$U(R, \theta) = U_0 \cos\theta$$

Answers: Self Assessment

1. $U(r, \theta) = \dfrac{2(3\cos^2\theta - 1) - r^2}{3r^3}$

2. $U(r) = \dfrac{(a\,u_{10} - b\,u_{20})}{(a-b)} - \dfrac{ab(u_{10} - u_{20})}{(a-b)r}$

3. $U(r, y) = \sin h\dfrac{n\,\pi y}{l}\sin\dfrac{n\,\pi\,x}{l}\Bigg/\sin h\left(\dfrac{n\,\pi\,a}{l}\right)$

17.6 Further Readings

Books

K. Yosida, Lectures in Differential and Integral Equations

L.N. Sneddon, Elements of Partial Differential Equations

Louis A. Pipes and L.R. Harnvill, Applied Mathematics for Engineers and Physicists

Unit 18: Wave and Diffusion Equations by Separation of Variable

Notes

CONTENTS

Objectives

Introduction

18.1 On Solution of Wave Equation

18.1.1 Solution of One Dimensional Wave Equation

18.1.2 Two Dimensional Wave Equation

18.1.3 The Vibrations of a Circular Membrane

18.2 Boundary Value Problems (Heat Conduction or Diffusion)

18.2.1 Variable Heat Flow in One Dimension

18.2.2 Heat Flow in Two Dimensional Rectangular System

18.2.3 Temperature Inside a Circular Plate

18.3 Summary

18.4 Keywords

18.5 Review Questions

18.6 Further Readings

Objectives

After studying this unit, you should be able to:

- Note that it finds its applications in almost all branches of applied sciences.
- Understand how heat flows in solids
- See how the electrical current and potentials are distributed in certain medias.
- Know how the diffusion problem is tackled by means of diffusion equation.

Introduction

It is seen that Laplace equation plays an important role in the solution of wave equation as well as conduction of heat.

The problems occurring in this unit are based on boundary values of the waves as well as the temperature distribution of the substance.

Depending upon the symmetry of the problem the Laplace equation is solved in Cartesian or spherical polar co-ordinates or cylindrical co-ordinates.

18.1 On Solution of Wave Equation

When a stone is dropped into a pond, the surface of the water is disturbed and waves of displacement travel radially outward, when a tuning fork or a bill is struck, sound waves are propagated from the source of the sound. The electrical oscillations of a radio antenna generate electromagnetic waves that are propagated through space. All these entities are governed by a certain differential equation, called a wave equation. This equation has the form

$$\nabla^2 u = \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y^2} + \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial z^2} = \frac{1}{c^2}\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial t^2} \qquad ...(1)$$

Where c is a constant having dimension of velocity, t is the time, x, y, z are the co-ordinates of a certain reference frame and u is the entity under consideration, whether it be a mechanical displacement of components of electromagnetic wave or currents or potentials of an electrical transmission line.

In finding the solution of equation (1) we some times also employ cylindrical co-ordinate system or spherical polar co-ordinate system.

In cylindrical co-ordinate system, wave equation is given by

$$\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial r^2} + \frac{2}{r}\frac{\partial u}{\partial r} + \frac{1}{r^2 \sin^2\theta}\frac{\partial}{\partial\theta}\left(\sin\theta\frac{\partial u}{\partial\theta}\right) + \frac{1}{r^2\sin^2\theta}\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial\theta^2} = \frac{1}{c^2}\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial t^2} \qquad ...(A)$$

where as in cylindrical co-ordinate system r, θ, z the wave equation becomes

$$\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial r^2} + \frac{1}{r}\frac{\partial u}{\partial r} + \frac{1}{r^2}\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial\theta^2} + \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial z^2} = \frac{1}{c^2}\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial t^2} \qquad ...(B)$$

Example: Solution of wave equation symmetric in all directions about the origin, i.e. independent of θ and ϕ.

In this case u is independent of θ and ϕ. So from equation (A) we have

$$\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial r^2} + \frac{2}{r}\frac{\partial u}{\partial r} = \frac{1}{c^2}\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial t^2} \qquad ...(C)$$

Putting

$$v = ru$$

$$\frac{\partial v}{\partial r} = r\frac{\partial u}{\partial r} + u$$

$$\frac{\partial v}{\partial r} = r\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial t^2} + 2\frac{\partial u}{\partial r}$$

so from (C)

$$\frac{\partial^2 v}{\partial r^2} = \frac{1}{c^2}\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial t^2} \qquad ...(D)$$

Putting

$$R = r - ct$$

$$T = r + ct$$

gives

$$\frac{\partial v}{\partial r} = \frac{\partial v}{\partial R}\frac{\partial R}{\partial r} + \frac{\partial v}{\partial T}\frac{\partial T}{\partial r}$$

Notes

$$= \frac{\partial v}{\partial R} + \frac{\partial v}{\partial T}$$

$$\frac{\partial^2 v}{\partial r^2} = \frac{\partial^2 v}{\partial R^2}\frac{\partial R}{\partial r} + 2\frac{\partial^2 v}{\partial R \partial T}.\frac{\partial T}{\partial r} + \frac{\partial^2 v}{\partial T^2}.\frac{\partial T}{\partial r}$$

$$= \frac{\partial^2 v}{\partial R^2} + 2\frac{\partial^2 v}{\partial R \partial T} + \frac{\partial^2 v}{\partial T^2}$$

$$\frac{\partial v}{\partial r} = \frac{\partial v}{\partial R}\frac{\partial R}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial v}{\partial T}.\frac{\partial T}{\partial t}$$

$$= \frac{\partial r}{\partial R}(-e) + e\frac{\partial v}{\partial T}$$

$$\frac{\partial^2 v}{\partial r^2} = (-e)\frac{\partial^2 v}{\partial R^2}\frac{\partial R}{\partial t} - 2e^2\frac{\partial^2 v}{\partial R \partial T} + e^2\frac{\partial^2 v}{\partial T^2}$$

$$= e^2\left(\frac{\partial^2 v}{\partial R^2} - 2\frac{\partial^2 v}{\partial R \partial T} + \frac{\partial^2 v}{\partial T^2}\right)$$

Substituting in (D) we have

$$\frac{\partial^2 v}{\partial R^2} + 2\frac{\partial^2 v}{\partial R \partial T} + \frac{\partial^2 v}{\partial T^2} = \frac{c^2}{a^2}\left(\frac{\partial^2 v}{\partial R^2} - 2\frac{\partial^2 v}{\partial R \partial T} + \frac{\partial^2 v}{\partial T^2}\right)$$

or $$\frac{\partial^2 v}{\partial R \partial T} = 0 \qquad \text{...(E)}$$

Integrating with respect to T we have

$$\frac{\partial v}{\partial R} = F(R) \qquad \text{...(F)}$$

where F(R) is a constant as far as T is concerned.

Integrating (F) we have

$$v = \int F(R)dR + G(T)$$

$$= H(R) + G(T)$$

or $$v = H(r - ct) + G(r + ct)$$

This is known as D, Alemberts, solution of the wave equation.

The Transverse Vibrations of a Stretched String

Consider a perfectly flexible string that is stretched between two points having a constant tension *T* which is large enough so that the gravity may be neglected. Let the string be uniform and have a mass per unit length equal to *m*.

Let us take the initial i.e. undisturbed position of the string to be the axis of x and suppose that the motion is confined to the xy plane. Consider the motion of an element PQ of length as shown in the Figure 23.1.

The net force in the y direction, Fy, is given by

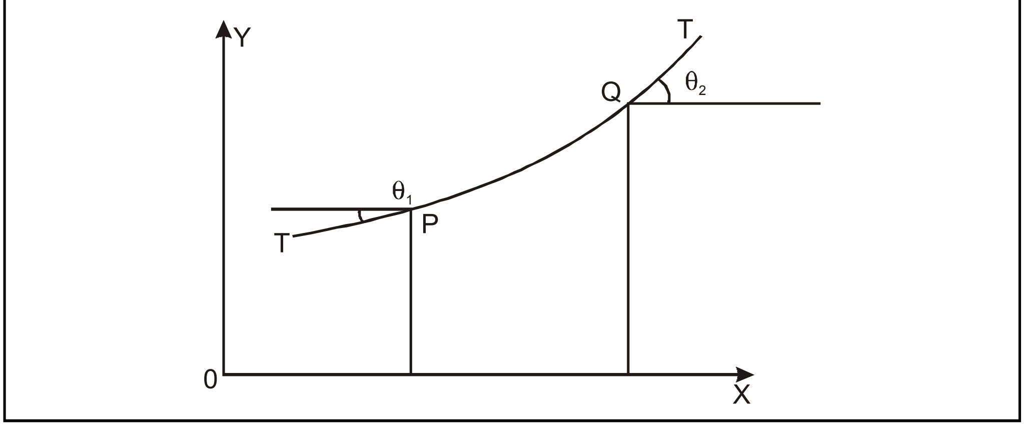
$$Fy = T\sin\theta_2 - T\sin\theta_1 \quad \text{...(i)}$$

Now, for small oscillations, we may write

$$\sin\theta_2 = \tan\theta_2 = \left(\frac{\partial y}{\partial x}\right)_{x+dx} \quad \text{...(ii)}$$

$$\sin\theta_1 = \tan\theta_1 = \left(\frac{\partial y}{\partial x}\right)_{x} \quad \text{...(iii)}$$

Figure 18.1



Therefore, we have

$$F_y = \left(T\frac{\partial y}{\partial x}\right)_{x+dx} - \left(T\frac{\partial y}{\partial x}\right)_{x} \quad \text{...(iv)}$$

Using Taylor's expansion and neglecting terms of order dx^2 and higher, we have

$$F_y = \left(T\frac{\partial y}{\partial x}\right)_{x} + \frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left(T\frac{\partial y}{\partial x}\right)_{x} dx - \left(T\frac{\partial y}{\partial x}\right)_{x}$$

or $$F_y = \frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left(T\frac{\partial y}{\partial x}\right)_{x} dx \quad \text{...(v)}$$

By Newton's Law of motion, we have

$$F_y = \frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left(T\frac{\partial y}{\partial x}\right)dx = mdx\left(\frac{\partial^2 y}{\partial x^2}\right) \quad \text{...(vi)}$$

where mdx represents the mass of the section of string under consideration and where we have written dx for ds since the placement is small $\frac{\partial^2 y}{\partial x^2}$ is the acceleration of the section of string in the y direction, we thus have

Notes

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left(T\frac{\partial y}{\partial x}\right) = m\frac{\partial^2 y}{\partial t^2} \qquad ...(vii)$$

Now if the stretching force is constant throughout the string then we can write

$$T\frac{\partial^2 y}{\partial x^2} = m\frac{\partial^2 y}{\partial t^2} \qquad ...(viii)$$

or $$\frac{\partial^2 y}{\partial x^2} = \frac{1}{c^2}\frac{\partial^2 y}{\partial t^2} \qquad ...(ix)$$

where $c = \sqrt{\frac{T}{m}}$ ...(x)

This equation (ix) is known as one dimensional wave equation and is a special case of the general wave equation.

The Oscillations of a Hanging Chain

Let us consider the small coplanar oscillations of a uniform flexible string or chain hanging from a support under the action of gravity as shown in Figure 23.2. We consider only small deviations y from the equilibrium position; x is measured from the free end of the chain. Let it be required to determine the position of the chain

$$y = y(x,t) \qquad ...(1)$$

where at $t = 0$ we give the chain an arbitrary displacement

$$y = y_0(x) \qquad ...(2)$$

In this case the tension T of the chain is variable, and hence eq. governing the displacement of the chain at any instant is given by

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left(T\frac{\partial y}{\partial x}\right) = m\frac{\partial^2 y}{\partial t^2} \qquad ...(3)$$

where m is the mass per unit length of the chain. In this case the tension T is given by

$$T = mgx \qquad ...(4)$$

Hence we have

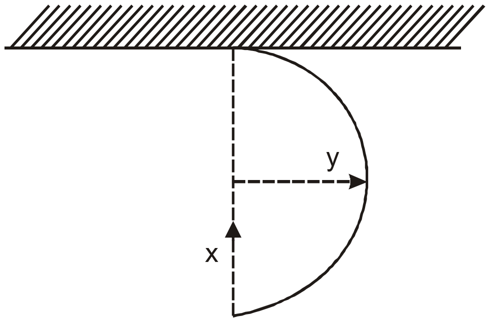
$$\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left(mgx\frac{\partial y}{\partial x}\right) = m\frac{\partial^2 y}{\partial t^2} \qquad ...(5)$$

Or, differentiating and dividing both members by the common factor m, we have

$$x\frac{\partial^2 y}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial y}{\partial x} = \frac{1\partial^2 y}{g\partial t^2} \qquad ...(6)$$

Notes

Figure 18.2



As in the case of the tightly stretched string, let us assume

$$y(x,t) = e^{j\omega t} v(x) \qquad ...(7)$$

Substituting this into (6), we obtain

$$x\frac{\partial^2 v}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial v}{\partial x} + \frac{\omega^2}{g} v = 0 \qquad ...(8)$$

This equation resembles Bessel's differential equation. Changing the variable x to Z by the relation:

$$Z^2 = \frac{4\omega^2 x}{g} \qquad ...(9)$$

reduces (8) to

$$Z^2 \frac{\partial^2 v}{\partial Z^2} + Z\frac{\partial v}{\partial Z} + Z^2 v = 0 \qquad ...(10)$$

whose general solution is

$$v = AJ_0(Z) + BY_0(Z) \qquad ...(11)$$

where $J_0(Z), Y_0(Z)$ are Bessel functions of first and second kind.

In order to satisfy the condition that the displacement of the string y remain finite when $x = 0$, we must place

$$B = 0 \qquad ...(12)$$

Accordingly, in terms of the original variable x, we have the solution

$$v = AJ_0\left(2\omega\sqrt{\frac{x}{g}}\right) \qquad ...(13)$$

for the function v.

So far, the value of ω is undetermined. In order to determine it, we make use of the boundary condition

$$v = 0 : \text{at } x = s \qquad ...(14)$$

Notes

This leads to the equation

$$0 = AJ_0\left(2\omega\sqrt{\frac{s}{g}}\right) \qquad ...(15)$$

Now, for a non-trivial solution, A cannot be equal to zero, and hence we have

$$J_0\left(2\omega\sqrt{\frac{s}{g}}\right) = 0 \qquad ...(16)$$

If we let

$$u = 2\omega\sqrt{\frac{s}{g}} \qquad ...(17)$$

we must find the roots of the equation

$$J_0(u) = 0 \qquad ...(18)$$

If we consult a table of Bessel functions, we find that the first three zeros of the Bessel function $J_0(u)$ are given by the values

2.405, 5.52, 8.654

Accordingly the various possible values of ω are given by

$$\omega_1 = \frac{2.405}{2}\sqrt{\frac{g}{s}} \qquad \omega_2 = \frac{5.52}{2}\sqrt{\frac{g}{s}} \qquad \omega_3 = \frac{8.654}{2}\sqrt{\frac{g}{s}} \text{ etc.} \qquad ...(19)$$

To each value of ω we associate a characteristic function or eigenfunction v_n of the form

$$v_n = A_n J_0\left(2\omega_n\sqrt{\frac{x}{g}}\right) \qquad ...(20)$$

Since the real and imaginary parts of the assumed solution (7) are solutions of the original differential equation, we can construct a general solution of (6) satisfying the boundary conditions by summing the particular solutions corresponding to the various possible values of *n* in the manner

$$y(x,t) = \sum_{n=1}^{n=\infty} J_0\left(2\omega_n\sqrt{\frac{x}{g}}\right)(A_n\cos\omega_n t + B_n\sin\omega_n t) \qquad ...(21)$$

where the quantities A_n and B_n are arbitrary constants to be determined from the boundary conditions of the problem. In the case under consideration there is no initial velocity imparted to the chain; hence

$$\left(\frac{\partial y}{\partial t}\right)_{t=0} = 0 \qquad ...(22)$$

This leads to the condition

$$B_n = 0 \qquad ...(23)$$

At t = 0 we have

$$y_0(x) = \sum_{n=1}^{n=\infty} A_n J_0\left(2\omega_n\sqrt{\frac{x}{g}}\right) \qquad ...(24)$$

Notes

That is, we must expand the arbitrary displacement $y_0(x)$ into a series of Bessel functions to zeroth order. To do this, we can make use of the results of unit 13. It is shown there that an arbitrary function of $F(x)$ may be expanded in a series of the form

$$F(x) = \sum_{n=1}^{n=\infty} A_n J_0(u_n x) \qquad \text{...(25)}$$

where the quantities u_n are successive positive roots of the equation

$$J_n(u) = 0 \qquad \text{...(26)}$$

The coefficient A_n are then given by the equation

$$A_n = \frac{2}{J_1^2(u_n)} \int_0^1 z J_0(u_n z) F(z) dz \qquad \text{...(27)}$$

To make use of this result to obtain the coefficients of the expansion (24), it is necessary to introduce the variable

$$z = \sqrt{\frac{x}{s}} \qquad \text{...(28)}$$

In view of (17) and (18), eq. (24) becomes

$$y_0(x) = y_0(sz^2) = F(z) = \sum_{n=1}^{n=\infty} A_n J_0(u_n z) \qquad \text{...(29)}$$

This is the form (25), and the arbitrary constants are determined by (27).

The determination of the possible frequencies and modes of oscillation of a hanging chain is of historical interest. It appears to have been the first instance where the various normal modes of a continuous system were determined by Daniel Bernoulli (1732).

Self Assessment

1. Find the relations between l, m , n and k so that

$$V(x, y, z, t) = A \exp\left[i(lx + my + nz + kct)\right] + B \exp\left[-i(lx + my + nz + kct)\right]$$

is the solution of wave equation

$$\nabla^2 V = \frac{1}{c^2} \frac{\partial^2 V}{\partial t^2}$$

18.1.1 Solution of One Dimensional Wave Equation

We shall now solve one dimensional wave equation under some boundary conditions. Let $f(x)$ and $g(x)$ be the initial deflection and initial velocity of the string and the string is stretched between two points (0, 0), (L, 0). Hence for the wave equation

$$\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} - \frac{1}{c^2} \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial t^2} = 0 \qquad \text{...(i)}$$

$u(0, t) = 0$,

and $u(L, t) = 0$, for all t, and initial conditions ...(ii)

Notes

$u(x, 0) = f(x)$ ...(iii)

and $\left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial t}\right)_{t=0} = g(x)$ ...(iv)

It is obvious from the equation (i), that u is a function of x and t. Therefore we suppose that the solution of equation is of the form by

$u(x, t) = X(x)T(t)$

or $u(x, t) = XT$(say) ...(v)

where X is a function of x only and T is that of t only.

Substituting this solution in (i), we have

$$\frac{1}{X}\frac{d^2X}{dx^2} = \frac{1}{c^2}.\frac{1}{T}.\frac{d^2T}{dt^2}$$

Now L.H.S. is a function of the independent variable x, while R.H.S. is a function of independent variable t. Therefore both sides cannot be equal unless both reduce to a constant value. Hence

$$\frac{1}{X}\frac{d^2X}{dx^2} = \frac{1}{c^2}.\frac{1}{T}.\frac{d^2T}{dt^2} = 0 \text{ or } \lambda^2 \text{or } -\lambda^2$$

Therefore in the three cases, we have

$$\frac{d^2X}{dx^2} = 0, \qquad \frac{d^2T}{dt^2} = 0,$$

$$\frac{d^2X}{dx^2} - \lambda^2 X = 0, \qquad \frac{d^2X}{dt^2} - \lambda^2c^2T = 0,$$

$$\frac{d^2X}{dx^2} + \lambda^2 X = 0, \qquad \frac{d^2X}{dt^2} + \lambda^2c^2T = 0$$

The general solutions in the above three cases are

(a) $X = Ax + B,$ $T = Ct + D$

(b) $X = Ae^{\lambda x} + Be^{-\lambda x},$ $T = Ce^{\lambda ct} + De^{-\lambda ct}$

(c) $X = A\cos\lambda x + B\sin\lambda x,$ $T = \cos\lambda ct + D\sin\lambda ct$

Using boundary conditions and the solution (a), we have

$u(0, t) = X(0)\ T(t) = 0$

and $u(L, t) = X(l)\ T(t) = 0$

which gives either $T(t) = 0$ or $X(0) = X(L) = 0$

But $T(t) \neq 0$ otherwise we get

$u(x, t) = 0$

Therefore $X(0) = X(L) = 0$

Using this in solution (a), we have

$X(0) = B = 0$

and $X(L) = AL + B = 0$

Giving $A = B = 0$. Hence $X(x) = 0$ and therefore $u\ (x, t) = 0$ which is absurd. This proves that (a) cannot be solution of the wave equation (i).

Notes

Now from solution (b) using boundary conditions

$X(0) = A + B = 0$

and $X(L) = Ae^{\lambda x} + Be^{-\lambda x} = 0$

Giving $A - B = 0$, so that $X(x) = 0$ therefore 0 which is absurd.

Hence (a) and (b) are not the solutions of wave equation (i). The third solution (c) is periodic (in time). Therefore the solution is $u(x,t) = (A\cos\lambda x + B\sin\lambda x)(C\cos\lambda ct + D\sin\lambda ct) = 0$. Using the boundary conditions (i) and (ii), we have

$$u(0,t) = A(C\cos\lambda ct + D\sin\lambda ct) = 0.$$

Hence $A = 0$

and $u(L,t) = B\sin\lambda L(C\cos\lambda ct + D\sin\lambda ct) = 0.$

this gives $\sin\lambda_L = 0$

or $\lambda L = n\pi$

or $\lambda = \dfrac{n\pi}{L}$

where n = 1, 2, 3......, (i.e. a + ive integer).

Hence the solution of equation (i) satisfying boundary conditions is

$$u_n(x,t) = \left(C_n\cos\frac{n\pi ct}{L} + D_n\sin\frac{n\pi ct}{L}\right)\sin\frac{n\pi x}{L} \quad \text{...(vii)}$$

Now using initial conditions (iii) and (iv), we have

$$u_n(x,0) = C_n\sin\frac{n\pi x}{L} = f(x)$$

and $$\left(\frac{\partial y}{\partial t}\right)_{t=0} = \left[\frac{-n\pi c}{L}C_n\sin\frac{n\pi ct}{L} + \frac{n\pi c}{L}D_n\cos\frac{n\pi ct}{L}\right]\frac{\sin n\pi x}{L}$$

$$= \frac{n\pi c}{L}D_n\sin\frac{n\pi x}{L} = g(x).$$

Clearly these will not be satisfied if we take only a single term as our solution. The equation (i) is a linear and homogeneous therefore the sum of different solutions will still be a solution.

This instead of (vii), the solution may be taken as

$$u(x,t) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\left(C_n\cos\frac{n\pi ct}{L} + D_n\sin\frac{n\pi ct}{L}\right)\sin\frac{n\pi x}{L} \quad \text{...(viii)}$$

Therefore using initial conditions

$$u(x,0) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty}C_n\sin\frac{n\pi x}{L} = f(x)$$

and $$\left(\frac{\partial y}{\partial t}\right)_{t=0} = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{n\pi c}{L}D_n\sin\frac{n\pi x}{L} = g(x)$$

L.H.S. can be considered as the Fourier since expansion of the R.H.S. Hence

$$C_n = \frac{2}{L}\int_0^L f(x)\sin\frac{n\pi x}{L}dx \qquad \text{...(ix)}$$

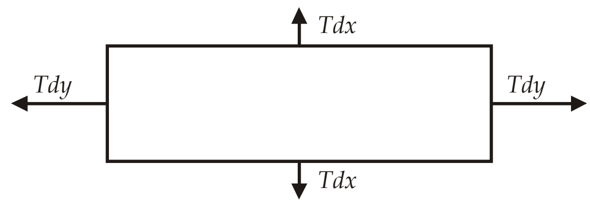
and $$\frac{n\pi c}{L}D_n = \frac{2}{L}\int_0^L g(x)\sin\frac{n\pi x}{L}dx \qquad \text{...(x)}$$

These values completely satisfy the solution (viii). Thus u (x, t) given by (viii) with the coefficients (iv) and (x) is the solution of the above equation that satisfies the conditions (i), (ii), (iii) and (iv).

18.1.2 Two Dimensional Wave Equation

As another example leading to the solution of the wave equation, let us consider the oscillations of a flexible membrane. Let us suppose that the membrane has a density of m gms. per cm^2 and that it is pulled evenly around its edge with a tension of T dynes per cm. length of edge. If the membrane is perfectly flexible, this tension will be distributed evenly throughout its area, that is, the material on opposite sides of any line segment dx is pulled apart with a force of $T\,dx$ dynes.

Figure 18.3



Let u is the displacement of the membrane from its equilibrium position. u is then clearly a function of time and of the position on the membrane of the point in question.

If we use rectangular co-ordinates to locate the point, u will be a function of x, y and t. Let us consider an element $dx\,dy$ of the membrane shown in the figure 23.3.

If we refer to the analogous argument for the string, we see that the new force normal to the surface of the membrane due to the pair of tensions Tdy is given by

$$Tdy\left[\left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial x}\right)_{x+dx} - \left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial x}\right)_x\right] = T\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2}dxdy \qquad \text{...(i)}$$

The net normal force due to the pair Tdx by the same reasoning is

$$Tdx\left[\left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial y}\right)_{y+dy} - \left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial y}\right)_y\right] = T\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y^2}dxdy \qquad \text{...(ii)}$$

The sum of these forces is the net force on the element and is equal to the mass of the element times its acceleration. That is, we have

$$Tdy\left[\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y^2}\right]dxdy = m\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial t^2}dxdy \qquad \text{...(iii)}$$

or $$\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y^2} = \frac{1}{c^2}\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial t^2} \qquad \text{...(iv)}$$

where $c = \sqrt{\dfrac{T}{m}}$

Equation (iv) is the wave equation for membrane.

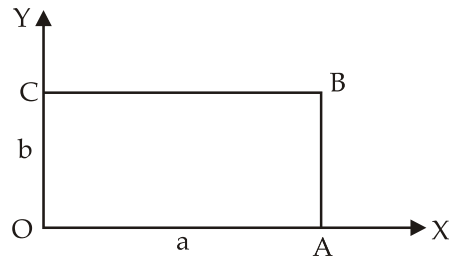
Solution of Two Dimensional Wave Equation

Let us now obtain the solution of the two dimensional wave equation. In the last section we have derived that the oscillations of a perfectly flexible membrane stretched to a uniform tension T are governed by the two dimensional wave equation. Here in this equation $u(x, y, t)$ is the deflection of the membrane.

Let $f(x, y)$ be the initial deflection and $g(x, y)$ be the initial velocity of the membrane.

Therefore the boundary conditions and initial conditions are

Figure 18.4



$$\left.\begin{aligned} u(0,y,t)=0 \\ u(a,y,t)=0 \\ u(x,0,t)=0 \\ u(x,b,t)=0 \end{aligned}\right\} \text{ for all t,} \qquad \text{...(i)}$$

and $\quad u(x,y,0) = f(x,y)$

$$\left(\frac{\partial y}{\partial t}\right)_{t=0} = g(x,y) \text{ respectively.} \qquad \text{...(ii)}$$

It is obvious that u is a function of x, y and t. Hence we suppose that the solution of the equation is of the form

$$u(x,y,t) = X(x)Y(y)T(t)$$

or $\quad u(x,y,t) = XYT(say) \qquad$ ...(iii)

where X is a function of x only, Y is that of y only and T is that of t only.

Substituting this solution in wave equation

$$\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y^2} = \frac{1}{c^2}\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial t^2},$$

we have

$$\frac{1}{c^2}\cdot\frac{1}{T}\frac{\partial^2 T}{\partial t^2} = \frac{1}{X}\frac{\partial^2 X}{\partial x^2} + \frac{1}{Y}\frac{\partial^2 Y}{\partial y^2}$$

Notes

L.H.S. is purely a function of t and R.H.S. is a function of x and y. Hence both sides will be equal only when both reduce to some constant value. Again in R.H.S. the sum of two terms $\frac{1}{X}\frac{\partial^2 Y}{\partial x^2}$ and $\frac{1}{X}\frac{\partial^2 X}{\partial y^2}$ cannot be equal to a constant unless each of these is constant.

Thus we have following three possibilities

(a) $\frac{1}{c^2 T}\frac{\partial^2 T}{\partial t^2} = 0, \quad \frac{1}{X}\frac{\partial^2 X}{\partial x^2} = 0, \quad \frac{1}{Y}\frac{\partial^2 Y}{\partial y^2} = 0, z$

(b) $\frac{1}{c^2 T}\frac{\partial^2 T}{\partial t^2} = \lambda^2, \quad \frac{1}{X}\frac{\partial^2 X}{\partial x^2} = \lambda_1^2, \quad \frac{1}{Y}\frac{\partial^2 Y}{\partial y^2} = \lambda_2^2,$

where $\lambda^2 = \lambda_1^2 + \lambda_2^2$ and

(c) $\frac{1}{c^2 T}\frac{\partial^2 T}{\partial t^2} = -\lambda^2, \quad \frac{1}{X}\frac{\partial^2 X}{\partial x^2} = -\lambda_1^2, \quad \frac{1}{Y}\frac{\partial^2 Y}{\partial y^2} = -\lambda_2^2,$

where again $\lambda^2 = \lambda_1^2 + \lambda_2^2$

The general solution in above three cases are

$$X = A_1 x + B_1,\ Y = A_2 y + B_2,\ T = A_3 t + B_3, \qquad \text{...(iv)}$$

$$X = A_1 e^{\lambda 1x} + B_1 e^{-\lambda 1x},\ Y = A_2 2e^{\lambda 2y} + B_2 2e^{-\lambda 2y} \text{ and } T = A_3 e^{\lambda ct} + B_3 e^{-\lambda ct} \qquad \text{...(v)}$$

$$X = A_1 \cos\lambda_1 x + B_1 \sin\lambda_1 x$$

$$Y = A_2 \cos\lambda_2 x + B_2 \sin\lambda_2 x$$

$$T = A_3 \cos(C\lambda t) + B_3 \sin(C\lambda t) \qquad \text{...(vi)}$$

From the boundary conditions (i) it is clear that (iv) and (v) are not the solution of the wave equation. Therefore (vi) must be required solution which is periodic in time. Hence we have

$$u(x,y,t) = (A_1 \cos\lambda_1 x + B_1 \sin\lambda_1 x)(A_2 \cos\lambda_2 y + B_2 \sin\lambda_2 y)(A_3 \cos c\lambda t + B_3 \sin c\lambda t) \qquad \text{...(vii)}$$

Using the boundary condition (i), we get

$$u(0,y,t) = A_1 (A_2 \cos\lambda_2 y + B_2 \sin\lambda_2 y)(A_3 \cos c\lambda t + B_3 \sin c\lambda t) = 0$$

$\therefore \quad A_1 = 0$

$$u(a,y,t) = B_1 \sin\lambda_1 a(A_2 \cos\lambda_2 y + B_2 \sin\lambda_2 y)(A_3 \cos c\lambda t + B_3 \sin c\lambda t) = 0;$$

$\therefore \quad \text{Sin}\lambda_1 a = 0$

or $\quad \lambda_1 a = m\pi$

$$\lambda_1 = \frac{m\pi}{a} \qquad (m = 1, 2, 3, \ldots)$$

Similarly using other boundary condition, we get

$$A_2 = 0 \text{ and } \lambda_2 = \frac{n\pi}{b} \qquad (n = 1, 2, 3, ...)$$

Now (vii) becomes

$$u_{mn}(x, y, t) = (A_{mn} \cos \lambda_{mn} t + B_{mn} \sin \lambda_{mn} t) x \; x \sin \frac{m\pi x}{a} \sin \frac{n\pi y}{b} \qquad ...(viii)$$

where $\lambda = \lambda_{mn} = \pi^2 \left(\frac{m^2}{a^2} + \frac{n^2}{b^2} \right)$.

Since the wave equation is linear and homogeneous, therefore sums of any number of different solution will still be a solution.

Thus instead of (viii) an appropriate solution of $u(x, y, t)$ is

$$u(x, y, t) = \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (A_{mn} \cos \lambda_{mn} t + B_{mn} \sin(\lambda_{mn} t)) \sin \frac{m\pi x}{a} \sin \frac{n\pi y}{b} \qquad ...(ix)$$

where $\lambda^2 = \lambda_{mn}^2 = \pi^2 \left(\frac{m^2}{a^2} + \frac{n^2}{b^2} \right)$

Now using the initial conditions (ii), we have

$$u(x, y, 0) = \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} A_{mn} \sin \frac{m\pi x}{a} \sin \frac{m\pi y}{b} = f(x, y).$$

This series is called the double Fourier series of $f(x, y)$ therefore.

$$A_{mn} = \frac{2}{a} \cdot \frac{2}{b} \int_{x=0}^{a} \int_{y=0}^{b} f(x, y) \sin \frac{m\pi x}{x} \sin \frac{n\pi y}{b} dx dy$$

and $$\left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} \right)_{t=0} = \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} C\lambda_{mn} B_{mn} \sin \frac{m\pi x}{a} \sin \frac{n\pi y}{b} = g(x, y). \qquad ...(x)$$

Therefore,

$$c\lambda_{mn} \mathrm{B}_{mn} = \frac{2}{a}, \frac{2}{b}, \int_{x=0}^{a} \int_{y=0}^{b} g(x, y) \sin \frac{m\pi x}{x} \sin \frac{n\pi y}{b} dx dy$$

or $$\mathrm{B}_{mn} = \frac{4}{abc\lambda_{mn}}, \int_{x=0}^{a} \int_{y=0}^{b} g(x, y) \sin \frac{m\pi x}{x} \sin \frac{n\pi y}{b} dx dy \qquad ...(xi)$$

Hence the solution of two dimensional wave equation is given by (ix) with the coefficients (x) and (xi) satisfying all the conditions (i) and (ii).

18.1.3 The Vibrations of a Circular Membrane

In the case of the circular membrane we naturally have recourse to polar co-ordinates with the origin at the centre. In this case the equation of motion obtained in Cartesian co-ordinates must be transformed to polar co-ordinates, we may write the basic equation of motion of the membrane in the form.

Notes

$\nabla^2 u = \frac{1}{c^2}\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial t^2}$ where ∇^2 is Laplacian operator in two dimensions. ...(i)

Transforming this equation to polar co-ordinates, we have

$$c^2\left(\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial r^2}+\frac{1}{r}\frac{\partial u}{\partial r}+\frac{1}{r^2}\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial \theta^2}\right)=\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial t^2} \qquad \text{...(ii)}$$

Let $f(r,\theta)$ be the initial displacement and $g(r,\theta)$ the initial velocity of the membrane. Therefore the function $u(r,\theta,t)$ is required to satisfy (ii) and all the boundary and initial conditions, i.e.

Boundary Condition

$$u(a,\theta,t)=0 \qquad (-\pi<\theta\le\pi; l\ge 0) \qquad \text{...(iii)}$$

Initial Condition

$$u(r,\theta,0)=f(r,\theta) \qquad \text{...(iv)}$$

and $\left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial t}\right)_{t=0}=g(r,\theta) \qquad 0\le r\le a, \qquad -\pi\le\theta\le\pi$ ...(v)

since u is a function of r, θ and t, we suppose the solution of equation (ii) as

$$u(r,\theta,t)=R(r)\Theta(\theta)T(t)$$

or $u(r,\theta,t)=R\Theta(T)\text{say}$ ...(vi)

Using the solution (ii) we have

$$\frac{1}{T}\frac{1}{c^2}\frac{d^2T}{dt^2}=\frac{1}{R}\frac{d^2R}{dr^2}+\frac{1}{r}.\frac{1}{R}.\frac{dR}{dr}+\frac{1}{r^2}\frac{1}{\Theta}\frac{d^2\Theta}{d\theta^2}$$

L.H.S. is a function of t and R.H.S. is a function of r and θ, hence both sides will be equal only when both reduce to a constant.

Hence

$$\frac{1}{c^2T}\frac{dT}{dt^2}=\frac{1}{R}\frac{d^2R}{dr^2}+\frac{1}{Rr}.\frac{dR}{dr}+\frac{1}{r^2\Theta}\frac{d^2\theta}{d\theta^2}=-\lambda^2 \qquad \text{...(vii)}$$

where $-\lambda^2$ is any constant. We separate the variable in equation (vii) and write

$$\frac{1}{\Theta}\frac{d^2\Theta}{d\Theta^2}=-\mu^2$$

thus we get

$$\frac{d^2R}{dr^2}+\frac{1}{r}\frac{dR}{dr}+\left(\lambda^2-\frac{\mu^2}{r^2}\right)R=0 \qquad \text{...(viii)}$$

Notes

$$\frac{d^2\Theta}{d\theta^2} + \mu^2\theta = 0. \quad ...(ix)$$

$$\frac{d^2T}{dt^2} + c^2\lambda^2 T = 0. \quad ...(x)$$

Equation (ix) has the solution of the form

$$\Theta = Ae^{\pm i\mu\theta} \quad ...(xi)$$

Substituting new variable $s = \lambda r$ in equation (vii), we have

$$\frac{d^2R}{ds^2} + \frac{1}{s}\frac{dR}{ds} + \left(1 - \frac{\mu^2}{s^2}\right)R = 0$$

which is Bessel's equation whose general solution is

$$R = C_1 J_\mu(s) + C_2 Y_\mu(s)$$

or $$R = C_1 J_\mu(\lambda r) + C_2 Y_\mu(\lambda r)$$

But since the deflection of the membrane is always finite while Y_μ becomes infinite as $r \to 0$ hence we cannot use Y_μ and must choose $C_2 = 0$.

Now using boundary condition (iii)

$$u(a,\theta,t) = R(a)\Theta(\theta)T(t)$$

$\therefore$ $$\mathrm{R}(a) = 0$$

Otherwise if $\Theta(\theta) = 0$ or $T(t) = 0$, $u = 0$

$$\mathrm{R}(a) = GJ\mu(\lambda\ a) = 0$$

or $$J_\mu(\lambda\ a) = 0 \quad ...(xii)$$

Let $\lambda\mu_1$, $\lambda\mu_2$ be the positive root of (xii),

The corresponding solution of (viii)

$$T = A\mu n \cos e\lambda\mu nt + B\mu n \sin C\lambda\mu nt$$

Thus we get the general solution as

$$u(r,\theta,t) = \sum_{\mu=1}^{\infty}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\left(A_{\mu n}\cos C\lambda_{\mu n}t + B_{\mu n}\sin\lambda_{\mu n}t\right)e^{\pm i\mu\theta}J_\mu\left(\lambda_{\mu n}r\right) \quad ...(xiii)$$

which satisfies the boundary condition (iii).

Considering the solution of the wave equation (ii) which are radially symmetric i.e. when the solution is independent of θ, we get the general solution as

$$u(r,t) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\left(A_n\cos C\lambda_n t + B_n \sin C\lambda_n t\right)J_0\left(\lambda_n r\right) \quad ...(xiv)$$

Notes

when $\lambda_1, \lambda_2 ...$ are the positive roots of the equation

$$J_0(\lambda a) = 0$$

From (xii) and initial condition (iv) when t = 0, we have

$$u(r,0) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} A_n J_0(\lambda_n r) = f(r)$$

$u(r,0)$ becomes $f(r)$ when independent of θ.

Hence A_n must be the coefficients of Fourier Bessel series which represent *f*(*r*) in terms of $J_0(\lambda_n r)$ i.e.

$$A_n = \frac{2}{a^2 J_0^2(\lambda_n a)} \int_0^a r f(r) J_0(\lambda_n r) dr, \qquad r = 1, 2, ... \qquad ...(xv)$$

The initial condition (v) gives

$$\left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial t}\right)_{t=0} = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} C\lambda_n B_n J_0(\lambda_n r) = g(r)$$

$[g(r,\theta)$ becomes $g(r)$ when independent of $\theta]$

Again using Fourier Bessel series, we get

$$c\lambda_n B_n = \frac{2}{a^2 J_0^2(\lambda_n a)} \int_0^a r g(r) J_0(\lambda_n r) dr$$

$$B_n = \frac{2}{a^2 J_0^2(\lambda_n a) c\lambda_n} \int_0^a r g(r) J_0(\lambda_n r) dr \qquad ...(xvi)$$

$$n = 1, 2, 3.....$$

Hence (xiv) is the solution of the wave equation with the coefficients given by the equations (xv) and (xvi) which is radially symmetric.

D, Alembert's Solution of Wave Equation

Given wave equation is

$$\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial t^2} = c^2 \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} \qquad ...(i)$$

Let us introduce two independent variables v and w given by

and $$\left\{\begin{matrix} v = x + ct \\ w = x - ct \end{matrix}\right\} \qquad ...(ii)$$

$$\therefore \qquad \frac{\partial v}{\partial x} = 1 \text{ and } \frac{\partial w}{\partial x} = 1$$

Therefore, $\dfrac{\partial u}{\partial x} = \dfrac{\partial u}{\partial v} \cdot \dfrac{\partial u}{\partial x} + \dfrac{\partial w}{\partial x} \cdot \dfrac{\partial u}{\partial x}$

Notes

$$= \frac{\partial u}{\partial v} + \frac{\partial w}{\partial w}$$

i.e., $\frac{\partial}{\partial x} \equiv \frac{\partial}{\partial v} + \frac{\partial}{\partial w}$

Now $\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} = \frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial x}\right) = \left(\frac{\partial}{\partial v} + \frac{\partial}{\partial w}\right)\left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial v} + \frac{\partial w}{\partial w}\right)$

$$\therefore \quad \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} = \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial v^2} + 2\frac{\partial u}{\partial v \partial w} + \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial w^2} \qquad \text{...(iii)}$$

Again $\frac{\partial v}{\partial t} = c$ and $\frac{\partial w}{\partial t} = -c$

$$\therefore \quad \frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial u}{\partial v}.\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial u}{\partial w}.\frac{\partial w}{\partial t} = c\left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial v} - \frac{\partial u}{\partial w}\right)$$

$$\therefore \quad \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial t^2} = c^2\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial v} - \frac{\partial}{\partial w}\right)\left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial v} - \frac{\partial u}{\partial w}\right)$$

$$= c^2\left(\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial v^2} - 2\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial v \partial w} + \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial w^2}\right) \qquad \text{...(iv)}$$

Substituting from (iii) and (iv) in (i), we get

$$= c^2\left(\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial v^2} - 2\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial v \partial w} + \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial w^2}\right)$$

$$= c^2\left(\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial v^2} + 2\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial v \partial w} + \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial w^2}\right)$$

or $\quad \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial v \partial w} = 0$

Integrating with respect to w, we get

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial v} = F(v)$$

where $F(v)$ is an arbitrary function of v.

Integrating this with respect to v, we get

$$u = \Phi(v) + \Psi(w).$$

where $\int f(v)dv = \Phi(v)$

and $\Psi(w)$ is an arbitrary function of w.

$$\therefore \quad u(x,t) = \phi(x+ct) + \Psi(x-ct) \qquad \text{...(v)}$$

This is known as D, Alembert's Solution of the wave equation (i).

Example 1: A string is stretched between the fixed points (0, 0) and (1, 0) and released at rest from the positions $u = A \sin \pi x$. Find the formula for its subsequent displacement $u(x, t)$.

Solution: Here the variation of the string is governed by one dimensional wave equation

$$\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial t^2} = c^2 \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2}$$

Boundary conditions are $u(0,t) = 0$

and $u(1,t) = 0$

Initial conditions are $u(x,0) = A \sin \pi x$

and $\left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial t}\right)_{t=0} = 0$

Hence, we have

$$u(x,t) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} C_n \cos n\pi ct \sin n\pi x$$

where $C_n = 2\int_0^1 A \sin \pi x \sin n\pi x \, dx$

$C_1, C_2, C_3, ...$ are all zero, since R.H.S. vanish for all these values

and $C_1 = 2\int_0^1 A \sin \pi x \sin \pi x \, dx$

$$= A\int_0^1 (1 - \cos 2\pi x) dx$$

$$= A$$

Hence $u(x,t) = c_1 \cos(c\pi t) \sin \pi x$

$$= A \cos c\pi t \sin \pi x$$

Example 2: Find the deflection $u(x, y, t)$ of a square membrane with $a = b = 1$ and $c = 1$, if the initial velocity is zero and the initial deflection is

$$f(x,y) = A \sin \pi x \sin^2 \pi y$$

Solution: Equation governing the deflection of the membrane is

$$\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial t^2} = c^2 \left[\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y^2}\right]$$

Boundary Conditions

$$u(0,y,t)=0$$
$$u(1,y,t)=0$$
$$u(x,0,t)=0$$
$$u(x,1,t)=0$$

Initial Conditions

$$u(x,y,0)=f(x,y)=A\sin\pi x\sin\pi^2 y$$

and $\left(\dfrac{\partial u}{\partial t}\right)_{t=0}=0$

Now $u(x,y,t)=\sum_{m=1}^{\infty}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}A_{mn}\cos\lambda_{mn}t\sin m\pi x\sin n\pi y$

Since C = 1, a = 1, b = 1

and $\lambda_{mn}^2=\lambda^2\left(m^2+n^2\right)$

where $A_{mn}=4\int_0^1\int_0^1 f(x,y)\sin mn\pi.\sin n\pi y dxdy$

$$=4A\int_0^1\int_0^1\sin\pi x\sin mn\pi x.\sin^2\pi y\sin n\pi y dxdy.$$

clearly $A_{m1}=A_{m3}=A_{m4}=A_{m5}=...0$

and $A_{m2}=4A\int_0^1\int_0^1\sin\pi x\sin m\pi x.\sin^2 2\pi y dxdy.$

$$=2A\int_0^1\sin\pi x\sin m\pi x dx.$$

Now $A_{22}=A_{32}=A_{42}=...=0$

and $A_{12}=2A\int_0^1\sin^2\pi x dx=A$

Hence we have

$$u(x,y,t)=A_{12}\cos\lambda_{12}t\sin\pi x 2\pi y$$

$$=A\cos\sqrt{5}\pi t\sin\pi x\sin 2\pi y,\ \text{as all coefficients}$$

Vanish except $\lambda_{12}^2=\pi^2\left(1^2+2^2\right).$

or $\lambda_{12}=\sqrt{5}\,\pi$

Self Assessment

2. Solve one dimensional wave equation

$$\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2}-\frac{1}{c^2}\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial t^2}=0$$

with the boundary equations

$u(0,t) = 0$
$u(L,t) = 0$
$u(x,0) = 0$

$$\left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial t}\right)_{t=0} = g(x)$$

18.2 Boundary Value Problems (Heat Conduction or Diffusion)

Derivation of the Equation of Heat Conduction

In applied mathematics the partial differential equation

$$\frac{\partial V}{\partial t} = h^2\nabla^2 V$$

where h^2 is a constant and ∇^2 is the Laplacian operator governs the temperature distribution V in homogeneous solids.

To prove this, we know that the role of flow of heat in a homogeneous solid across the surface is $-K\frac{\partial V}{\partial n}$ per unit area, where V is the temperature and K a constant called the thermal conductivity, $\frac{\partial}{\partial n}$ denotes the differentiation along the normal. Taking an element of the solid at the point P (x, y, z) as a rectangular parallelepiped with P centre and edges parallel to the co-ordinate axes, of lengths dx, dy and dz, we find that the rate of flow of heat into the element is

$$K\nabla^2 V dxdydz$$

But the element is gaining heat at the rate

$$\rho C\frac{\partial V}{\partial t}dxdydz$$

where ρ is the density and C the specific heat. Thus, if there is no gain of heat in the element other than by conduction, we have

$$\frac{\partial V}{\partial t} = C^2\nabla^2 V$$

where $C^2 = \frac{K}{C\rho}$. ...(i)

If heat is being produced at (x,y,z) in any other way, a term must be added to the right hand side of (i).

18.2.1 Variable Heat Flow in One Dimension

If we consider the heat flow in a long thin bar or wire of constant cross-section and homogeneous material which is along x-axis λ and is perfectly insulated, so that the heat flows in the x-direction only, V depends only on x and t and therefore the heat equation becomes.

$$\frac{\partial V}{\partial t} = c^2 \frac{\partial^2 V}{\partial x^2} \quad \text{...(i)}$$

Equation (i) is known as one dimensional heat equation.

Now we shall find out the solution of equation (i) under different initial and boundary conditions.

Case I: Let L is length of the rod whose ends are kept at zero temperature and whose initial temperature is $f(x)$.

The boundary conditions are

$$V(0,t) = 0 \quad \text{...(ii)}$$

$$V(L,t) = 0 \text{ for all } t \quad \text{...(iii)}$$

The initial conditions are

$$V(x,0) = f(x) \qquad 0 < x < L \quad \text{...(iv)}$$

Let the solution of equation (i) is of the form

$$V(x,t) = X(x)T(t)$$

$$V = XT(say) \quad \text{...(v)}$$

where X is a function of x only and T is that of t only.

Substituting this solution in equation (i), we get

$$\frac{1}{X}\frac{d^2X}{dx^2} = \frac{1}{c^2T}\frac{dT}{dt}$$

since L.H.S. is a function of x and R.H.S. is a function of t, hence both sides will be equal only when both reduces to same constant. Therefore

$$\frac{1}{X}\frac{d^2X}{dx^2} = \frac{1}{c^2t}\frac{dT}{dt} = 0 \text{ or } \lambda^2 \text{or} - \lambda^2$$

and hence in these three cases, we have

(a) $\frac{d^2X}{dx^2} = 0$ and $\frac{dT}{dt} = 0$,

(b) $\frac{d^2X}{dx^2} - \lambda^2 X = 0$ and $\frac{dT}{dt} - \lambda^2 c^2 t = 0$,

(c) $\frac{d^2X}{dx^2} + \lambda^2 X = 0$ and $\frac{dT}{dt} + \lambda^2 c^2 t = 0$

The general solution in these three cases are

(i) $X = Ax + B$ $\qquad T = c$

(ii) $X = Ae^{\lambda x} + Be^{-\lambda x}$ $\qquad T = c^{e^{x^2}c^2t}$

(iii) $X = A\cos\lambda x + B\sin\lambda x$, $\qquad T = Ce^{-\lambda^2 c^2 t}$

Notes

If we use the boundary conditions (ii) and (iii) we observe that (i) and (ii) do not constitute the solution as they give $A = B = 0$ i.e. $X = 0$ and hence $V(x, t) = 0$, which is absurd.

Using boundary conditions (ii) and (iii) the solution (iii) gives.

$X(0) = A = 0$ and $X(L) = 0 + B\sin\lambda L = 0.$

Now $B \neq 0$ otherwise $X = 0$ and hence $V(x,t) = 0.$

Therefore

$$\sin\lambda L = 0$$

or $$\lambda L = n\pi$$

or $$\lambda = \frac{n\pi}{L}, n = 1,2,3,.....$$

Hence for each value of n.

$$V_n(x,t) = B_n \sin\frac{n\pi}{L} x e^{-n^2\pi^2c^2t/L^2}$$

are solution of (i) satisfying the given boundary condition. Therefore for each value of n, we take the solution as

$$V_n(x,t) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} V_n(x,t)$$

or $$V_n(x,t) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} B_n \sin\frac{n\pi}{L} x.e^{-n^2\pi^2c^2t/L^2} \qquad \text{...(vi)}$$

Using initial condition, we have

$$V(x,0) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} B_n \sin\frac{n\pi}{L} x = f(x)$$

which gives

$$B_n = \frac{2}{L}\int_0^L F(x)\sin\frac{n\pi}{L} x.dx \qquad \text{...(vii)}$$

Thus (vi) with coefficient (vii) is the solution of one dimensional heat equation in (i).

Case II: Let L be the length of a uniform wire whose end $x = 0$ is kept at 0 temperature and other end $x = L$ is kept at constant temperature t_0 and we have to obtain the temperature function of the wire as t increases, the initial temperature being t_1.

Hence boundary conditions are

$$V(0,t) = 0 \qquad \text{...(viii)}$$

$$V(L,t) = t_0 \text{ for all } t \qquad \text{...(ix)}$$

and initial condition is

$$V(x,0) = t_i \qquad \text{...(x)}$$

Notes

Let the solution of heat equation be

$$V(x,t) = XT \quad \text{...(xi)}$$

where X is a function of x only and T that of t only.

Substituting this solution in (i) as we have done in Case I, we get the following three solutions:

(i) $X = Ax + B \qquad T = C$

(ii) $X = Ae^{\lambda x} + Be^{\lambda x} \qquad T = Ce^{\lambda^2 c^2 t}$

(iii) $X = A\cos\lambda x + B\sin\lambda x \qquad T = Ce^{-\lambda^2 c^2 t}$

Hence (ii) does not constitute the solution of (i), since in this case $V(x,t) = XT$ increase indefinitely with time, which is not the case. (iii) is also inadequate to give complete solution since in this case temps tends to zero as t tends to infinity. Hence the complete solution must be a compilation of (i) and (iii) Therefore

$$V(x,t) = V_3(x) + V_t(x,t) \quad \text{...(xii)}$$

where $V_s(x)$ denotes the temperature distribution after a long period of time when the rod has reached a steady state of temperature distribution, $V_t(x, t)$ denotes the transient effects which die down with the passage of time. These two must be the solutions of the types (i) and (iii) respectively.

It is obvious that when the end $x = 0$ is maintained at temperature $V = 0$ and the end $x = L$ at $V = t_0$ ultimately there will be uniform gradation of temperature.

Therefore $V_s(x) = \frac{t_0}{L}x.$

(xii) then becomes

$$V(x,t) = \frac{t_0}{L}x + V_t(x,t)$$

with the help of (viii), (ix) and (x) the boundary and initial conditions for $V_t(x,t)$ are as follows:

$$V(0,t) = V_t(0,t) = 0 \quad \text{...(xiii)}$$

$$V(L,t) = t_0 + V_t(L,t) = t_0$$

or $\quad V_t(L,t) = 0$

and $\quad V(x,0) = \frac{t_0}{L}x + V_t(x,0) = t_i \quad \text{...(xiv)}$

or $\quad V_t(x,0) = t_i - \frac{t_0}{L}x. \quad \text{...(xv)}$

Therefore let us take

$$V_t(x,t) = (A'\cos\lambda x + B'\sin\lambda x)e^{-\lambda^2 c^2 t} \quad \text{...(xvi)}$$

Notes

In this result by making use of (xiii), we get

$$V_t(0,t) = A' e^{-\lambda^2 c^2 t} = 0$$

$\therefore \quad A' = 0$

Then making use of (xiv) in (xvi), we get

$$V_t(L,t) = B' \sin \lambda L = 0$$

$\therefore \quad \sin \lambda L = 0$

or $\quad \lambda L = n\pi$

or $\quad \lambda = \dfrac{n\pi}{L} \qquad (n = 1, 2, 3, ...)$

Therefore a solution for $V_t(x,t)$ is

$$B_n \sin \frac{n\pi}{L} x . e^{-x^2 \pi^2 c^2 t / L_2} \qquad (n = 1,2,3,...)$$

Now adding the solutions for different n the general solution may be written as

$$V_t(x,t) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} B_n \sin \frac{n\pi}{L} x . e^{-x^2 \pi^2 t / L_2} \qquad ...(xvii)$$

In this result if we use (xv), we get

$$V_t(x,0) = t_i - \frac{t_0}{L} x = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} B_n \sin \frac{n\pi}{L} x$$

which gives $B_n = \dfrac{2}{L} \displaystyle\int_0^L \left(t_i - \frac{t_0}{L} x \right) \sin \frac{n\pi}{L} x dx$

Integrating by parts, we get

$$B_n = \frac{2}{n\pi} \left[t_i - (-1) n (t_i - t_0) \right]$$

Therefore

$$V_t(x,t) = \frac{t_0}{L} x + \frac{2}{\pi} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left[t_i - (-1)^n (t_i - t_0) e^{-x^2 \pi^2 c^2 t / L} \sin \frac{n\pi x}{L} \right] \qquad ...(xviii)$$

Here if the initial temperature of the wire is zero then, we get

$$V_t(x,t) = \sqrt{\frac{t_0}{L}} \left[x + \frac{2}{\pi} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (-1)^n e^{-x^2 \pi^2 c^2 t / L} \sin \frac{n\pi x}{L} . \right] \qquad ...(xix)$$

Case III: Let there is a bar of infinite length (i.e. extending up to infinity on both sides) which is insulated laterally. Then we have to find out the solution of heat equation (1) if the initial temperature of the bar is *f(x)*.

In this case there is no boundary condition and the initial condition is

$$V(x,0) = f(x) \qquad (-\infty < x < \infty) \qquad \text{...(xx)}$$

Again we assume the solution of equation (xi) as

$$V(x,t) = X.T.$$

Proceeding as in the last two cases, we get the three solutions and here we find that (i) and (ii) do not constitute the solution. Hence we take here the third solution (iii), i.e.

$$X = A\cos px + B\sin px \text{ and } T = C_0 e^{-c^2 p^2 t}$$

Here we have taken the constant as $-p^2$ instead of $-\lambda^2$.

Hence $V(x,t,p) = XT = (C\cos px + D\sin px)e^{-c^2p^2t}$ ...(xxi)

Since $f(x)$ is not periodic here, therefore we will use Fourier integrals and not Fourier series. Also, we may consider C and D as functions of p

write $C = C(p)$, $D = D(p)$.

Now since the heat equation is linear and homogeneous, we have

$$V(x,t) = \int_0^\infty V(x,t,p)dp$$

or $$V(x,t) = \int_0^\infty \left[C(p)\cos px + D(p)\sin px\right]e^{-c^2p^2t}dp \qquad \text{...(xxii)}$$

(xxiii) is the solution of (i) provided this integral exists and can be differentiated w.r.t. ,x, and w.r.t. ,t,.

Using the initial condition (xx), we get

$$V(x,0) = \int_0^\infty \left[C(p)\cos px + D(p)\sin px\right]dp = X(x)$$

$$\therefore \quad C(p) = \frac{1}{\pi}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(\lambda)\sin p\lambda d\lambda$$

and $$D(p) = \frac{1}{\pi}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(\lambda)\sin p\lambda d\lambda;$$

$$\therefore \quad V(x,t) = \frac{1}{\pi}\int_0^\infty \left[\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(\lambda)\cos(px - p\lambda)e^{-c^2p^2t}d\lambda\right]dp$$

$$= \frac{1}{\pi}\int_0^\infty f(\lambda)\left[\int_0^\infty e^{-c^2p^2t}\cos(x-\lambda)p.dp\right]d\lambda$$

The change of the order of integration is justified, since inner integral exists and after changing the order of integration resulting integral also exists.

Solving the inner integral by using the substitution $cp\sqrt{t} = s$ and using the well known integral

$$\int_0^\infty e^{-s^2}\cos 2bs ds = \frac{\sqrt{\pi e^{-b^2}}}{2}$$

we get $V(x,t) = \frac{1}{2^6\sqrt{\pi}t^{-\infty}}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(\lambda)e^{-(x-\lambda)^2/4c^2td\lambda}$

Putting $\frac{\lambda - x}{2c\sqrt{t}} = w$, so that $dx = -2c\sqrt{t}dw$, we have

$$V(x,t) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{\pi}}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f\left(x + 2cw\sqrt{t}\right)e^{-w^2 dw} \qquad \text{...(xxiii)}$$

which is the required solution.

Case IV: Let there be a bar of length L which is perfectly insulated. Both ends i.e. $x = 0$ and $x = L$ are also perfectly insulated and the initial temperature of the bar is

$$V(x,0) = f(x)$$

The flux of heat across the faces $x = 0$ and $x = L$ is proportional $t_0 \frac{\partial V}{\partial x}$ at the end, since these ends are insulated. In this case the boundary conditions are

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial x}V(0,t) = 0 \qquad \text{...(xxiv)}$$

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial x}V(L,t) = 0 \qquad \text{...(xxv)}$$

and the initial condition is

$$V(x,0) = f(x) \qquad (0 < x < L) \qquad \text{...(xxvi)}$$

Proceeding as in Case I, here also we get three solutions. Solution (ii) is inadmissible as in this $V = XT$ increases indefinitely with time. The solution (iii) by itself is inadequate since in this case the temperature will tend to zero as t tends to infinity. Therefore general solution will consist of the solution of (i) and (iii).

Using boundary condition (xxiv) in solution (i), i.e.

$$X = Ax + B \text{ and } T = C$$

or $\quad V = A'x + B'$

we get $A' = 0.$

Therefore $V = B'$ is one of the solution of (i). Considering solution (iii) i.e.

$$X = A\cos\lambda x + B\sin\lambda x,\ T = Ce^{-\lambda^2 c^2 t}$$

or $\quad V(x,t) = (C'\cos\lambda x + D'\sin\lambda x)e^{-\lambda^2 c^2 t}$

Using boundary condition (xxiv) and (xxv), we get

$$D' = 0$$

and $\quad \lambda = \frac{n\pi}{L} \qquad (n = 1, 2, 3, ...)$

Notes

Therefore for each value of n, we have a solution of (i) of the type

$$V(x,t) = A_n \cos\frac{n\pi}{L} x e^{-n^2\lambda^2 c^2 t/L^2}$$

Hence the complete solution of (i) is

$$V(x,t) = B' + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} A_n \cos\frac{n\pi}{L} x e^{-n^2\lambda^2 c^2 t/L^2} \quad ...(xxvii)$$

Using the initial condition (xxvi), we have

$$V(x,0) = f(x) = B' + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} A_n \cos\frac{n\pi x}{L} dx \quad ...(xxviii)$$

If we integrate both sides w.r.t. x between the limits 0 to L, we have

$$B' = \frac{1}{L}\int_0^L f(x)dx \quad ...(xxix)$$

Also if we multiply both sides of (xxviii) by $\cos\frac{n\pi x}{L}$ and then integrate w.r.t. x between 0 to L, we have

$$A_n = \frac{2}{L}\int_0^L f(x)\cos\frac{n\pi x}{L} dx \quad ...(xxx)$$

B, can also be written in a better way as

$$B' = \frac{1}{L}\int_0^L f(x)dx$$

$$= \frac{1}{2}.\frac{2}{L}\int_0^L f(x)\cos\frac{\pi x}{L} 0dx$$

$$= \frac{1}{2}A_0$$

Hence complete solution of (i) to be given by

$$V(x,t) = \frac{1}{2}A_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} A_n \cos\frac{n\pi x}{L} e^{-n^2 r^2 c^2 t/L} \quad ...(xxxi)$$

where $A_n = \frac{2}{L}\int_0^L f(x)\cos\frac{n\pi x}{L} dx$ ...(xxxii)

Self Assessment

3. The heat equation is given by

$$K\left(\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2}\right) = \frac{\partial u}{\partial t}$$

Notes

show that the function

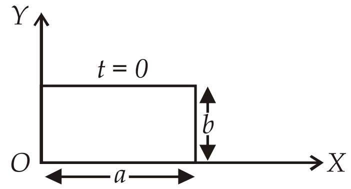
$$U(x,t) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{t}} \exp\left(\frac{-x^2}{4xt}\right)$$

is also the solution of heat equation.

18.2.2 Heat Flow in Two Dimensional Rectangular System

To illustrate the solution of the two dimensional diffusion equation, let us consider the following problem.

Figure 18.5



A thin rectangular plate whose surface is impervious to heat flow has at $t = 0$ an arbitrary distribution of temperature. Its four edges are kept at zero temperature. It is required to determine the subsequent temperature of the plate as t increases.

Let the plate extend from $x = 0$ to $x = a$ and from $y = 0$ to $y = b$. Expressing the problem Mathematically, we must solve the equation

$$c^2\left(\frac{\partial^2 V}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 V}{\partial y^2}\right) = \frac{\partial V}{\partial t}\,. \qquad \text{...(i)}$$

Subject to the boundary conditions

$$\left.\begin{cases} V(0,y,t) = 0 \\ V(a,y,t) = 0 \\ V(x,0,t) = 0 \\ V(x,b,t) = 0 \end{cases}\right\} \text{ for all } t. \qquad \text{...(ii)}$$

The initial conditions are

$$V(x,y,0) = F(x,y) \text{ for } 0 \le x \le a, 0 \le y \le b$$

$$V(x,y,\infty) = 0 \qquad \text{...(iii)}$$

To solve equation (i) assume a solution of the form

$$V(x,y,t) = e^{-\theta t} X(x) Y(y) = e^{-\theta t} XY(say)\,. \qquad \text{...(iv)}$$

where X is a function of x only and Y is function of y only. Substituting (iv) in (i) we get

$$\frac{1}{X}\frac{d^2X}{dx^2} + \frac{1}{Y}\frac{d^2Y}{dy^2} = -\frac{\theta}{c^2}$$

or $$\frac{1}{X}\frac{d^2X}{dx^2} + \frac{1}{c^2}\theta = \frac{-1}{Y}\frac{d^2Y}{dy^2} = \lambda^2\,. \qquad \text{...(v)}$$

Notes

We have now succeeded in separating the variables since the left hand member of (v) is a function of Y only and hence both members of (v) are equal to a constant which we have called λ^2.

Let $\frac{\theta}{C^2} - \lambda^2 = \mu^2$ then ...(vi)

the solutions are

$$X = A_1 \sin \mu x + B_1 \cos \mu x$$

$$X = A_2 \sin \lambda x + B_2 \cos \lambda x \quad \text{...(vii)}$$

And A's and B's are arbitrary constants. Now, to satisfy the boundary conditions (ii), it is obvious that there cannot be any cosine forms present so that we must have

$$B_1 = B_2 = 0$$

Also we must have

$$\sin \mu a = 0$$

and $\sin \lambda b = 0$

which gives $\mu = \frac{m\pi}{a}$ $\quad m = 0,1,2,.....$

and $\lambda = \frac{n\pi}{b}$ $\quad n = 0,1,2,.....$

From (vi) we find that

$$\theta_{mn} = c^2 \left[\left(\frac{m\pi}{a} \right)^2 + \left(\frac{n\pi}{b} \right)^2 \right] \quad \text{...(viii)}$$

Hence for all value of m and n we find a particular solution of (i) that satisfies the boundary conditions (ii) of the form

$$V = B_{mn} e^{-\theta mnt} \sin \frac{m\pi x}{a} \sin \frac{n\pi y}{b}$$

If we sum over all possible values of m and n construct the general solution

$$V = \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} B_{mn} e^{-\theta_{mnt}} \sin \frac{m\pi x}{a} \sin \frac{n\pi y}{b} \quad \text{...(ix)}$$

Using initial conditions (iii), we get

$$F(x, y) = \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} B_{mn} \sin \frac{m\pi x}{a} \sin \frac{n\pi y}{b} \quad \text{...(x)}$$

Multiplying both sides of (x) by

$$\sin \frac{r\pi x}{a} \sin \frac{s\pi y}{b} \quad \text{...(x)}$$

Notes

and integrating w.r.t. x and y from $x = 0$ and $y = 0$ to $y = b$, because of the orthogonality properties of the sin θ all the terms in the summation vanish except the term for which $m = r$ and $n = s$ and we obtain the result.

$$B_{r\lambda} = \frac{4}{ab}\int_{x=0}^{a}\int_{y=0}^{b} F(x,y)\sin\frac{r\pi x}{a}\sin\frac{\lambda\pi y}{b}\,dxdy \quad \text{...(xi)}$$

This determines the arbitrary constants of the general solution (ix)

Three Dimensional Heat Flow

The heat equation in three dimensions is given by

$$\frac{\partial V}{\partial t} = c^2\nabla^2 V = c^2\left(\frac{\partial^2 V}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 V}{\partial y^2} + \frac{\partial^2 V}{\partial z^2}\right) \quad \text{...(i)}$$

where $c^2 = \dfrac{k}{cp}$

Consider now a slab of dimensions a, b, c, the boundary conditions are

$$\text{and} \quad \left.\begin{aligned} &V(0,y,z,t) = 0, \\ &V(a,y,z,t) = 0, \\ &V(x,0,z,t) = 0, \\ &V(x,b,z,t) = 0, \\ &V(x,y,0,t) = 0, \\ &V(x,y,c,t) = 0, \end{aligned}\right\} \quad \text{...(ii)}$$

for all t.

$$V(x,y,z,0) = F(x,y,z) \text{ for } 0 \le x \le a, \quad 0 \le y \le b \text{ and } 0 \le z \le c. \quad \text{...(iii)}$$

To solve equation (i) we assume as usually a solution of the form

$$V(x,y,z,t) = e^{-\theta t}X(x)Y(y)Z(z) \quad \text{...(iv)}$$

and then find the solutions similar to the case of two dimensions.

18.2.3 Temperature Inside a Circular Plate

Consider a thin circular plate whose faces are impervious to heat flow and whose circular edge is kept at zero temperature. At $t = 0$ the initial temperature of the plate is a function *f(r)* of the distance r from the center of the plate only. It is required to find the temperature u (r, t). Let the radius of the plate be a.

The equation of heat conduction is

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = h^2\nabla^2 u \quad \text{...(i)}$$

Notes

It is clear that the temperature u must be a function of r and t only (due to symmetry). So using cylindrical co-ordinates, we have

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = h^2\left(\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial r^2} + \frac{1}{r}\frac{\partial u}{\partial t}\right), \qquad 0 < r < a \qquad \text{...(ii)}$$

The boundary condition is

$$u = 0 \text{ at } r = a \qquad \text{...(iii)}$$

The initial condition is

$$u(r,0) = f(r) \qquad \text{...(iv)}$$

To solve eq. (ii), let us assume

$$u = e^{-mt}v(r) \qquad \text{...(v)}$$

Substituting in eq. (ii), we obtain

$$-mv(r) = h^2\left(\frac{\partial^2 v}{\partial r^2} + \frac{1}{r}\frac{\partial u}{\partial r}\right) \qquad \text{...(vi)}$$

Rewriting (vi) in the form

$$r\frac{\partial^2 v}{\partial r^2} + \frac{\partial v}{\partial r} + \frac{mr}{h^2}v = 0 \qquad \text{...(vii)}$$

Let $k^2 = m/h^2$ ...(viii)
and $t = kr$, we have from (vii)

$$t\frac{\partial^2 v}{\partial t^2} + \frac{\partial v}{\partial t} + tv = 0 \qquad \text{...(ix)}$$

which has the same form as Bessel's differential equation for $n = 0$. Hence the general solution of (ix) is

$$v = AJ_0(kr) + BY_0(kr) \qquad \text{...(x)}$$

where A and B are arbitrary constants. Now since the temperature must remain finite at $r = 0$, the arbitrary constant B in *(X)* must be equal to zero. We thus have

$$v = AJ_0(kr) \qquad \text{...(xi)}$$

Since the boundary $r = a$, of the plate is maintained at zero temperature for all values of t, we must have

$$J_0(ka) = 0 \qquad \text{...(xii)}$$

Thus only those values of k are allowed that satisfy equation (xii). Let these values be $k_i\,(i = 1,2,3,...)$. Equation (viii) gives the following values for m:

$$m_i = (k_i h)^2 \qquad \text{...(xiii)}$$

A particular solution of (v) that satisfies the boundary condition is

$$u_i = A_i e^{-k_i^2 th^2} J_0(k_i r)$$

Notes

The general solution is obtained by summing over all values of i.e.

$$u = \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} A_i e^{-k_i^2 th^2} J_0(k_i r) \quad \text{...(xiv)}$$

where the arbitrary constants A_i must be obtained from the initial conditions i.e. at $t = 0$, $u = f(r)$. Putting $t = 0$ in (xiv), we have

$$f(r) = \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} A_i J_0(k_i r) \quad \text{...(xv)}$$

Here A_i are now obtained as

$$A_i = \frac{2}{a^2 |J_1(k_i a)|^2} \int_0^a r f(r) J_0(k_i r) dr, \ i = 1, 2, ... \quad \text{...(xvi)}$$

Example 1: Determine the solution of one dimensional heat equation under the following boundary and initial conditions:

$V(0,t) = V(L,t) = 0 \qquad t > 0$

and $V(x,0) = x \qquad 0 < x < L$ where L is the length of the bar.

Solution: Proceeding as before for Case I; we have

$$V(x,t) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} B_n \sin\frac{n\pi x}{L} . e^{-n^2\pi^2 a^2 t/L^2}$$

where $B_n = \frac{2}{L}\int_0^L x.\sin\frac{n\pi}{L} x dx$

Integrating by parts, we get

$$B_n = \frac{2}{n}\frac{L}{\pi}\cos n\pi$$

Therefore $V(x,t) = \frac{2L}{\pi}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{1}{n}\cos n\pi \sin\frac{n\pi x}{L} . e^{-n^2\pi^2 a^2 t/L^2}$

Example 2: A rectangular plate bounded by the lines $x = 0$, $y = 0$, $x = a$, $y = b$ has an initial distribution of temperature given by.

$$V(x,y,0) = A\sin\frac{\pi x}{a}\sin\frac{\pi y}{b}$$

The edges are kept at zero temperature and the plane faces are impervious to heat. Find V at any point and at a time.

Solution: We have the heat equation as

$$\frac{\partial 2V}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial 2V}{\partial y^2} = \frac{1}{c^2}\frac{2V}{\partial t}$$

Notes

Let us put the solution as

$$V(x,y,t) = \sum_{m=1}^{\infty}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} A_{mn}\, e^{-c^2\lambda_{mnl}} \sin\frac{m\pi}{a}x \sin\frac{n\pi}{b}y$$

where

$$\lambda^2{}_{mn} = \pi^2\left(\frac{m^2}{a^2}+\frac{n^2}{b^2}\right)$$

and $$A_{mn} = \frac{4}{ab}\int_0^a\int_0^b A\sin\frac{\pi x}{a}\sin\frac{\pi y}{b}\sin\frac{m\pi x}{a}\sin\frac{n\pi y}{b}\,dx\,dy$$

$$= \frac{4A}{ab}\int_{x=0}^{a}\sin\frac{\pi x}{a}\sin\frac{m\pi x}{a}\left[\int_{y=0}^{b}\sin\frac{\pi y}{b}\sin\frac{n\pi}{b}dy\right]dx$$

for $n = 2, 3, 4, \ldots$ the inner integral vanishes and for $n = 1$, the value of the integral is $\frac{1}{2}a,$ we have

$$A_{11} = A$$

and $$\lambda_{11} = \pi^2\left(\frac{1}{a^2}+\frac{1}{b^2}\right).$$

Therefore $V(x,y,t) = Ae^{-c^2\lambda_{11}t}\sin\frac{\pi x}{a}\sin\frac{\pi y}{b}.$

This give the temperature of the plate at any point and time.

Example 3: Find the temperature $u(x,t)$ of a slab whose ends $x = 0$ and $x = L$ are kept at temperature zero and whose initial temperature $f(x)$ is given by

$$f(x) = A \quad \text{when } 0 < x < \frac{L}{2}$$

$$f(x) = 0 \quad \text{when } \frac{L}{2} < x < L$$

Solution: Let L be the length of the slab whose ends are kept at zero temperature and whose initial temperature is $f(x)$.

The boundary conditions are

$$u(0,t) = 0$$

$$u(L,t) = 0 \text{ for all } t. \qquad \ldots(A_1)$$

The initial conditions are

$$u(x,0) = f(x) = A \qquad \text{when } 0 < x < \frac{L}{2}$$

$$= f(x) = 0 \qquad \text{when } \frac{L}{2} < x < L \qquad \ldots(A_2)$$

Notes

Let the solution of the heat equation

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = c^2 \frac{\partial^2 u}{dx^2}, \quad \ldots(1)$$

is of the form

$$u(x,t) = X(x)T(t) \quad \ldots(2)$$

where X is a function of x only and T is that of t only.

Substituting in (1), we get

$$\frac{1}{X}\frac{d^2X}{dx^2} = \frac{1}{c^2T}\frac{d^2T}{dt^2} \quad \ldots(3)$$

Since L.H.S. is a function of x only and R.H.S. is a function of t only, both sides will be equal if they are constant i.e. equal to $-\lambda^2$

$$\frac{1}{X}\frac{d^2X}{dx^2} = \frac{1}{c^2T}\frac{dT}{dt} = -\lambda^2$$

Thus

$$\frac{d^2X}{dx^2} + \lambda^2 X = 0$$

and

$$\frac{dT}{dt} + c^2\lambda^2 T = 0 \quad \text{...}(4)$$

The solutions of equations (4) are

$$X = A\cos\lambda x + B\sin\lambda x \; ; \; T = Ce^{-e^2\lambda^2 t} \quad \ldots(5)$$

using boundary conditions (A_1), the solution (5) gives

$$X(0) = 0 = A \text{ and } X(L) = 0 + B\sin\lambda L = 0 \quad \ldots(6)$$

Now $B \neq 0$ hence

$$\sin\lambda L = 0$$

or $\lambda L = n\pi,$ for n = 1, 2, 3, … …(7)

$$i.e.\ \lambda = n\pi / L$$

Hence for each value of n

$$u_n(x,t) = B_n \sin\left(\frac{n\pi}{L}x\right)e^{-c^2n^2\pi^2 t/L^2} \quad \ldots(8)$$

are solution of equation (i) satisfying the given boundary conditions (A_1). So the general solution is

$$u(x,t) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} u_n(x,t) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} B_n \sin\frac{n\pi x}{L} e^{-\frac{\pi^2 c^2 n^2 t}{L^2}} \quad \ldots(9)$$

Notes

The coefficients B_n are given by

$$B_n = \frac{2}{L}\int_0^L f(x)\sin\frac{n\pi x}{L}dx$$

$$= \frac{2A}{L}\int_0^{L/2}\sin\frac{n\pi x}{L}dx = \frac{2A}{L}\left.\frac{\left[-\cos\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right]}{(n\pi/L)}\right|_0^{L/2}$$

$$= \frac{2A}{n\pi}\left[-\cos\frac{(n\pi)}{2}\right]$$

or

$$B_n = \frac{2A}{n\pi}\left[1-\cos\frac{n\pi}{2L}\right]$$

$$= \frac{2A}{n\pi}\left(2\sin^2\frac{n\pi}{4L}\right)$$

$$= \frac{4A}{n\pi}\sin^2\left(\frac{n\pi}{4L}\right) \qquad \ldots(10)$$

Thus the solution (9) becomes

$$u(x,t) = \frac{4A}{\pi}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{\sin^2\left(\frac{n\pi}{4L}\right)}{n}\sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right)e^{\frac{-n^2\pi^2c^2t}{L^2}} \qquad ...(11)$$

So the solution of equation (i) subject to the conditions (A_1) and (A_2) is given by equation (11).

Self Assessment

4. Find the solution of heat equation.

$$\frac{\partial^2 V}{dx^2}+\frac{\partial^2 V}{dy^2}=\frac{\partial V}{dt}$$

Subject to the boundary conditions

$V = 0$ when $t = +\infty$, when $x = 0$ or $x = \ell$ and when $y = 0$ or ℓ.

Also initially

$V(x,y,0) = f(x,y)$

18.3 Summary

- Wave equation is written in Cartesian co-ordinates, cylindrical co-ordinates and spherical polar co-ordinates.

- It is shown that depending upon the nature of the process the suitable wave equation can be set up and solved.
- One dimensional wave equation suits in most problems. So the solution of wave equation in one dimension is solved.
- Two dimensional wave equation depending upon the symmetry of the problem is solved both in rectangular and circular cases. Also heat conduction is studied.

18.4 Keywords

Heat Conduction: It is an other process that occurs in so many processes. Diffusion process is very very similar to conduction process.

Wave Motion: It can be obtained in mechanical vibrations, electrical vibrations and other processes.

18.5 Review Questions

1. Show that the solution of the wave equation

$$\frac{1}{r^2}\frac{\partial}{\partial r}\left(r^2\frac{\partial u}{\partial r}\right) = \frac{1}{a^2}\frac{\partial^2 v}{\partial t^2}$$

can be of the form

$$u(r,t) = \frac{1}{r}\left[t(r-at) + F(r+at)\right]$$

where f and F are arbitrary functions.

2. Solve the one dimensional wave equation

$$\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} - \frac{1}{c^2}\frac{\partial^2 u}{dt^2} = 0$$

with the boundary conditions

$$\left.\begin{array}{l} u(0,t) = 0 \\ u(l,t) = 0 \end{array}\right] \text{for all } t$$

and

$$u(x, 0) = \text{A} \sin 2\pi x$$

$$\left.\frac{\partial u}{\partial t}\right]_{t=0} = 0$$

3. Solve the heat equation in one dimension:

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} - k\frac{\partial^2 V}{\partial x^2} = 0$$

subject to the conditions

$$u(0, t) = u(\pi, t) = 0$$

$$\text{and } V(x, 0) = \sin 3x$$

Notes

4. Find the temperature $u(x, t)$ in a slab whose ends $x = 0$ and $x = L$ are kept at temperature zero and whose initial temperature $F(x)$ is given by

$$f(x) = A \qquad \text{when } 0 < x < \frac{L}{2}$$

$$= 0 \qquad \text{when } \frac{1}{2}L < x < L.$$

Answers: Self Assessment

1. $l^2 + m^2 + n^2 = k^2$

2. $$u(x,t) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} D_n \sin\left(\frac{n\pi ct}{L}\right)\sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right)$$

   where

   $$D_n = \frac{2}{n\pi c}\int_0^L g(x)\sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{c}\right)dx$$

4. $$V(x,y,t) = \sum A_{mn} \sin\frac{m\pi x}{l}\sin\frac{n\pi y}{l}e^{-rt}$$

   where

   $rl^2 = \pi^2\left(m^2 + n^2\right)$ and

   $$A_{mn} = \frac{4}{l^2}\int_{x=0}^{l}\int_{y=0}^{l} f(x,y)\sin\frac{m\pi x}{\ell}\sin\frac{n\pi y}{\ell}dxdy$$

18.6 Further Readings

Books

H.T.H. Piaggio, Differential Equation

L.N. Sneddon, Elements of Partial Differential Equations

Louis A. Pipes, and L. R. Harnvill, Applied Mathematics for Engineers and Physicists